

14e
15

NEW

GRAMMATICAL EXERCISES

UPON THE

FRENCH LANGUAGE,

CONTAINING AN

EXPLANATION OF THE RULES

OF

FRENCH SYNTAX.

COMPARED

WITH THE ENGLISH,

BY MR. DUVERGER.

L O N D O N :

Printed for, and Sold by the AUTHOR, No. 15, Broad-street,
Carnaby Market; and B. APPLEYARD, Wimpole-street.

M DCC LXXXIV.

18



INTRODUCTION.

Of LETTERS.

LETTERS are the same in French as in English, if we except the *w*, which is wanting in the former. The consonants and vowels are the same. The *h* is likewise a consonant or vowel as it is aspirated or not aspirated.

Of NUMBERS.

The numbers are the same; the singular and plural.

The singular speaks of one only; as, *un homme*, a man, *le roi*, the king.

The plural speaks of more than one; as, *les hommes*, men, *les rois*, the kings.

Of GENDERS.

There are but two genders in French, the masculine and feminine, *he* and *she*.

Nouns relating to males, are masculine; those relating to females, are feminine. Custom has made other nouns masculine or feminine: therefore, speaking of a knife, which is masculine, we say, *il est bon*, literally, *he is good*. Speaking of a fork, which is feminine, we say, *elle est bonne*, *she is good*.

In most nouns the gender may be known by the termination; but in some it must be learned from practice. Among animals, the males are generally known from the females by a different name; but

B

fishes

fishes, reptiles, insects, and some birds likewise, in which there is little or no distinction of gender, are of the same gender as their termination subjects them to. *Un geai*, m. a jay, *une tortue*, f. a tortoise. If their termination is neither masculine nor feminine, recourse must be had to the dictionary.

Of DECLENSIONS.

By declensions we may understand the variations of a noun; such as in English, *man's*, *king's*, instead of, *of the man*, *of the king*.

Those variations of a noun, were called cases in Latin, and known by the six following names, Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, Ablative.

The Nominative names the person that makes the action of the verb; as, *man walks*, *l'homme marche*; *man* is the nominative.

The Genitive names the author, cause, or possessor of another noun, and is known in English by the addition of an *s*; as, *the king's*, or the preposition *of*; as, *of the king*; in French by the preposition *de*; as, *les gardes du roi*, the king's guards.

The Dative serves to shew to whom or to what we direct the thing spoken of: it is known in English by the preposition *to*, in French by the preposition *à*. *He owes money to your father*, *il doit de l'argent à votre pere*.

The Accusative names the person or thing that receives the action of the verb; as, *the master struck your brother*, *le maitre frappa votre frere*. *The master* is the Nominative, because it is the master that made the action of striking; and *brother* is the Accusative, because he receives the action expressed by the verb, that of being struck.

The vocative is used in calling out to a person or thing, and is sometimes preceded by the interjection *o*, as, *brother*, *mon frere*; *O sister*, *O ma sœur*; *sir*, *monsieur*.

The Ablative names the person or thing from which something is taken away; it is known by the prepositions

tions *from, by*; *I have received it from Peter*; *Je l'ai reçu de Pierre.*

As French Nouns have no variations in their endings, they have, properly speaking, no Cases; and it is by the help of Prepositions those relations are expressed in French, which were known among the Latins by the different terminations of their Nouns. Yet, in the course of this work, I shall use some of those names; not that I pretend to say there are nominatives, genitives, datives in French, but because I find it convenient so to do.

Of ACCENTS.

Though this belongs to a part of grammar I shall not treat of, I cannot help taking notice of the Accents which are put upon some letters, to determine their sound, quantity, and signification: they are of three sorts, acute (´), grave (`), and circumflex (^).

The acute is put upon an *e* when it has the sound of the English *e* in *edict*, *example*; as, *piété*, piety, *bonté*, goodness.

The grave, which is likewise put upon an *e*, shews that it must be pronounced with a greater opening of the mouth; as, *succès*, success.

It serves likewise to distinguish some words from others; as, *là*, there, from *la*, the, or *her*, *a*, to, from *a*, has.

The circumflex shews that the vowel upon which it is placed must be pronounced long; as, *le rôti*, the roast.

I shall likewise observe, that a cedilla (,) placed under a *c*, shews it has the sound of an *s*; and a diæresis (¨) put upon a vowel, shews that it must be pronounced separately.

Of the Parts of SPEECH.

The words that make up a whole language may be considered under nine classes, which are called Parts of Speech, and are known by the following names:

Article, Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, Interjection.

Of ARTICLES.

The Article serves in English to denote the sense in which nouns are taken. In French it serves likewise to denote their gender and number.

It is threefold ; definite, indefinite, and partitive.

The definite *the* has a particular and determined signification, denoting what particular person or thing we mean ; as, *the horse*, that is, some particular horse spoken of or known before. It is thus expressed in French.

- | | m. f. | f. f. | p. |
|--|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. The, | <i>le</i> | <i>la</i> | <i>les</i> |
| as, | <i>le pere,</i> | <i>la mere,</i> | <i>les peres, les meres ;</i> |
| | the father, | the mother, | the fathers, the mothers. |
| 2. Observe, that <i>le</i> and <i>la</i> are spelt in this manner : | | | |
| <i>l'</i> before nouns beginning with a vowel ; as, <i>l'enfant,</i> | | | |
| the child, <i>l'homme,</i> the man. | | | |

3. The Preposition *de* coming before *le* is contracted into *du* ; as, *du pere*, of the father. Before *les* it is contracted into *des* ; as, *des peres*, of the fathers.

Before other words, beginning with a vowel, it is thus spelt, *d'*.

4. The Preposition *à* before *le* is contracted into *au* ; as, *au pere*, to the father ; and before *les* into *aux*, as, *aux peres*, to the fathers.

N. B. The figures put with the French words shew that they are examples of the rules marked in the same manner ; and the scholar is to repeat them.

E X E R C I S E.

the aunt		the son		the father		the uncle
1 tante		1 fils		1 pere		2 oncle
from the father		of the mother		of the child		
de 3 pere		de 1 mere		2 enfant		
of the children		to the father		to the mother		
3 enfans		à 4 pere		1 mere		
to the child		to the mothers		to the uncles		
2 enfant		4 meres		4 oncles		
of the brother		the sisters		of the aunt		
3 frere		1 sœurs		1		
		to the sister		of the uncle		
		1 sœur		2		

The

The indefinite *a, an*, has a vague sense, and means some person or thing, but without specifying what person or thing it is; as, *a man*, that is, some man or other.

It is expressed by *un* for the masculine, and *une* for the feminine.

The partitive expresses a part or portion of the whole substance or species, and answers to the word *some*; as, *du pain*, some bread, *du vin*, some wine. It is often understood in English; as, *bring paper and ink*, *apportez du papier & de l'encre*.

Some, when it is thus considered as a partitive article, is expressed,

- | | | |
|------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. For the | m. f. | f. f. |
| | by <i>du</i> | <i>de la</i> |
| | as, <i>du pain</i> , | <i>de la viande</i> , |
| | bread, | meat. |

Before a vowel it is spelt *de l'*; as, *de l'agneau*, lamb.

2. But before a noun plural, whether it is then an indefinite or a partitive article, it is expressed by *des*.

3. This article is left out in French after the preposition *de*; as, *de pain*, of bread, not *de du pain*: whereas we say, with other prepositions, *avec du pain*, with bread, *pour du pain*, for bread.

E X E R C I S E.

some bread,	some butter,	cheese,	some eggs,
1 <i>pain</i> , m.	1 <i>beurre</i> , m.	1 <i>fromage</i> , m.	2 <i>œufs</i> , m.
soup,	some mutton,	cinnamon,	pork,
1 <i>soupe</i> ,	1 <i>mouton</i> , m.	1 <i>cannelle</i> , f.	1 <i>porc</i> , m.
mustard,	salad,	beer,	some apples,
1 <i>moutarde</i> , f.	1 <i>salade</i> , f.	1 <i>biere</i> , f.	2 <i>pommes</i> ,
a man,	a woman,	a child,	children,
<i>homme</i> ,	<i>femme</i> ,	<i>enfant</i> , m.	2 <i>enfants</i> ,
the palace of the king		the queen of the Amazons,	
<i>palais</i> , m. <i>de</i> *	<i>roi</i>	<i>reine</i> *	<i>Amazones</i> , f.
the looks of the assembly		the key of the room,	
<i>regards</i> , m. †	<i>assemblée</i> , f.	<i>clé</i> , f.	<i>chambre</i> , f.

B 3

Of

* See page 4. sect. 3.

† p. 4. sect. 2.

Of N O U N S.

The Noun serves to qualify a person or thing.

That which serves to name the persons or things is called a Substantive ; as, *un homme*, a man, *une table*, a table.

That which qualifies them is called an Adjective ; as, *grand*, *rond*, tall, round ; *un homme grand*, a tall man, *une table ronde*, a round table.

Of S U B S T A N T I V E S.

A Substantive is either common, proper, or collective.

The common expresses a name common to several persons or things, and is physical or metaphysical.

The first is a name common to several persons or things which exist in nature ; such as, *un homme*, a man, *une maison*, a house.

The second is a name common to several things, but can only exist in the understanding ; such as, *la hauteur*, height, *la vertu*, virtue.

The proper serves to name a particular person, place, or thing ; as, *Alexandre*, *Rome*, *la Tamise*, Alexander, Rome, the Thames.

The Substantive collective, though in the singular, signifies several persons or things, as being a whole, or part of a whole.

The first is called collective general ; as, *le peuple*, the people, *l'armée*, the army, *la forêt*, the forest.

The second, collective partitive ; as, *une quantité*, *une multitude de*, a quantity, a multitude of.

Of the Formation of the Plural Number of Nouns.

1. The plural number is generally formed in French as in English, by adding an *s* to the singular ; as, *un homme*, man, *des hommes*, men.

2. In Nouns ending in *s* or *x*, the plural number is like the singular ; as, *le fils*, *les fils*, the son, the sons : *la voix*, *les voix*, the voice, the voices.

Nouns

3. Nouns in *au*, *eau*, *eu*, *œu*, *ieu*, and *ou*, form their plural by adding an *x* to the singular ; as,

<i>chapeau</i> ,	<i>chapeaux</i> ,	hat,	hats,
<i>feu</i> ,	<i>feux</i> ,	fire,	fires,
<i>vœu</i> ,	<i>vœux</i> ,	vow,	vows,
<i>lieu</i> ,	<i>lieux</i> ,	place,	places,
<i>chou</i> ,	<i>choux</i> ,	cabbage,	cabbages.

“ Except from nouns in *ou* ; *trou*, hole, *clou*, nail,
 “ *matou*, cat, *cou* or *col*, neck, *filou*, pick-pocket,
 “ *fou*, fool, *mou* or *mol*, soft, *hibou*, owl, *licou*, halter,
 “ *loup-garou*, werewolf, *sou*, penny ; which follow
 “ the general rule, and make *trous*, *clous*, &c.

“ And from nouns in *eu*, the adjective *bleu*, which
 “ makes *bleus*.”

4. Nouns in *al* and *ail* change it into *aux* ; as,
animal, *animaux*, animal, animals, *travail*, *travaux*,
 labour, labours.

Except from nouns in *al* ; *pal*, a pale, *regal*, treat,
bal, a ball, *carnaval*, carnival ; and proper names in
al, which take the *s*.

The following adjectives, *austral*, *austral*, *boreal*,
 northern, *canonial*, canonical, *conjugal*, conjugal, *fatal*,
 fatal, *filial*, filial, *frugal*, frugal, *naval*, naval, *pastoral*,
 pastoral, *pectoral*, pectoral, *venal*, venal, have no
 plural in the masculine.

From nouns in *ail* ; *attirail*, train, *camail*, a priest-
 dress, *détail*, particular, *éventail*, fan, *épouventail*,
 scare-crow, *gouvernail*, helm, *portail*, front gate of a
 church, *ferrail*, seraglio.

Ail, garlic, makes *aux* or *aulx* ; *mail*, mall, *bercail*,
 sheep-fold, have no plural. *Bétail*, cattle, makes
bestiaux.

Œil, eye, *ciel*, heaven, *ayeul*, grand-father, make in
 the plural *yeux*, *cieux*, *ayeux*.

Ciel and *œil* when they make a compound word,
 follow the general rule, *des ciels de lit*, testers, *des œils*
de bœuf, ovals.

5. In nouns ending in the singular in *ant* or *ent*,
 the plural may be spelt with or without a *t* ; as,
enfant, child, *enfants* or *enfants*, *temperament*, constitu-
 tion,

tion, *temperamens, temperaments*. But monosyllables in *t* retain it; as *pont*, bridge, *ponts*, bridges; except *tout*, all, which makes *tous*.

6. When a noun is compounded of a substantive and an adjective, both take the mark of the plural; as, *un bout-rimé*, a kind of poetry, *des bouts-rimés*.

7. When it is compounded of a preposition and a substantive, or of a verb and a substantive, the noun alone takes the mark of the plural; as,

<i>un avant-coureur,</i>	a fore-runner,
<i>des avant-coueurs,</i>	fore-runners,
<i>un garde-fou,</i>	a rail,
<i>des garde-fous,</i>	rails.

8. When it is compounded of two nouns joined by a preposition, the first alone takes the mark of the plural; as, *un chef d'œuvre*, a master-piece, *des chefs d'œuvre*, master-pieces.

9. Hebrew or Latin words do not take the mark of the plural; as, *des duo, des alinea*.

Proper names of persons, though applied to several, do not take the mark of the plural, when they only serve to name persons; as, *il ne connoissoit point personnellement les Delville*, he had no personal acquaintance with the Delvilles. But they take it if they are employed as common names; as, *les Miltons sont rares aujourd'hui*, Miltons are scarce now-a-days.

E X E R C I S E.

The virtues of the Romans | the caresses of a mother

1 <i>vertu</i> , f.	1 <i>Romain</i> , m.	1 <i>caresse</i> , f.	1 <i>mere</i>
some nuts	the successes	the marshes	
2 <i>noix</i> , f.	2 <i>succès</i> , m.	2 <i>marais</i> , m.	
the arms	the skins	the games	
2 <i>bras</i> , m.	3 <i>peau</i> , f.	3 <i>jeu</i> , m.	
the holes	to the nails	the axle-trees	
3 <i>trou</i> , m.	3 <i>clou</i> , m.	3 <i>essieu</i> , m.	
the metals	to the balls	the horses	
4 <i>metal</i>	4 <i>bal</i>	4 <i>cheval</i>	
to the treats	of the particulars	the fans	
4 <i>regal</i> , m.	4 <i>détail</i> , m.	4 <i>éventail</i> , m.	the

the front gates		the leafes		the air-holes
4 <i>portail</i> , m.		4 <i>bail</i> , m.		4 <i>soupirail</i> , m.
of the eyes		to the heavens		to the grandfathers
4 <i>œil</i> , m.		4 <i>ciel</i> , m.		4 <i>ayeul</i> , m.
the cries of the combatants		the judgments of		
1 <i>cri</i> , m.		5 <i>combattant</i>		5 <i>jugement</i> , m.
the gods		the bridges		all the children
3 <i>dieu</i>		5 <i>pont</i> , m.		5 <i>tout</i> 5 <i>enfant</i>
some kites		some water-spouts		some toothpicks
6 <i>cerf volant</i> , m.		8 <i>jet d'eau</i> , m.		7 <i>cure-dent</i> , m.
the streams of the rivulets		the gentlemen		
5 <i>courant</i> , m.		3 <i>ruisseau</i> , m.		6 <i>gentilhomme</i>
the rainbows		the prelibations		the interlineations
8 <i>arc-en-ciel</i>		7 <i>avant-goût</i>		7 <i>entre-ligne</i>

Of the Genders of N O U N S.

MASCULINE TERMINATIONS.

1. Nouns ending in any of the vowels, *a, é, i, o, u*.

Nouns in *tié* and *té*; as, *amitié*, friendship, *piété*, piety; or *e*, not accented, do not fall under this rule.

Except likewise from nouns in *é*, *une clé*, or *clef*, a key.

From nouns in *i*; *la fourmi*, the ant, *l'après-midi*, the afternoon, *la merci*, mercy.

From nouns in *u*; *la glu*, bird-lime, *la vertu*, virtue, *la tribu*, the tribe.

2. Nouns in any of the aforesaid vowels, followed by one or more consonants, except *la part*, the share, *la hart*, the band of a faggot, *une dent*, a tooth, *une cuiller*, a spoon, *une forêt*, a forest, *la mer*, the sea, *la nef*, the body of a church, *une brebis*, a sheep, *une souris*, a mouse, *une vis*, a screw, *la fin*, the end, *la mort*, death, *une dot*, a portion, *une perdrix*, a partridge, *la boisson*, drinking, *la moisson*, harvest, *une chanson*, a song, *la façon*, the making, *la leçon*, the lesson, *la rançon*, the ransom.

Nouns in *son*, after a vowel or a diphthong, and those in *ion*, do not fall under this rule.

3. Nouns whose last syllable is a diphthong, whether alone or followed by one or more consonants; as, *un jeu*, a game, *le travail*, work.

Nouns whose last syllable is *eur*, *eure*, or *ion*; as, *une rigueur*, a rigour, *une heure*, an hour, *une passion*, a passion: and *e*, not accented, preceded by a vowel or diphthong; as, *la rue*, the street, *de la craie*, chalk, do not belong to this rule. Except likewise, *la main*, the hand, *la faim*, hunger, *la chair*, flesh, *une peau*, a skin, *la foi*, faith, *la nuit*, night, *la cour*, the yard, *une tour*, a tower, *de l'eau*, water, *une loi*, a law, *la soif*, thirst, *une fois*, one time, *la voix*, the voice, *la paix*, the peace, *la croix*, the cross, *une noix*, a nut, *la poix*, the pitch, *la toux*, the cough.

4. Nouns in	<i>age</i>	<i>un hermitage</i>	an hermitage
	<i>uge</i>	<i>le deluge</i>	flood
	<i>acle</i>	<i>le tabernacle</i>	tabernacle
	<i>ême</i>	<i>le baptême</i>	baptism
	<i>aume</i>	<i>le baume</i>	balm
	<i>ôme</i>	<i>le dôme</i>	cupola
	<i>isme</i>	<i>le catechisme</i>	catechism

Except from nouns in *age*; *une cage*, a cage, *une image*, an image, *une page*, a page, *la rage*, the rage, *une plage*, a flat shore.

From nouns in *ême*, *de la crème*, cream.

From nouns in *aume*, *la paume*, tennis.

5. Names of mountains; as, *le Parnasse*, Parnassus: except *les Alpes*, the Alps.

6. Nouns of number, infinitives, adverbs, prepositions, and adjectives, taken substantively; as,

<i>le deux</i>	<i>le trois</i>	the two	the three
<i>le double</i>	<i>le cinquieme</i>	the double	the fifth
<i>le boire</i>	<i>le manger</i>	drinking	eating
<i>le devant</i>	<i>le derriere</i>	the forepart	the hinderpart
<i>le blanc</i>	<i>& le noir</i>	the white and black	

7. Nouns

7. Nouns compounded of a verb and a noun; as, *un cure-oreille*, an ear-picker: except *une passe-velours*, a velvet flower, *une garde-robe*, a wardrobe.

E X E R C I S E.

an opera	a furbelow	a meadow	a thimble	
1 opera	1 falbala	1 pré	1 dé	
a key	the roast	the party	the ant	
1 clé	1 rôti	1 parti	1 fourmi	
an afternoon	a nought	an echo	the tribe	
1 après-midi	1 zero	1 écho	1 tribu	
the virtue	a receipt	a crown	the share	
1 vertu	1 reçu	1 ecu	2 part	
the band of a faggot	a bag	a state	an orchard	
2 bart	2 sac	2 état	2 verger	
a forest	a success	a sea	a carpet	a mouse
2 forêt	2 succès	2 mer	2 tapis	2 souris
a coat	a sheep	a word	an apricot	a portion
2 habit	2 brebis	2 mot	2 abricot	2 dot
a discourse	an abuse	a denial	the hand	
2 propos	2 abus	2 refus	3 main	
a palace	some milk	some flesh	the sun	
3 palais	3 lait	3 chair	3 soleil	
a lightning	a hair	a law	a broom	a trial
3 éclair	3 cheveu	3 loi	3 balai	3 essai
some water	a skin	a swarm	some bread	some hay
3 eau	3 peau	3 essaim	3 pain	3 foin
the night	the day	a court	the weight	the voice
nuit	3 jour	3 cour	3 faix	3 voix
the cough	some cotton	the burden of a song		
3 toux	2 coton	3 refrain	2 chanson	
a stick	the end of the lesson	a pencil		
2 bâton	2 fin	2 leçon	2 crayon	
the time of the harvest	a slavery	an image		
2 tems	2 moisson	4 esclavage	4 image	
the rage	a shelter	the baptism	some cream	
4 rage	4 refuge	4 baptême	4 crème	
a diadem	a cupola	a spectacle	a sophism	
4 diadème	4 dôme	4 spectacle	4 sophisme	
			a miracle	

a miracle		an obstacle		an atom		a phantom
4 miracle		4 obstacle		4 atôme		4 phantôme
the four		the seven		the sixth		a buttery
6 quatre		6 sept		6 sixieme		7 garde-manger
		a wardrobe				a tooth-picker
		7 garde-robe				7 cure-dent

Feminine Terminations.

1. Nouns in *ion*; as, *une pension*, a pension; except *un alerion*, an eaglet, *l'alcion*, the halcyon, *un bastion*, a bastion, *un camion*, a sort of cart, *le croupion*, the rump, *un embrion*, an embryo, *un fanion*, a standard, *un gabion*, a gabion, *un lampion*, a sort of lamp, *un million*, a million, *l'orion*, a constellation, *un pion*, a man at chess, *un scion*, a sprig, *le septentrion*, the north, *un scorpion*, a scorpion, *le talion*, retaliation.

2. Nouns in *son*, after a vowel or a diphthong; as, *une saison*, a season: except *le blason*, heraldry, *un frison*, a curl, *un gazon*, a green plot, *l'horison*, the horizon, *un oison*, a young goose, *un peson*, a steel yard, *du poison*, poison, *un tison*, a brand.

3. Nouns in *tié* and *té*; as, *une amitié*, a friendship, *la parenté*, kindred: except *un comité*, a committee, *un arrêté de compte*, a settled account, *un comté*, a county, *le côté*, the side, *un été*, a summer, *un pâté*, a pye, *un traité*, a treaty, *du thé*, tea, *le bénédicité*, a sort of prayer.

4. Nouns in *eur* and *eure*; as, *la peur*, fear, *une heure*, an hour: except from nouns in *eur*; *le bonheur*, good-luck, *le malheur*, misfortune, *le cœur*, the heart, *un chœur*, a choir, *l'intérieur*, the inward part, *l'extérieur*, the outside, *l'équateur*, the equator, *l'honneur*, the honour, *le deshonneur*, dishonour, *le labeur*, labour.

Les pleurs, tears, is both masculine and feminine.

Except likewise from nouns in *eurre*; *du beurre*, butter, *le leurre*, the lure.

5. Nouns in any vowel or diphthong before *e*, not founded, that is, not marked with an accent ; as, *une armée*, an army, *une plaie*, a wound : except *l'élisée*, the elysium, *les Pirenées*, the Pyrenean mountains, *l'empirée*, the empyrean heaven, *l'himenée*, hymen, *un trophée*, a trophy, *un génie*, a genius, *un parapluie*, an umbrella, *un pavier*, a nectarine, *le bain marie*, balneum mariæ, *le foie*, liver, *du pou-de foie*, paduasoy, *un menstrue*, a menstruum ; and some Greek names, which in French end in *ee*, and *ie*, and in English generally in *um*, as *le caducée*, caduceum, *le périhélie*, perihelium.

6. Nouns in *ance*, *anse*, *ence*, *ense* ; as *la constance*, constancy, *une défense*, a defence ; except *le silence*, silence.

7. Nouns in *lle*, preceded by a vowel or diphthong ; as *une bataille*, a battle, *une ville*, a town ; except *un intervalle*, an interval, *un chevre-feuille*, a honey-suckle, *un porte-feuille*, a pocket-book, *un vaudeville*, a ballad ; *spadille*, *manille*, *codille*, *cadrille*, words used at cards.

8. Nouns in *ise* ; as, *une eglise*, a church : or in *isse*, preceded by a vowel or diphthong ; as, *la sagesse*, wisdom, *une terrasse*, a terrass : except *un carosse*, a coach, *un colosse*, a colossus.

9. Nouns in any of the following terminations ;

<i>ace</i> ,	<i>la grace</i> ,	grace,	<i>ine</i> ,	<i>la cuisine</i> ,	kitchen,
<i>igue</i> ,	<i>la brigue</i> ,	cabal,	<i>une</i> ,	<i>la rancune</i> ,	rancour,
<i>ougue</i> ,	<i>la fougue</i> ,	fury,	<i>ure</i> ,	<i>l'ordure</i> ,	filth,
<i>oure</i> ,	<i>la bravoure</i> ,	valour,	<i>iere</i> ,	<i>une tabatiere</i> ,	a snuff box,
<i>aine</i> ,	<i>la semaine</i> ,	week,	<i>ire</i> ,	<i>une lire</i> ,	a lyre.
<i>eine</i> ,	<i>l'haleine</i> ,	breath,			

Except from nouns in *ace*, *un espace*, a space ; from nouns in *iere*, *un cimetiere*, a churchyard, ; from nouns in *ure* ; *un augure*, an omen, *un murmure*, a murmur, *du mercure*, mercury, *un parjure*, a perjury, *les colures*, the coluri : and from those in *ire*, or *yre* ; *le collyre*, collyrium, *le delire*, delirium, *un navire*, a ship, *un empire*, an empire, *le martyre*, martyrdom, *le rire*, laughter, *le sourire*, smile.

10. Names of kingdoms ending in *e*, not sounded, are feminine; as, *la France*, France; except *le Mexique*, Mexico.

Those of cities, towns, and boroughs, most commonly follow the gender of their termination, but when it is doubtful, the safest way is to add the words *ville*, *village*, *bourg*, to them, and thus remove the ambiguity. Instead of saying *Vienne est grand*, say *la ville de Vienne est grande*, or *Vienne est une grande ville*, Vienna is a large town.

11. Names of months are feminine, when they take *mi* before them; as, *la mi-juin*, midsummer, *la mi-Septembre*, the middle of September.

Nouns of holy-days are feminine; as *la St. Jean*, *la Toussaint*: except *Noel*, Christmas, and *Pâque*, when it means Easter-day; as, *pâque est haut*, Easter falls late.

E X E R C I S E.

the power of a nation		the north		a million
6 <i>puissance</i>	1 <i>nation</i>	1 <i>septentrion</i>		1 <i>million</i>
an affection of the heart		a sprig		a green plot
1 <i>affection</i>	4 <i>cœur</i>	1 <i>scion</i>		2 <i>gazon</i>
the safety of an obligation		the height of a bastion		
3 <i>sûreté</i>	1 <i>obligation</i>	4 <i>hauteur</i>		1 <i>bastion</i>
the colour of a fleece		a brand		the yard of a house
4 <i>couleur</i>	2 <i>toison</i>	2 <i>tison</i>	a <i>cour</i>	2 <i>maison</i>
the reason of the law		the health of the body		
2 <i>raison</i>	a <i>loi</i>	3 <i>santé</i>		b <i>corps</i>
the faith of a treaty		the goodness of an action		
<i>foi</i>	3 <i>traité</i>	2 <i>bonté</i>		1 <i>action</i>
the foresight of the ant		the heat of the season		
6 <i>prévoyance</i>	c <i>fourmi</i>	4 <i>chaleur</i>		2 <i>saison</i>
some butter		an outside		a trophy
4 <i>beurre</i>	4 <i>exterieur</i>	5 <i>année</i>		5 <i>trophée</i>

For the gender of these Nouns,

See p. 10. sect. 3.

c See p. 9. sect. 1.

b p. 9. — 2.

the

the sight | the heaviness of the tortoise | the silence
 5 *vue* 4 *lenteur* 5 *tortue* 6 *silence*
 the length of a day | the dearth of the silk
 4 *longueur* 5 *journée* 3 *cherté* 5 *soie*
 the necessity of an umbrella | the negligence
 3 *nécessité* 5 *parapluie* 6 *négligence*
 of a duty | the preservation of the life | the flexibility
 a *devoir* 1 *conservation* 5 *vie* 8 *souplesse*
 a bottle | a handle | a basket | a ballad
 7 *bouteille* 6 *anse* 7 *corbeille* 7 *vaudeville*
 the stone of a cherry | the jaundice | a ditch | a place
 a *noyau* 8 *cerise* 8 *jaunisse* 8 *fosse* 9 *place*
 a pain | a grimace | a space | a snipe | a league
 9 *peine* 9 *grimace* 9 *espace* 8 *becasse* 9 *ligue*
 a fountain | some wool | a trunk | the manner
 9 *fontaine* 9 *laine* 7 *malle* 9 *maniere*
 the dress | the cargo of a ship | an omen
 9 *parure* 2 *cargaison* 9 *navire* 9 *augure*
 the fall of an empire.
 6 *décadence* 9 *empire*.

There are substantives likewise which are of both genders. They are, *amour*, love, which is generally masculine in the singular, though the poets sometimes make it feminine.

It is feminine in the plural, when it signifies our passion, or the object of our love; *il n'est point d'éternelles amours*, no passions are everlasting.

It is masculine, when it signifies *cupids*, *les amours rians & badins suivoient son char*, wanton cupids attended her chariot; *automne*, autumn, is both masculine and feminine, but more generally feminine.

Comté and *duché* are masculine, but we say, *la Franche comté*, a province of France, *une comté-pairie*, *une duché-pairie*.

Couple, a couple, is feminine, when it signifies only number, and masculine when, besides number, it signifies union.

^a For the gender, see p. 10. sect. 3.

Délice, delight, is masculine in the singular, *tout son délice*, all his delight ; but feminine in the plural, in which it is more generally used ; *l'étude fait toutes ses délices*, study is all his delight

Orgue, an organ, is likewise masculine in the singular, and feminine in the plural, *un bel orgue*, *de belles orgues*.

It must be observed of adjectives which are joined to the substantive *gens*, people, that they are feminine when they precede it, and masculine when they come after it ; as, *les vieilles gens sont soupçonneux*, old people are suspicious.

Of ADJECTIVES.

An adjective serves to express the qualities or properties of persons or things ; as, *good*, *bon*, *bad*, *mauvais*, *tall*, *grand*, *short*, *petit*.

But as adjectives may qualify more or less, that difference of qualification forms what grammarians call positive, comparative, and superlative.

The positive, simply expresses the quality ; as, *handsome*, *beau*.

The comparative, signifies comparison with another, and denotes either superiority, inferiority, or equality ; as, *wiser*, or, *more wise than*, *plus sage que*, *less wise than*, *moins sage que*, *as wise as*, *aussi sage que*.

The comparative of superiority is always formed in French by putting *plus*, more, before the positive, therefore, *more sweet*, or *sweeter*, are equally rendered by *plus doux*.

The superlative expresses the quality in a very high, or in the highest degree.

That which expresses the quality in a very high degree, is called superlative absolute ; it is formed with the adverbs *very*, *most*, which are rendered in French by *très*, *fort*, *bien* ; as, *most handsome*, *très beau*, *very much esteemed*, *fort estimé*.

The other is called superlative relative ; it is formed in English, by adding *st*, or *est*, to the positive, as, *wisest*, *hardest*, or by putting *the most*, *the least*, before the positive ; in French, by *le plus*, *la plus*, *les plus*,

plus, the most, *le moins*, *la moins*, *les moins*, the least, according to gender and number; as, *the most prudent*, *le plus prudent*, *the least courageous*, *le moins courageux*.

The comparatives *better*, *worse*, *less*, are thus rendered, *better*, *meilleur*, *worse*, *pire*, or *plus mauvais*, *less* or *lesser*, *moindre*, *plus petit*.

The superlatives, the *best*, the *worst*, the *least*, are rendered by the above comparatives with the article, definite, according to gender and number; as, *le meilleur*, *la meilleure*, the best, *le pire*, *la pire*, the worst.

As adjectives form their plural number in the same manner as substantives; I shall only speak of the formation of their feminines.

Of the Formation of the Feminine in Adjectives.

1. The feminine in adjectives, is generally formed by the addition of an *e*, to the masculine; as, *grand*, *grande*, great.

2. Adjectives ending in *e*, not sounded, are of both genders; as, *un homme aimable*, *une femme aimable*, an amiable man, an amiable woman.

3. Adjectives ending in *f*, change it into *ve*; as, *vif*, *vive*, lively.

4. Those which end in *c*, are only seven in number, and form their feminine in the following manner; as, *blanc*, *blanche*, white, *franc*, *franche*, sincere, *sec*, *seche*, dry, *caduc*, *caduque*, decaying, *grec*, *greque*, greek, *public*, *publique*, publick, *turc*, *turque*, turkish.

Nud, naked, *cru*, raw, *verd*, green, are now spelt *nu*, *cru*, *vert*, and form their feminine regularly.

5. Those which have *e*, *ei*, *u*, before *l*, double the final *l*, as likewise does *gentil*, pretty. *Cruel*, *cruelle*, cruel, *vermeil*, *vermeille*, lively red, *nul*, *nulle*, void, *gentil*, *gentille*, pretty.

6. Those which end in *on*, or *ien*, double the final *n* before *e*; as, *bon*, *bonne*, good, *ancien*, *ancienne*, old.

7. Those which have *a, ai, e, o*, before *s*, double the final *s*, before *e*; as, *gros, grosse*, big, *epais, epaisse*, thick, *exprès, expresse*, express, *las, lasse*, tired: except *mauvais*, bad, *niais*, silly, *ras*, bare, *clos*, close, which are regular; *frais*, fresh, makes, *fraîche*.

8. Those which end in *et*, or *ot*, double the *t* before *e*; as, *net, nette*, clean, *sot, sotte*, foolish; except the following ones which are regular: *complet*, complete, *discret*, discreet, *inquiet*, uneasy, *replet*, replete, *secret*, secret, *complet*, complete, *dévot*, godly.

9. <i>Mou</i> ,	soft,		<i>mol</i> ,	<i>molle</i> ,
<i>fou</i> ,	foolish,	form their	<i>fol</i> ,	<i>folle</i> ,
<i>beau</i> ,	fine,	feminine	<i>bel</i> ,	thus <i>belle</i> ,
<i>nouveau</i> ,	new,	from their	<i>nouvel</i> ,	<i>nouvelle</i> ,
<i>vieux</i> ,	old,	old masculine.	<i>vieil</i> ,	<i>vieille</i> .

These adjectives still retain their old masculine, if they come before a noun beginning with a vowel, but *vieil* is seldom used, except in the two following sentences, *le vieil homme*, *le vieil adam*, to signify the sin, the sinner.

10. Adjectives in *x*, change it into *se*; as, *heureux*, *heureuse*, happy: except *doux*, sweet, *faux*, false, *roux*, red-haired, *prefix*, prefixed, which make *douce*, *fausse*, *rousse*, *préfixe*.

Benin, benign, *malin*, malicious, *long*, long. *favori*, favorite, make *benigne*, *maligne*, *longue*, *favorite*.

11. Adjectives in *eur*, derived from French verbs, form also their feminine, by changing *eur* into *euse*; as, *menteur*, *menteuse*, lying, *flatteur*, *flatteuse*, flattering.

French adjectives having a distinction of gender and number, must agree with their substantives in these two accidents; thus we say, *un homme heureux*; a happy man, *une femme heureuse*, a happy woman, *des hommes heureux*, happy men, *des femmes heureuses*, happy women.

The following ones almost always precede their substantives; *beau*, fine, *bon*, good, *grand*, great, *chetif*, sorry, *gros*, big, *jeune*, young, *vieux*, old, *méchant*, wicked, *mauvais*, bad, *petit*, little, *sot*, foolish, *saint*

saint, holy, *feu*, late ; to which you may add the adjectives of number, *le premier*, the first, *le second*, the second.

N. B. In the course of the following exercises, the scholar is to put all other adjectives after their substantives, till he has learned from the subsequent rules, and still more from practice, which are those that must come either before or after. He must likewise observe that the word *some*, is understood before the nouns which are without an article.

E X E R C I S E.

A prudent wife | a constant friendship | a great action
 1 *prudent femme* 1 *constant* ^a *amitié* 1 *grand* ^b *action*
 a little house | a faithful maid | a solid understanding
 1 *petit* ^c *maison* 2 *fidèle servante* 2 *solide* ^d *jugement*
 the frivolous objections | the fatal divisions
 2 *frivole* ^b *objection* 2 *funeste* ^b *division*
 the proud man | an attentive ear | a lively ardour
 2 *superbe homme* 3 *attentif* ^e *oreille* 3 *vif* ^f *ardeur*
 plain girls | the Greek nation | a dry season
 3 *naïf fille* 4 *Grec* ^b *nation* 4 *sec* ^c *saison*
 the public balls | the frontiers of the Greek provinces
 4 *public* ^d *bal* *frontiere* *province* ^f.
 a plain answer | raw meat | green apricots
 4 *franc réponse*, ^f. 4 *cru viande*, ^f. 4 *vert* ^d *abricot*
 cruel actions | red cheeks | a pretty girl
 5 *cruel* ^b *action* 5 *vermeil* ⁿ *joue* 5 *gentil*
 a natural thought | the Saxon laws | a big woman
 5 *naturel* ⁿ *pensée* 6 *Saxon* ⁱ *loi* 7 *gros femme*
 the ancient customs | the Pagan ceremonies
 6 *ancien* *coutume*, ^f. 6 *Païen* ⁿ *cérémonie*

For the gender of these Nouns,

^a See p. 12. sect. 3.

^b p. 12. — 1.

^c p. 12. — 2.

^d p. 9. — 2.

^e See p. 13. sect. 7.

^f p. 12. — 4.

ⁱ p. 10. — 3.

ⁿ p. 13. — 5.

the

the christian virtues | a thick smoke | a bad cage
 6 chrétien ^a vertu 7 epais ^b fumée 7 mauvais ^c cage
 a silly answer | fresh news | fat lands
 7 niais 7 frais ^d nouvelle 7 gras terre, f.
 a pensive humour | a lean girl | a clean house
 3 pensif ^e humeur 8 maigrelet 8 net
 secret cabals | the remorse of an uneasy conscience
 8 secret ⁿ intrigue remors 8 inquiet ^o conscience
 a complete armour | a foolish question | a dumb scene
 8 complet ⁿ armure 8 sot ^k question 8 muet scene, f.
 a discreet mistress | a foolish youth | a fine creature
 8 discret ^p maitresse 9 fou ^p jeunesse 9 beau ⁿ créature
 the old songs | the fine head-dresses | happy marriages
 9 vieux ^m chanson 9 beau ⁿ coiffure 10 heureux ^c mariage
 curious flowers | flattering words | red-haired women
 10 curieux ^c fleur 11 flatteur parole, f. 10 roux femme
 deceitful promises | sweet hopes
 11 trompeur ^p promesse 10 doux ^o espérance
 malicious persons | an inexpressible satisfaction
 10 malicieux personne, f. 2 inexprimable ^k satisfaction
 a favorite song | the beauty of a white hand
 10 favori ^r beauté 4 blanc ⁱ main
 dreadful pictures.
 10 affreux ⁿ peinture.

Of PRONOUNS.

Pronouns are words used instead of nouns and may be divided into six classes, Personal, Possessive, Demonstrative, Relative, Interrogative, and Indeterminate.

For the gender of these Nouns,

^a See p. 9. sect. 1.

^b p. 13. — 5.

^c p. 10. — 4.

^d p. 13. — 7.

^e p. 12. — 4.

ⁿ p. 13. — 9.

^o See p. 13. sect. 6.

^k p. 12. — 1.

^p p. 13. — 8.

^m p. 9. — 2.

^r p. 12. — 3.

ⁱ p. 10. — 3.

Of

Of Pronouns Personal.

They are thus called because they are used instead of the names of persons ; thus, instead of saying, *I Peter* learn French, *thou James* hast spoken, I *say*, I learn French, *thou* hast spoken, they are, *I*, *je*, or *moi*, *thou*, *tu*, or *toi*, *he*, *il* lui, *she*, *elle*, *we*, *nous*, *you*, *vous*, *they*, *ils*, *eux*, *elles*, *me*, *me*, *moi*, *thee*, *te*, *toi*, *him*, *le* lui, *her*, *la* lui, *us*, *nous*, *them*, *les*, *eux*, *elles*, *leur*, to which you must add, *myself*, *me*, or *moi-même*, *thyself*, *te*, or *toi-même*, *himself*, *se*, *soi-même*, *lui-même*, *herself*, *se*, *elle-même*, *ourselves*, *nous-mêmes*, *yourselves*, *vous-mêmes*, *themselves*, *se*, *eux-mêmes*, *elles-mêmes*. Observe that the Pronouns, *je*, *me*, *te*, *le*, *se*, *la*, are spelled *j'*, *m'*, *t'*, *l'*, *s'*, before a vowel.

Of Pronouns Possessive.

Pronouns Possessive denote the possession or property, they are divided into conjunctive and relative the first are thus called, because they are always joined to a substantive ; as, *my* book, *his* story. The others are called relative because they always relate to a noun spoken of before ; as, I have *my* hat : have you got *yours* ? he has *your* hat : have you got *his* ? In the two last examples *yours* and *his* are possessives relative.

The Conjunctive are thus expressed ;

	m. f.	f. f.	p.		f. f.	p.
my	<i>mon</i> ,	<i>ma</i> ,	<i>mes</i> ,	our,	<i>notre</i> ,	<i>nos</i> ,
thy	<i>ton</i> ,	<i>ta</i> ,	<i>tes</i> ,	your,	<i>votre</i> ,	<i>vos</i> ,
his, or her,	<i>son</i> ,	<i>sa</i> ,	<i>sés</i> ,	their,	<i>leur</i> ,	<i>leurs</i> ,

The relatives are thus expressed ;

	m. f.	f. f.	m. p.	f. p.
mine,	<i>le mien</i> ,	<i>la mienne</i> ,	<i>les miens</i> ,	<i>les miennes</i> ,
thine,	<i>le tien</i> ,	<i>la tienne</i> ,	<i>les tiens</i> ,	<i>les tiennes</i> ,
his or hers,	<i>le sien</i> ,	<i>la sienne</i> ,	<i>les siens</i>	<i>les siennes</i> ,
			p.	
ours,	<i>le nôtre</i> ,	<i>la nôtre</i> ,	<i>les nôtres</i> ,	
yours,	<i>le vôtre</i> ,	<i>la vôtre</i> ,	<i>les vôtres</i> ,	
theirs,	<i>le leur</i> ,	<i>la leur</i> ,	<i>les leurs</i> ,	

These

These pronouns, both the conjunctive and relative, agree in gender and number with the nouns they are joined or related to; that is, they agree with the thing possessed, and not with the possessor, as in English. Thus, *his*, is expressed by *sa*, when it is joined to a noun feminine; and *her* by *son*, when it is joined to a noun masculine. Your brother has lost his key, *votre frere a perdu sa clé*, your sister has finished her work, *votre sœur a fini son ouvrage*.

EXERCISE.

My bed | my treasure | my reward | my expences
^a *lit* ^a *trésor* ^b *récompense* ^l *frais*
 my days | thy virtue | thy threat | thy heart
^c *jour* ^d *vertu* ^e *menace* ^f *cœur*
 thy employment | thy proofs | his palace | her wish
^c *emploi* *preuve, f.* ^c *palais* ^c *souhait*
 to his joy | his excesses | her arms | our credit
^g *joie* ^a *exès* ^a *bras* ^a *crédit*
 our pain | of our inclinations | to our city
^f *douleur* ⁱ *inclinations* ^h *ville*
 your choice | your side | your song | your pleasures
^c *choix* ^k *côté* ^a *chanson* ^a *plaisir*
 your plays | their fury | their price | their horses
^c *jeu* ^g *furie* ^a *prix* ^m *cheval*
 their equals | have you got my breakfast? | I have
^m *égals* *avez vous* ^d *déjeuné* ^{j'ai}
 mine, thine, and his. | has he got his snuff-box?
^g *a-t-il* ^e *tabatiere*
 he has thine, his, and mine; but you have
^{il a} ^g *mais vous avez*

See for the gender of these Nouns,

^a See p. 9. sect. 2.

^f See p. 12. sect. 4.

^b p. 13. — 6.

^g p. 13. — 5.

^c p. 10. — 3.

^h p. 13. — 7.

^d p. 9. — 1.

ⁱ p. 12. — 1.

^e p. 13. — 9.

^k p. 12. — 3.

^l See for the plural, p. 6. sect. 2.

^m See for the plural, p. 7. sect. 4.

ours,

ours, yours, and theirs. | have you his buttons ?

avez vous a bouton

I have mine, his, and thine ; but he has ours, theirs,

and yours. | Has he done my work ? he has done

fait n ouvrage

mine and his ; but he has forgot yours and theirs.

oublié

He approves your work, but he complains of mine and

Il approuve il se plaint

of his | he likes her conversation, but he is tired of

il aime i conversation il est ennuyé

mine and of yours | he has seen your father and his,

but he has spoken to mine | he likes your laces,

parlé

dentelle

but he gives the preference to mine | I have spoken

il donne la préférence

to your sister : you have addressed yourself to his.

sœur vous vous êtes adressé

Of Pronouns Demonstrative.

They are thus called because they demonstrate, and, as it were, put under our eyes, the nouns before which they come or those they stand for, they are,

this *ce, cet, cette, celui-ci, celle-ci, ceci*

that *ce, cet, cette, celui-la, celle-la, cela*

these *ces, ceuc-ci*

those *ces, ceux-là*

This and *that* being joined to a substantive are rendered by *ce, cet, cette*, but observe ;

1. That *ce* comes before nouns masculine beginning with a consonant ; as, *ce livre* this or that book.

For the gender of these Nouns,

^a See p. 9. sect. 2.

ⁱ See p. 12. sect. 1.

ⁿ p. 10. — 4.

2. *Cet*

2. *Cet* before nouns masculine beginning with a vowel ; as, *cet enfant*, this or that child ; and,

3. *Cette* before nouns feminine ; as, *cette femme*, this or that woman.

4. These and those being joined to a substantive are always rendered by *ces* for both genders.

The particles *ci* and *là*, answering to the adverbs *here* and *there*, are sometimes put after the substantive ; and they serve to demonstrate the person or thing more particularly. *Cet homme ci*, this man here, *cette femme là*, that woman there.

They are also sometimes used to avoid an ambiguity, *ci* denoting a distant object, and *là* a nearer or present one ; but is impossible, in loose and unconnected sentences to make the scholar sensible of their true use ; this must be left to the master's sagacity to explain, or the scholar's own judgment to find out.

E X E R C I S E.

this meadow		that field		this life		that house
1 <i>pré</i>		1 <i>champ</i>		3 <i>vie</i>		3 <i>maison</i>
these good thoughts				this excessive severity		
4 <i>bon pensée</i>				3 <i>excessif sévérité</i>		
that friendship		that honest face		those great men		
3 <i>amitié</i>		1 <i>honnête visage</i>		4 <i>grand homme</i>		
these holy prayers		these fine country dances				
4 <i>Saint priere</i>		4 <i>contredanse</i>				
		the opinions of these severe judges				
		<i>opinion</i>		<i>sévère juge</i>		
that disgraceful custom				this learned man		
2 <i>honteux usage</i>				2 <i>savant homme</i>		
		the accomplishments of this young lady				
		<i>talent</i>		<i>jeune dame</i>		

Of Pronouns Relative.

Pronouns relative are those which relate to a foregoing noun or pronoun, which is called antecedent.
and

They are *who*, *qui*, *whose*, *dont*, *whom*, *que*, *that*, *qui*, *que*, *which*, *lequel*.—This last pronoun agrees in gender and number with the noun to which it refers, and is a compound of *le* and *quel*, which follow the rules given for the article after the prepositions *de* and *à*, page 4th, and those given for the formation of feminines, page 17th, sect. 5.

There are three other relative pronouns *le'*, *en*, *y*, the use of which shall be explained in the Syntax.

Of Pronouns Interrogative.

Pronouns interrogative are used in asking questions, or in sentences which denote doubt and uncertainty, they are, *who*, *whom*, *qui*, *whose*, *de qui*, *which*, *quel*, *lequel*, *what*, *quoi*, *que*, *quel*. *Que* is spelt *qu'* before a vowel.

Of Pronouns Indeterminate.

They express an indeterminate object; as when I say, *some body* has been here, I speak of a person, but without specifying what person it is. They are *one*, *on*, *somebody*, *quelqu'un*, *nobody*, *personne*, *every body*, *every one*, *chacun*, *whosoever*, *quiconque*, *whoever*, *qui que ce soit* *qui*, *nothing*, *rien*, *others*, *autrui*, *any*, *quelque*, *every*, *chaque*, *both*, *one another*, *l'un l'autre*, *either*, *l'un au l'autre*, *neither*, *ni l'un ni l'autre*, *whatever*, *whatsoever*, *quelque que*, *quoi que ce soit* *que*, *several*, *plusieurs*, *none*, *nul*, *aucun*, *pas un*, *all*, *tout*.

As the pronouns personal, relative, interrogative and indeterminate are so much connected with verbs, that it is impossible to give exercises upon the former without introducing the latter, I have thought I could not now propose any exercises upon them, without anticipating too much and going beyond my plan, which is never to bring in any thing that has not been previously explained. I shall therefore treat of verbs first.

Of VERBS.

A Verb is a word that expresses an action done, or received by the nominative, or it only signifies its manner of being.

From thence it follows, there are three sorts of Verbs, Active, Passive, and Neuter.

The Verb Active expresses the action of the nominative upon something; as, *a diligent master loves attentive scholars*, un maitre diligent aime les écoliers attentifs.

The Verb Passive expresses an action received by the nominative; as, *I am beaten*, je suis battu, *he was struck*, il fut frappé.

The Verb Neuter, so called, because it is neither active nor passive, expresses the state of the nominative; as, *I am*, je suis, *I sleep*, je dors: it also expresses an action done by the nominative, but without any object to receive it; as, *I walk*, je marche, *I run*, je cours.

Verbs are also reflected, reciprocal, personal, impersonal.

Reflected Verbs express the action of the nominative upon itself; as, *I hurt myself*, je me blesse.

Reciprocal Verbs express the action of several nominatives upon one another; as, *we love one another*, nous nous aimons, or, nous nous entr'aimons. These verbs have no singular.

Personal Verbs are those which can be used in the three persons of both numbers; as, *I love*, thou lovest, *he loves*, j'aime; tu aimes, il aime; *we love*, you love, *they love*, nous aimons, vous aimez, ils aiment.

Impersonal Verbs are used only in the third person singular, *it matters*, il importe, *it rains*, il pleut.

Of the Conjugation of Verbs.

To conjugate a Verb, is to repeat its different terminations, through every mood, tense, number, and person.

Moods are the different manners of using the Verb. They are four; the infinitive, indicative, imperative, and subjunctive.

The infinitive is so called, because it is not confined to tenses, numbers, and persons. It is generally preceded in English by the preposition *to*; as, *I come TO TELL you*, *je viens vous dire*.

The indicative shews the action in a positive manner; as, *I love*, *j'aime*, *I shall love*, *j'aimerai*.

The imperative commands, prays, exhorts, *let us go*, *allons*, *write*, *écrivez*.

The subjunctive depends upon a verb of the indicative mood expressed in the same sentence, either before or after it, and is generally preceded by a conjunction, such as, *that*, *although*. *I do not think that YOU HAVE*, *je ne crois pas que vous ayez*.

Tenses are periods of time denoting whether an action is, has been, or will be done, they are properly three, the present, preterite and future. Their subdivision in French will be seen in the conjugation of the next verb.

Tenses are also simple or compound.

Simple Tenses are those which are conjugated by themselves; as, *I love*, *j'aime*, *I loved*, *j'aimois*.

Compound Tenses in French are conjugated with the auxiliary verbs, *to have*, *avoir*, *to be*, *être*: but in English, *may*, *might*, *can*, *could*, *do*, *did*, *will*, *would*, *shall* and *should*, are as many auxiliary verbs, and all tenses formed by the help of them, may be called compound in English, though they become simple in French. Thus, *I have given*, which is a compound tense in English, will likewise be a compound one in French, *j'ai donné*: but the future, *I shall give*, which

is a compound in English, will become simple in French, *je donnerai*.

There are two numbers in verbs as well as in nouns, the singular and plural.

Each number is composed of three persons; the first, second, and third: the first speaks of itself; as, *I love*, *j'aime*, *we love*, *nous aimons*; the second is spoken to, as, *thou lovest*, *tu aimes*, *ye or you love*, *vous aimez*; the third is spoken of, as, *he loves*, *il aime*, *she loves*, *elle aime*, *man loves*, *l'homme aime*, *they love*, *ils aiment*, *or elles aiment*, *men love*, *les hommes aiment*.

The difference of conjugations is known in French from the different terminations of the infinitive, which ends in *er*, *ir*, *oir*, or *re*. Therefore, I shall only distinguish four conjugations:

The first in *er*, like *aimer*, to love.

The second in *ir*, like *punir*, to punish.

The third in *oir*, like *devoir*, to owe.

The fourth in *re*, like *rendre*, to render.

As all the verbs of these conjugations form their compound tenses with *avoir*, to have, and *être*, to be, I shall begin by them.

AVOIR, *to have.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Avoir, to have,</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>avoir eu, to have had,</i>
<i>Participle.</i>	<i>eu, had,</i>
<i>Gerund present.</i>	<i>ayant, having,</i>
<i>Gerund past.</i>	<i>ayant eu, having had.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>J'ai, I have,</i>	<i>Nous avons, we have,</i>
<i>tu as, thou hast,</i>	<i>vous avez, you have,</i>
<i>il a, he has.</i>	<i>ils ont, they have.</i>

Imperfect.

<i>J'avois, I had,</i>	<i>Nous avions, we had,</i>
<i>tu avois, thou hadst,</i>	<i>vous aviez, you had,</i>
<i>il avoit, he had.</i>	<i>ils avoient, they had.</i>

Perfect Definite.

<i>J'eus, I had,</i>	<i>Nous eûmes, we had,</i>
<i>tu eus, thou hadst,</i>	<i>vous eûtes, you had,</i>
<i>il eut, he had.</i>	<i>ils eurent, they had.</i>

Perfect Indefinite.

<i>J'ai eu, I have had,</i>	<i>Nous avons eu, we have had,</i>
<i>tu as eu, thou hast had,</i>	<i>vous avez eu, you have had,</i>
<i>il a eu, he has had.</i>	<i>ils ont eu, they have had.</i>

First Pluperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
J'avois eu, <i>I had had,</i>	Nous avions eu, <i>we had had,</i>
tu avois eu, <i>thou hadst had,</i>	vous aviez eu, <i>you had had,</i>
il avoit eu, <i>he had had.</i>	ils avoient eu, <i>they had had.</i>

Second Pluperfect.

J'eus eu, <i>I had had,</i>	Nous eûmes eu, <i>we had had,</i>
tu eus eu, <i>thou hadst had,</i>	vous eûtes eu, <i>you had had,</i>
il eut eu, <i>he had had.</i>	ils eurent eu, <i>they had had.</i>

Future Simple.

J'aurai, <i>I shall have</i>	Nous aurons, <i>we shall have,</i>
tu auras, <i>thou wilt have,</i>	vous aurez, <i>you will have,</i>
il aura, <i>he will have.</i>	ils auront, <i>they will have.</i>

Future Compound.

J'aurai eu, <i>I shall have had,</i>	Nous aurons eu, <i>we shall have had,</i>
tu auras eu, <i>thou wilt have had,</i>	vous aurez eu, <i>you will have had,</i>
il aura eu, <i>he will have had.</i>	ils auront eu, <i>they will have had.</i>

Conditional Present.

J'aurois, <i>I should have,</i>	Nous aurions, <i>we should have,</i>
tu aurois, <i>thou wouldst have,</i>	vous auriez, <i>you would have,</i>
il auroit, <i>he would have.</i>	ils auroient, <i>they would have.</i>

Conditional

Conditional Past.

Singular.	Plural.
J'aurois eu, <i>I should have had,</i>	Nous aurions eu, <i>we should have had,</i>
tu aurois eu, <i>thou wouldst have had,</i>	vous auriez eu, <i>you would have had,</i>
il auroit eu, <i>he would have had.</i>	ils auroient eu, <i>they would have had.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.	Plural.
Aye, <i>have thou,</i> qu'il ait, <i>let him have.</i>	Ayons, <i>let us have,</i> ayez, <i>have,</i> qu'ils ayent, <i>let them have.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.	Plural.
Que <i>that</i> j'aye, <i>I may have,</i> tu ayes, <i>thou mayest have,</i> il ait, <i>he may have.</i>	Nous ayons, <i>we may have,</i> vous ayez, <i>you may have,</i> ils ayent, <i>they may have.</i>

Imperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Que <i>that</i> j'eusse, <i>I might have,</i> tu eusses, <i>thou mightest have,</i> il eût, <i>he might have.</i>	Nous eussions, <i>we might have,</i> vous eussiez, <i>you might have,</i> ils eussent, <i>they might have.</i>

Perfect

Perfect.

Singular.		Plural.
Que	that	
j'aye eu,	<i>I may have</i>	Nous ayons eu, <i>we may have</i>
had,		had,
tu ayes eu,	<i>thou mayest</i>	vous ayez eu, <i>you may have</i>
have had,		had,
il ait eu,	<i>he may have had.</i>	ils ayent eu, <i>they may have had.</i>

Pluperfect.

Que	that	
j'eusse eu,	<i>I might have</i>	Nous eussions eu, <i>we might</i>
had,		have had,
tu eusses eu,	<i>thou mightest</i>	vous eussiez eu, <i>you might</i>
have had.		have had.
il eût eu,	<i>he might have</i>	ils eussent eu, <i>they might</i>
had.		have had.

CONJUGATION

Of the auxiliary Verb ETRE, *to be.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Etre, <i>to be,</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	avoir été, <i>to have been,</i>
<i>Participle.</i>	été, <i>been,</i>
<i>Gerund present.</i>	étant, <i>being,</i>
<i>Gerund past.</i>	ayant été, <i>having been.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.	Plural.
Je suis, <i>I am,</i>	Nous sommes, <i>we are,</i>
tu es, <i>thou art,</i>	vous êtes, <i>you are,</i>
ils est, <i>he is.</i>	ils sont, <i>they are.</i>

Imperfect.

Imperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
J'étois, <i>I was,</i> tu étois, <i>thou wast,</i> il étoit, <i>he was.</i>	Nous étions, <i>we were,</i> vous étiez, <i>you were,</i> ils étoient, <i>they were.</i>

Perfect Definite.

Je fus, <i>I was,</i> tu fus, <i>thou wast,</i> il fut, <i>he was.</i>	Nous fûmes, <i>we were,</i> vous fûtes, <i>you were,</i> ils furent, <i>they were.</i>
--	--

Perfect Indefinite.

J'ai été, <i>I have been,</i> tu as été, <i>thou hadst been,</i> il a été, <i>he has been.</i>	Nous avons été, <i>we have been,</i> vous avez été, <i>you have been,</i> ils ont été, <i>they have been.</i>
--	---

First Pluperfect.

J'avois été, <i>I had been,</i> tu avois été, <i>thou hadst been,</i> il avoit été, <i>he had been.</i>	Nous avions été, <i>we had been,</i> vous aviez été, <i>you had been,</i> ils avoient été, <i>they had been.</i>
---	--

Second Pluperfect.

J'eus été, <i>I had been,</i> tu eus été, <i>thou hadst been,</i> il eut été, <i>he had been.</i>	Nous eûmes été, <i>we had been,</i> vous eûtes été, <i>you had been,</i> ils eurent été, <i>they had been.</i>
---	--

Future Simple.

Je serai, <i>I shall be,</i> tu seras, <i>thou wilt be,</i> il sera, <i>he will be.</i>	Nous serons, <i>we shall be,</i> vous serez, <i>you will be,</i> ils seront, <i>they will be.</i>
---	---

Future

Future Compound.

Singular.	Plural.
J'aurai été, <i>I shall have been,</i>	Nous aurons été, <i>we shall have been,</i>
tu auras été, <i>thou wilt have been,</i>	vous aurez été, <i>you will have been,</i>
il aura été, <i>he will have been.</i>	ils auront été, <i>they will have been.</i>

Conditional Present.

Je serois, <i>I should be,</i>	Nous serions, <i>we should be,</i>
tu serois, <i>thou wouldest be,</i>	vous seriez, <i>you would be,</i>
il seroit, <i>he would be.</i>	ils seroient, <i>they would be.</i>

Conditional Past.

J'aurois été, <i>I should have been,</i>	Nous aurions été, <i>we should have been,</i>
tu aurois été, <i>thou wouldest have been,</i>	vous auriez été, <i>you would have been,</i>
il auroit été, <i>he would have been.</i>	ils auroient été, <i>they would have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.	Plural.
Sois, <i>be thou,</i>	Soyons, <i>let us be,</i>
qu'il soit, <i>let him be.</i>	soyez, <i>be,</i>
	qu'ils soient, <i>let them be.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.	Plural.
Que <i>that</i>	
je fois, <i>I may be,</i>	Nous foyons, <i>we may be,</i>
tu fois, <i>thou mayest be,</i>	vous foyez, <i>you may be,</i>
il soit, <i>he may be.</i>	ils soient, <i>they may be.</i>

Imperfect

Imperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Que <i>that</i> je fusse, <i>I might be,</i> tu fusses, <i>thou mightest be,</i> il fût, <i>he might be.</i>	Nous fussions, <i>we might be,</i> vous fussiez, <i>you might be,</i> ils fussent, <i>they might be.</i>

Perfect.

Que <i>that</i> j'aye été, <i>I may have</i> <i>been,</i> tu ayes été, <i>thou mayest</i> <i>have been,</i> il ait été, <i>he may have</i> <i>been.</i>	Nous ayons été, <i>we may</i> <i>have been,</i> vous ayez été, <i>you may</i> <i>have been,</i> ils aient été, <i>they may have</i> <i>been.</i>
---	---

Pluperfect.

Que <i>that</i> j'eusse été, <i>I might have</i> <i>been,</i> tu eusses été, <i>thou mightest</i> <i>have been,</i> il eût été, <i>he might have</i> <i>been.</i>	Nous eussions été, <i>we might</i> <i>have been,</i> vous eussiez été, <i>you might</i> <i>have been,</i> ils eussent été, <i>they might</i> <i>have been.</i>
---	---

R U L E S

For the Formation of TENSES.

In the four regular Verbs, as well as in most of the irregular, five terminations serve to form the others. They are, in the infinitive, the present, gerund, and participle; in the indicative, the first person singular of the present, the first person singular of the perfect definite.

INDICATIVE

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

1. If the first person singular ends in *e*, the second ends in *es*, and the third is like the first ; as,

je donne, tu donnes, il donne, I give, &c.

2. If the first person ends in *s*, or *x*, the second is like the first, in the third you change *s*, or *x*, into *t* ; as,

je punis, tu punis, il punit, I punish, &c.

je veux, tu veux, il veut, I will, &c.

3. If the first person ends in *cs*, *ts*, *ds*, the second is alike, and in the third the *s* is cut off ; as,

je convains, tu convains, il convainc, I convince, &c.

je bats, tu bats, il bat, I beat, &c.

je rends, tu rends, il rend, I render, &c.

4. The plural always ends in *ons*, *ez*, *ent*, and is formed from the gerund, by changing *ant* into *ons* for the first person, *ez* for the second, *ent* for the third.

5. If the gerund ends in *yant*, the third plural may be spelt *ient* instead of *yent*.

6. Verbs of the third conjugation, like *recevoir*, form the third plural from the third singular, by cutting off the last letter, and from the gerund, by changing *vant*, into *vent* ; thus from *il reçoit*, he receives, and *recevant*, receiving, is formed the third plural *ils reçoivent*.

EXERCISE.

Gerund.

Present.

Giving. Sing. I give, thou givest, he gives,

Donnant. *je donne* I

Plur. we give, you give, they give,

Gerund.

Present.

Sending.

Sing. I send, thou sendest, he sends,

Envoyant.

j'envoie, 1

Plur. we send, you send, they send.

4

5

Blushing.

I blush, thou blushest, he blushes.

Rougissant.

je rougis, 2

we blush, you blush, they blush,

4

Owing.

I owe, thou owest, he owes,

Devant.

je dois, 2

we owe, you owe, they owe,

4

6

Being worth.

I am worth, thou art worth, he is

Valant.

je vaux, 2

worth,

we are worth, you are worth, they

4

are worth.

Convincing.

I convince, thou convincest, he

Convainquant.

je convains, 3

convinces,

we convince, you convince, they

4

convince,

Fighting.

I fight, thou fightest, he fights,

Combattant.

je combats, 3

we fight, you fight, they fight,

4

Selling.

I sell, thou sellest, he sells,

Vendant.

je vends, 3

we sell, you sell, they sell,

4

E

Imperfect.

Imperfect.

The imperfect is also formed from the gerund, by changing *ant* into *ois* for the first and second persons singular, *oit* for the third, *ions* for the first plural, *iez* for the second, and *oient* for the third.

E X E R C I S E.

Gerund.

Dining.

Dinant.

Sing. I did dine, thou didst dine, he did dine,

Plur. we did dine, you did dine, they did dine,

Blushing.

Rouissant.

I did blush, thou didst blush, he did blush,

we did blush, you did blush, they did blush.

Owing.

Devant.

I did owe, thou didst owe, he did owe,

we did owe, you did owe, they did owe,

Selling.

Vendant.

I did sell, thou didst sell, he did sell, we did sell, you did sell, they did sell,

Perfect Definite.

The perfect definite has four different terminations,

ai, as, a, âmes, âtes, erent.

is, is, it, îmes, îtes, îrent.

us, us, ut, ûmes, ûtes, ûrent.

ins, ins, int, inmes, intes, inrent.

The first termination in *ai*, only belongs to verbs of the first conjugation.

The second in *is*, and the third in *us*, belong to verbs of the three other conjugations, and cannot be determined from any rule.

The fourth in *ins*, belongs only to the verbs *venir* to come, *tenir* to hold, and their compounds.

E X E R C I S E.

EXERCISE.

Sing. I dined, thou dinedst, he dined,
je dinai,

Plur. we dined, you dined, they dined.

I blushed, thou blushedst, he blushed,
je rougis,
we blushed, you blushed, they blushed.

I received, thou receivedst, he received,
je reçus,
we received, you received, they received.

I attained, thou attainedst, he attained,
je parvins,
we attained, you attained, they attained.

Future.

The future is formed from the present of the infinitive.

1. By changing *r*, or *re*, according to the infinitive's ending in either of these terminations, into *rai*, *ras*, *ra*, *rons*, *rez*, *ront*.

2. Verbs in *avoir*, change it into *aurai*, as from *recevoir*, to receive, is formed *je recevrai*, I shall receive, *tu recevras*, thou shalt receive, &c.

3. The verbs *venir*, to come, *tenir*, to hold, and their compounds change *enir* into *iendrai*; as, *je viendrai*, I shall come, *je tiendrai*, I shall hold.

EXERCISE.

Pres. of the Inf.

To dine. Sing. I shall dine, thou wilt dine, he
Diner.

1
will dine,
we shall dine, you will dine, they
will dine.

E 2

Pres.

Pres. of the Inf.

To blush. Sing. I shall blush, thou wilt blush,
Rougir.

1

he will blush.

Plur. we shall blush, you will blush,
they will blush.

To owe.

Devoir.

I shall owe, thou wilt owe,

2

he will owe.

we shall owe, you will owe,
they will owe.

To sell.

Vendre.

I shall sell, thou wilt sell, he will sell.

1

we shall sell, you will sell,
they will sell.

To hold.

Tenir.

I shall hold, thou wilt hold,

3

he will hold.

we shall hold, you will hold,
they will hold.

Conditional.

The conditional is formed from the future by changing *rai* into *rais*, *rois*, *roit*, *riens*, *riez*, *roient*.

EXERCISE.

Future.

I shall dine.

Je dînerai.

I should dine, thou wouldst dine,

he would dine,

we should dine, you would dine,
they would dine.

I shall owe.

Je devrai.

I should owe, thou wouldst owe,

he would owe.

we should owe, you would owe,
they would owe.

Future.

Future.

[41]

I shall hold. Sing. I should hold, thou wouldst hold,
Je tiendrai. he would hold.

Plur. we should hold, you would hold,
they would hold.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. The second person singular, is like the first person singular of the present of the indicative; as, *je donne*, I give, *donne*, give thou, *je rougis*, I blush, *rougis*, blush thou.

2. The third person singular, is formed from the third plural of the present of the indicative, by cutting off *nt*; as, *ils donnent*, they give, *qu'il donne*, let him give, *ils rougissent*, they blush, *qu'il rougisse*, let him blush.

3. The first, second, and third plural are like the first, second, and third plural of the indicative; as, *nous donnons*, *vous donnez*, *ils donnent*; imperative, *donnons*, let us give, *donnez*, give, *qu'ils donnent*, let them give.

Observe, that *que* must be put before the third person, both in the singular and plural; as, *qu'il donne*, let him give, *qu'ils donnent*, let them give, and the pronoun is suppressed in the second persons, and in the first plural; as, *donne*, give thou, *donnons*, let us give, *donnez*, give ye.

EXERCISE.

From the present of the indicative of the following verbs,

Sing. *je dine*,—Plur. *nous dinons*, *vous dinez*, *ils dinent*,
je dois. *nous devons*, *vous devez*, *ils doivent*.

Write their imperative,

Sing. dine thou, let him dine,

Plur. ¹ let us dine, ² dine ye, let them dine,

³ owe thou, let him owe,

¹ let us owe, ² owe ye, let them owe.

3

E 3

SUB-

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

This tense always ends in *e, es, e, ions, iez, ent.*

1. The first person is like the third person singular of the imperative, and serves to form the second and third.

Thus from the third person of the imperative *qu'il donne* is formed,

Que je donne, tu donnes, il donne.

2. The first and second plural end in *ions, iez*, and are like the first and second plural of the imperfect, in the indicative.

3. The third is like the third of the imperative.

EXERCISE.

Write the present of the subjunctive of the two verbs *parler*, to speak, *gémir*, to groan, from their imperatives *parle, qu'il parle. Parlons, parlez, qu'ils parlent*; and *gémis, qu'il gémissé. Gémissons, gémissiez, qu'ils gémissent.*

Find the terminations of the first and second plural of their imperfects, from their gerunds *parlant, gémissant*, according to the rule given page 38.

Sing. I may speak, thou mayest speak, he may speak,

1

Plur. we may speak, you may speak, they may speak.

2

3

I may groan, thou mayest groan, he may groan,

1

we may groan, you may groan, they may groan.

2

3

Imperfect.

The imperfect of the subjunctive has four terminations ;

asse, asses, ât assions, assiez, assent.

îsse, îsses, ît, îssions, îssiez, îssent.

usse, usses, ût, ussions, ussiez, ussent,

inssé, insses, int, inssions, inssiez, inssent.

It is formed from the first person singular of the perfect of the indicative, by changing *ai* into *asse*, for the first conjugation, and by adding *se* to the others ; as, *je parlai, je parlasse, je punis, je punisse*.

EXERCISE.

Perf. of the Ind.

I dined. <i>je dinai.</i>	Sing. I might dine, thou mightest dine, he might dine. Plur. we might dine, you might dine, they might dine.
I blushed. <i>je rougis.</i>	I might blush, thou mightest blush, he might blush. we might blush, you might blush, they might blush.
I received. <i>je reçus.</i>	I might receive, thou mightest receive, he might receive. we might receive, you might receive, they might receive.
I came. <i>je vins.</i>	I might come, thou mightest come, he might come. we might come, you might come, they might come.

Upon the Formation of Compound TENSES.

The compound tenses of a verb are formed from its participle, and the auxiliary verbs, *avoir*, to have, or, *être*, to be.

In the infinitive, the perfect is formed from the participle, and the present of the infinitive of the auxiliary, *avoir aimé*, to have loved, *être tombé*, to have fallen.

The gerund past, from the participle, and the gerund present of the auxiliary, *ayant aimé*, having loved, *étant tombé*, having fallen.

In the indicative, the perfect indefinite is formed from the participle of the verb conjugated, and the present of the auxiliary, *j'ai aimé*, I have loved, *je suis tombé*, I have fallen.

The

The first pluperfect, from the participle, and the imperfect of the auxiliary, *j'avois aimé*, I had loved, *j'étois tombé*, I had fallen.

The second pluperfect, from the participle, and the perfect definite of the auxiliary, *j'eus aimé*, I had loved, *je fus tombé*, I had fallen.

The compound of the future, from the participle, and the future of the auxiliary, *j'aurai aimé*, I shall have loved, *je serai tombé*, I shall have fallen.

The conditional past, from the participle, and the conditional of the auxiliary, *j'aurois aimé*, I should have loved, *je serois tombé*, I should have fallen.

In the subjunctive, the perfect is formed from the participle, and the present of the subjunctive of the auxiliary, *j'ai aimé*, I have, or may have loved, *je sois tombé*, I have, or may have fallen.

The pluperfect, from the participle, and the imperfect of the subjunctive of the auxiliary, *j'eusse aimé*, I had, or might have loved, *je fusse tombé*, I had, or might have fallen.

FIRST CONJUGATION

Of Verbs in *er*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>parler, to speak,</i>
<i>Participle.</i>	<i>parlé, spoken,</i>
<i>Gerund present.</i>	<i>parlant, speaking.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>Je parle, I speak, or do speak,</i>	<i>Nous parlons, we speak,</i>
<i>tu parles, thou speakest,</i>	<i>vous parlez, you speak,</i>
<i>il parle, he speaketh.</i>	<i>ils parlent, they speak.</i>

Imperfect

Imperfect.

Singular.

Je parlois, *I spoke or did speak,*
 tu parlois, *thou didst speak,*
 il parloit, *he did speak.*

Plural.

Nous parlions, *we did speak,*
 vous parliez, *you did speak,*
 ils parloient, *they did speak.*

Perfect Definite.

Je parlai, *I spoke, or did speak,*
 tu parlas, *thou spokest,*
 il parla, *he spoke.*

Nous parlâmes, *we spoke,*
 vous parlâtes, *you spoke,*
 ils parlerent, *they spoke.*

Future.

Je parlerai, *I shall, or will*
 speak,
 tu parleras, *thou wilt speak,*
 il parlera, *he will speak.*

Nous parlerons, *we shall*
 speak,
 vous parlerez, *you will speak,*
 ils parleront, *they will speak.*

Conditional.

Je parlerois, *I should, or*
 would speak,
 tu parlerois, *thou wouldst*
 speak,
 il parleroit, *he would speak.*

Nous parlerions, *we should*
 speak,
 vous parleriez, *you would*
 speak,
 ils parleroient, *they would*
 speak.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.

Parle, *speak thou,*
 qu'il parle, *let him speak.*

Plural.

Parlons, *let us speak,*
 parlez, *speak, or speak ye,*
 qu'ils parlent, *let them speak.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

	Singular.	Plural.
Que	that	
je parle,	<i>I speak, or may</i>	Nous parlions, <i>we may</i>
<i>speak,</i>		<i>speak,</i>
tu parles,	<i>thou mayest</i>	vous parliez, <i>you may</i>
<i>speak,</i>		<i>speak,</i>
il parle,	<i>he may speak.</i>	ils parlent, <i>they may speak.</i>

Imperfect.

Que	that	
je parlasse,	<i>I spoke, or</i>	Nous parlussions, <i>we might</i>
<i>might speak,</i>		<i>speak,</i>
tu parlasses,	<i>thou mightest</i>	vous parlassiez, <i>you might</i>
<i>speak,</i>		<i>speak,</i>
il parlât,	<i>he might speak.</i>	ils parlassent, <i>they might</i>
		<i>speak.</i>

Observations upon the First Conjugation.

1. In verbs that end in *ger*, the syllables *ga* and *go*, are spelt *gea* and *geo*; as, *juger*, to judge, *jugeant*, judging, *nous jugeons*, we judge, instead of *jugant*, *jugons*.
2. In verbs in *ier*, like *prier*, to pray, you spell the imperfect of the indicative, or present of the subjunctive *nous priions*, or *nous priions*, *vous priez*, or *vous priez*.
3. *Envoyer*, to send, and *renvoyer*, make in the future *j'enverrai*, and *je renverrai*.

Verbs to be Conjugated upon *Parler*.

aimer	<i>to love,</i>	fortifier,	<i>to strengthen,</i>
accuser,	<i>to accuse,</i>	forcer,	<i>to force,</i>
assister,	<i>to assist,</i>	friser,	<i>to curl,</i>
appeller,	<i>to call,</i>	informer,	<i>to inform,</i>
abandonner,	<i>to abandon,</i>	insister,	<i>to insist,</i>
achever,	<i>to finish,</i>	• jurer,	<i>to swear,</i>
armer,	<i>to arm,</i>	jetter,	<i>to throw,</i>
blâmer,	<i>to blame,</i>	jaſer,	<i>to prattle,</i>
brûler,	<i>to burn,</i>	louer,	<i>to praise,</i>
barbouiller,	<i>to daub,</i>	montrer,	<i>to shew,</i>
chanter,	<i>to sing,</i>	marcher,	<i>to walk,</i>
chercher,	<i>to seek,</i>	nager,	<i>to swim,</i>
commencer,	<i>to begin,</i>	parler,	<i>to speak,</i>
céder,	<i>to yield,</i>	penser,	<i>to think,</i>
changer,	<i>to change,</i>	proposer,	<i>to propose,</i>
consulter,	<i>to consult,</i>	protéger,	<i>to protect,</i>
chasser,	<i>to drive,</i>	pardonner,	<i>to forgive,</i>
congratuler,	<i>to congratulate,</i>	publier,	<i>to publish,</i>
donner,	<i>to give,</i>	préparer,	<i>to prepare,</i>
danſer,	<i>to dance,</i>	payer,	<i>to pay,</i>
diner,	<i>to dine,</i>	prêter,	<i>to lend,</i>
déjeuner,	<i>to breakfast,</i>	reculer,	<i>to draw back,</i>
demander,	<i>to ask,</i>	racheter,	<i>to redeem,</i>
égaler,	<i>to equal,</i>	récompenser,	<i>to reward,</i>
expliquer,	<i>to explain,</i>	remercier,	<i>to thank,</i>
envoyer,	<i>to send,</i>	regarder,	<i>to look at,</i>
épeler	<i>to spell,</i>	reposer,	<i>to rest,</i>
éviter,	<i>to avoid,</i>	sauter,	<i>to leap,</i>
épuiſer,	<i>to exhaust,</i>	ſécouer,	<i>to shake,</i>
écouter,	<i>to listen,</i>	tuer,	<i>to kill,</i>
emporter,	<i>to carry away,</i>	voler,	<i>to fly,</i>
frapper,	<i>to strike,</i>	vider,	<i>to empty,</i>
fermer,	<i>to shut,</i>	viſer,	<i>to aim.</i>

SECOND CONJUGATION .

Of Verbs in *ir*,

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Punir,	to punish,
<i>Participle.</i>	Puni,	punished,
<i>Gerund present.</i>	Punissant,	punishing.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.	Plural.
Je punis, <i>I punish or do punish,</i>	Nous punissons, <i>we punish,</i>
tu punis, <i>thou punishest,</i>	vous punissez, <i>you punish,</i>
il punit, <i>he punishes.</i>	ils punissent, <i>they punish.</i>

Imperfect.

Je punissois, <i>I punished, or did punish,</i>	Nous punissions, <i>we did punish,</i>
tu punissois, <i>thou didst punish,</i>	vous punissiez, <i>you did punish,</i>
il punissoit, <i>he did punish.</i>	ils punissoient, <i>they did punish.</i>

Perfect.

Je punis, <i>I punished, or did punish,</i>	Nous punîmes, <i>we punished,</i>
tu punis, <i>thou punishest,</i>	vous punîtes, <i>you punished.</i>
il punit, <i>he punished.</i>	ils punîrent, <i>they punished.</i>

Future.

Future.

Singular.	Plural.
Je punirai, <i>I shall or will</i> <i>punish,</i>	Nous punirons, <i>we shall</i> <i>punish,</i>
Tu puniras, <i>thou wilt</i> <i>punish,</i>	Vous punirez, <i>you will</i> <i>punish,</i>
Il punira, <i>he will punish.</i>	Ils puniront, <i>they will</i> <i>punish.</i>

Conditional.

Je punirois, <i>I should or would</i> <i>punish,</i>	Nous punirions, <i>we should</i> <i>punish,</i>
Tu punirois, <i>thou wouldst</i> <i>punish,</i>	Vous puniriez, <i>you would</i> <i>punish,</i>
Il puniroit, <i>he would punish.</i>	Ils puniroient, <i>they would</i> <i>punish.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.	Plural.
Punis, <i>punish thou,</i> qu'il punisse, <i>let him</i> <i>punish.</i>	Punissons, <i>let us punish,</i> punissez, <i>punish,</i> qu'ils punissent, <i>let them</i> <i>punish.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.	Plural.
Que <i>that</i> Je punisse <i>I punish or</i> <i>may punish,</i> tu punisses, <i>thou mayest</i> <i>punish,</i> il punisse, <i>he may</i> <i>punish.</i>	Nous punissions, <i>we may</i> <i>punish,</i> vous punissiez, <i>you may</i> <i>punish,</i> ils punissent, <i>they may</i> <i>punish.</i>

F

Imperfect

Imperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Que <i>that</i>	
je punîsse, <i>I punished or might punish,</i>	Nous punîssions, <i>we might punish,</i>
tu punîsses, <i>thou mightest punish,</i>	vous punîssiez, <i>you might punish,</i>
il punît, <i>he might punish.</i>	ils punissent, <i>they might punish.</i>

Verbs to be Conjugated upon *punir*.

applaudir,	<i>to applaud,</i>	embellir,	<i>to embellish,</i>
amollir,	<i>to soften,</i>	étrécir,	<i>to make narrow</i>
accomplir,	<i>to fulfil,</i>	farcir,	<i>to stuff,</i>
accourcir,	<i>to make short</i>	fournir,	<i>to furnish,</i>
affranchir,	<i>to make free,</i>	fleurir,	<i>to flourish,</i>
aggrandir,	<i>to enlarge,</i>	flétrir,	<i>to wither,</i>
affoiblir,	<i>to weaken,</i>	guérir,	<i>to cure,</i>
bannir,	<i>to banish,</i>	gémir,	<i>to groan,</i>
choisir,	<i>to choose,</i>	nourrir,	<i>to nourish,</i>
compatir,	<i>to commiserate</i>	obéir,	<i>to obey,</i>
convertir,	<i>to convert,</i>	périr,	<i>to perish,</i>
démolir,	<i>to demolish,</i>	pourrir,	<i>to grow rotten,</i>
définir,	<i>to define,</i>	pâtir,	<i>to suffer,</i>
désobéir,	<i>to disobey,</i>	pâlir,	<i>to grow pale,</i>
divertir,	<i>to divert,</i>	rôtir,	<i>to roast,</i>
désunir,	<i>to disunite,</i>	réussir,	<i>to succeed,</i>
durcir,	<i>to harden</i>	rafraîchir,	<i>to refresh,</i>
emplir,	<i>to fill</i>	réfléchir,	<i>to reflect,</i>
épaissir,	<i>to thicken,</i>	remplir,	<i>to fill,</i>
envahir,	<i>to invade,</i>	rougir,	<i>to blush,</i>
engloutir,	<i>to swallow up,</i>	trahir,	<i>to betray.</i>
étourdir,	<i>to stun,</i>	vieillir,	<i>to grow old.</i>
éblouir,	<i>to dazzle,</i>		

THIRD CONJUGATION

Of Verbs in *air*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Recevoir, <i>to receive,</i>
<i>Participle.</i>	reçu, <i>received,</i>
<i>Gerund present.</i>	recevant, <i>receiving.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Je reçois, <i>I receive or do receive,</i>	Nous recevons, <i>we receive,</i>
tu reçois, <i>thou receivest,</i>	vous recevez, <i>you receive,</i>
il reçoit, <i>he receives.</i>	ils reçoivent, <i>they receive.</i>

Imperfect.

Je recevois, <i>I received or did receive,</i>	Nous recevions, <i>we did receive,</i>
tu recevois, <i>thou didst receive,</i>	vous receviez, <i>you did receive,</i>
il recevoit, <i>he did receive.</i>	ils recevoient, <i>they did receive.</i>

Perfect Definite.

Je reçus, <i>I received or did receive,</i>	Nous reçûmes, <i>we received,</i>
tu reçus, <i>thou receivedst,</i>	vous reçûtes, <i>you received,</i>
il reçut, <i>he received.</i>	ils reçurent, <i>they received.</i>

Future.

Je recevrai, <i>I shall or will</i> <i>receive,</i>	Nous recevrons, <i>we shall</i> <i>receive,</i>
tu recevras, <i>thou wilt re-</i> <i>ceive,</i>	vous recevrez, <i>you will re-</i> <i>ceive,</i>
il recevra, <i>he will receive.</i>	ils recevront, <i>they will re-</i> <i>ceive.</i>

Conditional.

Je recevrais, <i>I should or</i> <i>would receive,</i>	Nous recevriions, <i>we should</i> <i>receive,</i>
tu recevrais, <i>thou wouldst</i> <i>receive,</i>	vous recevriez, <i>you would</i> <i>receive,</i>
il recevrait, <i>he would receive.</i>	ils recevraient, <i>they would</i> <i>receive.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.	Plural.
Reçois, <i>receive thou,</i>	Recevons, <i>let us receive,</i>
qu'il reçoive, <i>let him re-</i> <i>ceive.</i>	recevez, <i>receive ye,</i>
	qu'ils reçoivent, <i>let them</i> <i>receive.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.	Plural.
Que <i>that</i> je reçoive, <i>I receive or</i> <i>may receive,</i>	Nous recevions, <i>we may</i> <i>receive,</i>
tu reçoives, <i>thou mayest</i> <i>receive,</i>	vous receviez, <i>you may re-</i> <i>ceive,</i>
il reçoive, <i>he may re-</i> <i>ceive.</i>	ils reçoivent, <i>they may re-</i> <i>ceive.</i>

Imperfect.

Imperfect.

Je reçusse, <i>I received or</i>	Nous reçussions, <i>we might</i>
<i>might receive,</i>	<i>receive,</i>
tu reçusses, <i>thou mightest</i>	vous reçussiez, <i>you might</i>
<i>receive,</i>	<i>receive,</i>
il reçût, <i>he might receive.</i>	ils reçussent, <i>they might re-</i>
	<i>ceive.</i>

Verbs to be Conjugated upon *recevoir*.

Devoir, <i>to owe,</i>	Appercevoir, <i>to perceive</i>
redevoir, <i>to owe again,</i>	décevoir. <i>to deceive.</i>
concevoir, <i>to conceive.</i>	

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Of Verbs in *re*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Rendre, <i>to render,</i>
<i>Participle.</i>	rendu, <i>rendered,</i>
<i>Gerund present.</i>	rendant, <i>rendering.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.	Plural.
Je rends, <i>I render,</i>	Nous rendons, <i>we render,</i>
tu rends, <i>thou renderest,</i>	vous rendez, <i>you render,</i>
il rend, <i>he renders.</i>	ils rendent, <i>they render.</i>

Imperfect.

Je rendois, <i>I rendered or</i> <i>did render,</i>	Nous rendions, <i>we did</i> <i>render,</i>
tu rendois, <i>thou didst render,</i>	vous rendiez, <i>you did ren-</i> <i>der,</i>
il rendoit, <i>he did render.</i>	ils rendoient, <i>they did ren-</i> <i>der.</i>

Perfect Definite.

Je rendis, <i>I rendered or did</i> <i>render,</i>	Nous rendîmes, <i>we ren-</i> <i>dered,</i>
tu rendis, <i>thou didst render,</i>	vous rendîtes, <i>you rendered,</i>
il rendit, <i>he did render.</i>	ils rendîrent, <i>they rendered.</i>

Future.

Je rendrai, <i>I shall or will</i> <i>render,</i>	Nous rendrons, <i>we shall</i> <i>render,</i>
tu rendras, <i>thou wilt ren-</i> <i>der,</i>	vous rendrez, <i>you will</i> <i>render,</i>
il rendra, <i>he will render.</i>	ils rendront, <i>they will ren-</i> <i>der.</i>

Conditional.

Singular.	Plural.
Je rendrois, <i>I should or</i> <i>would render,</i>	Nous rendrions, <i>we should</i> <i>render,</i>
tu rendrois, <i>thou wouldst</i> <i>render,</i>	vous rendriez, <i>you would</i> <i>render,</i>
il rendroit, <i>he would render.</i>	ils rendroient, <i>they would</i> <i>render.</i>

IMPERATIVE

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.	Plural.
Rends, <i>render thou,</i> qu'il rende, <i>let him render.</i>	Rendons, <i>let us render,</i> rendez, <i>render,</i> qu'ils rendent, <i>let them</i> <i>render.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.	Plural.
Que <i>that</i> je rende, <i>I render or</i> <i>may render,</i> tu rendes, <i>thou mayest</i> <i>render,</i> il rende, <i>he may ren-</i> <i>der.</i>	Nous rendions, <i>we may</i> <i>render,</i> vous rendiez, <i>you may ren-</i> <i>der.</i> ils rendent, <i>they may ren-</i> <i>der.</i>

Imperfect.

Que <i>that</i> je rendisse, <i>I rendered</i> <i>or might render,</i> tu rendisses, <i>thou might-</i> <i>est render,</i> il rendît, <i>he might</i> <i>render.</i>	Nous rendissions, <i>we might</i> <i>render,</i> vous rendissiez, <i>you might</i> <i>render,</i> ils rendissent, <i>they might</i> <i>render.</i>
--	---

The *i* in this last tense is marked with a circumflex only in the third person singular, to distinguish it from the same person of the perfect definite in the indicative; whereas in the verb *punir*, such an accent was wanted throughout the whole tense to distinguish it from the present of the same mood.

Verbs to be Conjugated upon *rendre*.

attendre,	<i>to wait,</i>	pondre,	<i>to lay eggs,</i>
perdre,	<i>to lose,</i>	répandre,	<i>to spread,</i>
prétendre,	<i>to pretend,</i>	tendre,	<i>to bend,</i>
répondre,	<i>to answer,</i>	tondre	<i>to shear,</i>
descendre,	<i>to come down,</i>	condescendre,	<i>to condescend,</i>
mordre,	<i>to bite,</i>	confondre,	<i>to confound,</i>
entendre	<i>to understand</i>	dépendre	<i>to depend,</i>
fendre,	<i>to cleave,</i>	suspendre,	<i>to suspend,</i>
fondre,	<i>to melt,</i>	correspondre,	<i>to correspond,</i>
pendre,	<i>to hang,</i>	étendre,	<i>to stretch out.</i>

Verbs Impersonal are conjugated thus,
y avoir.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>y avoir,</i>	<i>there to be,</i>
<i>Gerund.</i>	<i>y ayant,</i>	<i>there being.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>il y a,</i>	<i>there is, or, there are,</i>
<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>il y avoit,</i>	<i>there was, or, there were</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>il y eut,</i>	<i>there was, or, there were</i>
<i>Future.</i>	<i>il y aura,</i>	<i>there will be,</i>
<i>Conditional.</i>	<i>il y auroit,</i>	<i>there would be.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>il y ait,</i>	<i>there may be,</i>
<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>il y eût,</i>	<i>there might be.</i>

NEIGER, *to snow.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Neiger,	<i>to snow,</i>
<i>Gerund present.</i>	neigeant,	<i>snowing.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	il neige,	<i>it snows,</i>
<i>Imperfect.</i>	il neigeoit,	<i>it did snow,</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	il neigea,	<i>it snowed,</i>
<i>Future.</i>	il neigera,	<i>it will snow,</i>
<i>Conditional.</i>	il neigerait,	<i>it would snow,</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Qu'il neige,	<i>that it may snow,</i>
<i>Imperfect.</i>	qu'il neigeat.	<i>that it might snow.</i>

These impersonal Verbs have also their compound tenses, as, *il y a eu*, there has been, *il a neigé*, it has snowed, *il y avoit eu*, there had been, *il avoit neigé*, it had snowed, &c.

ELEMENTS OF SYNTAX.

R U L E I.

The verb agrees with its nominative in number and person ; that is, must be put in the same number and person as its nominative. Thus, in this sentence, *I give*, the nominative *I*, being of the first person singular the verb must likewise be in the first person singular, *je donne* ; but in this other, *the masters give*, the nominative, *masters*, being of the third person plural, the verb must be in the third person plural, *les maîtres donnent*.

E X E R C I S E.

I love		I applaud		I owe		I wait
<i>aimer</i>		<i>applaudir</i>		<i>devoir</i>		<i>attendre</i>
thou accusest		thou fulfillest		thou receivest		
<i>accuser</i>		<i>accomplir</i>		<i>recevoir</i>		
thou lovest		he assists		the master calls		
<i>perdre</i>		<i>assister</i>		<i>maître appeller</i>		
the king banishes		we abandon		we enlarge		
<i>roi bannir</i>		<i>abandonner</i>		<i>aggrandir</i>		
we receive		we answer		you finish		you make free
<i>recevoir</i>		<i>répondre</i>		<i>finir</i>		<i>affranchir</i>
you conceive		you pretend		they arm		
<i>concevoir</i>		<i>prétendre</i>		<i>armer</i>		
the parents blame		the children choose				
<i>parent blâmer</i>		<i>enfant choisir</i>				
the proprietors receive		the dogs bite.				
<i>propriétaire recevoir</i>		<i>chien mordre.</i>				
I did burn		I did commiserate		I did perceive		
<i>brûler</i>		<i>compatir</i>		<i>appercevoir</i>		
I did come down		thou didst daub		thou didst convert		
<i>descendre</i>		<i>barbouiller</i>		<i>convertir</i>		
				thou		

thou didst perceive | thou didst cleave
appercevoir fendre
the actor did sing | the mason did demolish
acteur chanter maçon démolir
the lord did owe | the scholar did understand
seigneur devoir écolier entendre
we did seek | we did disobey | we did receive
chercher désobéir recevoir
we did hang | you did begin | you did divert
pendre commencer divertir
you did perceive | the ministers did yield
appercevoir ministre céder
the scholars did disobey | the stewards did receive
écolier désobéir intendant recevoir
they did spread.
répandre.

I dined | I filled | I received | I bent
dîner emplir recevoir tendre
thou didst breakfast | thou didst thicken
déjeuner épaissir
thou perceivedst | thou didst condescend | he asked
appercevoir condescendre demander
the general invaded | the foldier perceived
général envahir soldat appercevoir
the president confounded | we sent | we swallowed up
président confondre envoyer engloutir
we conceived | we depended | you avoided
concevoir dépendre éviter
you dazzled | you owed again | you suspended
éblouir redevoir suspendre
the orators exhausted | the poets embellished
orateur épuiser poète embellir
they received | the children understood.
recevoir enfant entendre.

I have listened | thou hast made narrow
écouter étrécir
he has received | the author has pretended
recevoir auteur prétendre
we have carried away | you have furnished
emporter fournir
they

they have perceived | the masters have shut
appercevoir *maître fermer*

the servants have waited.

domestique attendre.

I had strengthened | thou hadst cured

fortifier

guérir

he had flourished | the lover had groaned

fleurir

amant

gémir

we had forced | you had nourished

forcer

nourrir

the spectators had applauded | the counsellors had lost.

spectateur

applaudir

avocat

perdre.

I had walked |

thou hadst obeyed

marcher

obéir

the philosopher had pretended | we had proposed

philosophe

prétendre

proposer

you had applauded |

they had answered

applaudir

répondre

the dogs had bitten.

chien

mordre.

I shall protect |

I shall suffer |

I shall owe

protéger

supporter

devoir

I shall understand | thou wilt publish | thou wilt roast

entendre

publier

rôtir

thou wilt conceive |

thou wilt depend

concevoir

dépendre

God will forgive | an angel will come down

Dieu

pardonner

ange

descendre

the treasurer will receive | we shall prepare

trésorier

recevoir

préparer

we shall succeed | we shall perceive | we shall cleave

réussir

appercevoir

fendre

you will draw back |

you will accomplish

reculer

accomplir

you will conceive | the directors will pay

concevoir

directeur

payer

the waters will refresh | the doctors will pretend:

eau

rafraîchir

docteur

prétendre.

I shall have redeemed | thou wilt have united

racheter

unir

he

he will have conceived | the butter will have melted
concevoir *beurre* *fondre*
 we shall have thanked | you will have reflected
remercier *réfléchir*
 they will have bent | the proprietors will have
tendre *propriétaire*
 condescended.

condescendre.

I should rest | I should blush | I should owe again
reposer *rougir* *redewoir*
 I should shear | thou wouldst shake
tondre *secouer*

thou wouldst diseunite | thou wouldst deceive
désunir *décevoir*

thou wouldst confound | the horse would leap
confondre *cheval* *sauter*

the spy would betray | the eye would perceive
espion *trahir* *œil* *appercevoir*

the slave would depend | we should kill
esclave *dépendre* *tuer*

we should soften | we should owe | we should suspend
adoucir *devoir* *suspendre*

you would empty | you would fulfil | you would receive
vider *accomplir* *recevoir*

you would correspond | the birds would fly
correspondre *oiseau* *voler*

the men would grow old | the clerks would correspond.
homme *vieillir* *commis* *correspondre.*

I should have finished | thou wouldst have enlarged
achever *aggrandir*

thou wouldst have owed | the gardener would have
devoir *jardinier*

unbent | we should have blamed | you would have
détendre *blâmer*

commiserated | the christians would have converted
compatir *chrétien* *convertir*

the workmen would have melted again.
ouvrier *refondre.*

blame | demolish | receive | wait | let him give
blâmer *démolir* *recevoir* *attendre* *donner*

let the child breakfast		let the lady embellish
<i>enfant déjeuner</i>		<i>dame embellir</i>
let her spread	let us begin	let us furnish
<i>étendre</i>	<i>commencer</i>	<i>fournir</i>
let us perceive	let us understand	shew obey
<i>appercevoir</i>	<i>entendre</i>	<i>montrer obéir</i>
conceive wait	let them speak	let the fishes swim
<i>concevoir attendre</i>	<i>parler</i>	<i>poisson nager</i>
let the people conceive	let the kings pretend.	
<i>les peuples concevoir</i>	<i>roi prétendre.</i>	

R U L E II.

When a verb is attended by the negative *not*, that negative is expressed by *ne* and *pas*, or *point*, which follow this construction.

1. In the simple tenses, *ne* comes immediately before, and *pas* or *point* after the verb; as, *I dine not*, *je ne dine pas*.

Ne is written *n'* before vowels; as, *je n'aime point*.

Observe, that *do* and *did*, when they are auxiliary verbs, are not expressed in French, therefore *I dine not*, or, *I do not dine*, *I dined not*, or, *I did not dine*, will be rendered in the same manner in French.

2. In compound tenses, the participle comes after *pas* or *point*; as, *I have not dined*, *je n'ai pas diné*, *I have not loved*, *je n'ai pas aimé*.

3. But if the verb is in the present of the infinitive, the two negatives come immediately before the verb; as, *not to speak*, *pour ne pas parler*.

E X E R C I S E.

I do not work	thou dost not act	the workman does
<i>1 travailler</i>	<i>agir</i>	<i>ouvrier</i>
not polish	we do not receive	you do not lose
<i>polir</i>	<i>recevoir</i>	<i>perdre</i>
the horses do not stumble	I did not enrich	
<i>cheval</i>	<i>brâcher</i>	<i>enrichir</i>
		thou

thou didst not owe | the patient did not languish
devoir *malade* *languir*
 we did not break | you did not come down
casser *descendre*
 the vallies did not resound.
vallée *retentir.*

I did not light | thou didst not succeed
1 éclairer *réussir*
 the coachman did not receive | we did not answer
cocher *recevoir* *répondre*
 you did not play | the witnesses did not swear.
jouer *témoin* *jurer.*

I have not judged | thou hast not left
2 juger *laisser*
 the prince has not oppressed | we have not threatened.
prince *accabler* *menacer*
 you have not seized | they have not conceived.
saisir *concevoir.*

I had not deserved | thou hadst not tarnished
2 mériter *ternir*
 the knife had not cut | we had not united
couteau *couper* *unir*
 you had not owed | the politicians had not spread.
devoir *politique* *répandre.*

I had not comforted | thou hadst not delivered
2 consoler *délivrer*
 the thief had not found | we had not washed
voleur *trouver* *laver*
 you had not trembled | the tradesman had not
trembler *marchand*

warranted.
garantir.

I shall not owe | thou wilt not cleave | the tyrant
1 devoir *fendre* *tyran*
 will not forgive | we shall not lead | you will not carry
pardonner *mener* *emporter*
 the sailors will not plunder.
matelot *piller.*

I shall not have conceived | thou wilt not have
2 concevoir
 quarrelled.

quarrelled | the historian will not have related
quereller *historien* *raconter*
 we shall not have settled | you will not have matched
établir *assortir*
 the upholsterers will not have furnished,
tapisier *fournir*.
 I should not groan | thou wouldest not perceive
1 gémir *appercevoir*
 the grocer would not sell | we should not order
épiciier *vendre* *ordonner*
 you would not enjoy | the authors would not praise.
jouir *auteur* *louer*.
 I should not have washed | thou wouldest not have
2 laver
 found | he would not have received | we should not
trouver *recevoir*
 have answered | you would not have warranted
répondre *garantir*
 they would not have chosen.
choisir.
 do not blame | let him not groan | let not the
1 blâmer *gémir*
 ignorant pretend | let us not desire | do not scratch
ignorant prétendre *desirer* *égratigner*
 let not the women scold.
femme ronder.
 I intend not to speak | thou promigest not to favour
avoir dessein de 3 parler *promettre* *favoriser*
 he endeavours not to build.
tâcher *bâtir*.

R U L E III.

When a verb is used interrogatively, that is, when a question is asked, the pronoun nominative is put after the verb in simple tenses; as, *do I dine?* *diné-je?* and before the participle in the compound ones; as, *have I dined?* *ai-je diné?*

1. Observe, that in verbs of the first conjugation the

the accute accent (') is put over the final *e* of the first person singular of the present; as, *do I speak?* *parlé-je?*

2. In verbs which end with a vowel in the third person singular, an hyphen (-) with a *t* is put between the verb and the pronoun in this manner (-*t*-); as, *parle-t-il?*

3. If instead of a pronoun, a verb has a noun for its nominative case, that noun must come first, and the pronoun be kept. Thus these sentences; *does your sister learn French? have your friends any hope?* must be construed thus in French, *your sister does she learn French? your friends have they any hope?* *votre sœur apprend elle le François? vos amis ont ils quelque esperance?*

EXERCISE.

do I keep		dost thou choose		does she taste
<i>1 garder</i>		<i>choisir</i>		<i>2 goûter</i>
does he arrive		do we receive		do you come down
<i>2 arriver</i>		<i>recevoir</i>		<i>descendre</i>
do they bury		do the princes abolish.		
<i>ensevelir</i>		<i>princes 3 abolir.</i>		
did I lead		didst thou satisfy		did the lion roar
<i>mener</i>		<i>contenter</i>		<i>lion 3 rugir</i>
did we perceive		did you lose		did they despise.
<i>appercevoir</i>		<i>perdre</i>		<i>mépriser.</i>
did I dance		didst thou sup		did the count play
<i>danfer</i>		<i>souper</i>		<i>comte 3 jouer</i>
did we clear		did you receive		did the officers
<i>éclaircir</i>		<i>recevoir</i>		<i>officier</i>
suspendre.				
<i>3 suspendre.</i>				
have I given		hast thou ruled		has your friend
<i>donner</i>		<i>régler</i>		<i>ami</i>
borrowed		have we subjected		have you perceived
<i>3 emprunter</i>		<i>assujettir</i>		<i>appercevoir</i>
have the Americans conquered.				
<i>Américain 3 triompher.</i>				

had I united | hadst thou taught | had she offended
unir *enseigner* *offenser*
 had we endeavoured | had you gone back | had
tâcher *reculer*
 the canons received.

chanoine 3 *recevoir*.
 shall I scold | wilt thou act | will the master
gronder *agir* *maître*
 come down | shall we ask | will you undress
3 descendre *demander* *déshabiller*
 will the horses leap.

cheval 3 *sauter*.
 shall I have finished | wilt thou have polished
finir *polir*
 will the bail have subscribed | shall we have deceived
caution 3 *signer* *décevoir*
 will you have warned | will they have dried.

avertir *sécher*.
 should I widen | wouldst thou weep | would
élargir *pleurer*
 the chimney smoke | should we sigh | would you
cheminée 3 *fumer* *soupirer*
 desire | would the animals tear.

desirer *animal* 3 *déchirer*.
 should I have handled | wouldst thou have deserved
manier *mériter*
 would your companion have neglected | should we
compagnon 3 *négliger*
 have imitated | would you have quitted | would
imiter *quitter*
 these sentiments have answered.
sentiment *répondre*.

R U L E IV.

If the verb used interrogatively is also attended by a negative, as, *do not I speak?* *ne* is put before the verb, and *pas* or *point* after the pronoun, as *do not I speak?* *ne parlé-je pas?* *have not I spoken?* *n'ai-je pas parlé?*

parle? does not your sister improve? votre sœur ne profite-t-elle-pas?

EXERCISE.

do not I dance | dost not thou finish | does not
danſer *finir*
 that house depend | do not we correct | do not
maison dépendre *corriger*
 you excuse | do they not begin.
excuser *commencer.*
 did not I raise | didst thou not cut | did not
élever *couper*
 your lover sigh | did not we dazzle | did you not
amant ſoupirer *éblouir*
 languish | did not your ſiſters groan.
languir *sœur gémir.*
 did not I receive | didst not thou ſucceed | did not
recevoir *réuſſir*
 he cleave | did not we loſe | did not you act
fendre *perdre* *agir*
 did not the miniſters ſeize.
miniſtre ſaiſir.
 have not I divided | haſt not thou obliged | has
partager *obliger*
 not the mob applauded | have not we rendered
populace applaudir *rendre*
 have not you unbent | have not the hiſtorians
détendre *hiſtir en*
 related.
raconter.
 had not I pierced | haſt not thou favoured
percer *favoriſer*
 had not the members declared | had not we warranted
membre déclarer *garantir*
 had not you matched | had not your friends
aſſortir *ami*
 perceived.
appercevoir.
 had

had not I dined | hadst not thou burnt | had not
diner brûler
 he carried | had not we despised | had not you
porter mépriser
 kept | had not they quenched.
garder amortir.
 shall not I dazzle | will not thou nourish | will
éblouir nourrir
 not the ship perish | shall not we absorb | will not
vaisseau périr engloutir
 you receive | will not the trees blossom.
recevoir arbre fleurir.
 shall not I have tried | wilt not thou have possessed
essayer posséder
 will not he have revenged | shall not we have
venger
 hardened | will not you have hanged | will not
durcir pendre
 they have accomplished.
accomplir.
 should not I command | wouldest not thou neglect
commander négliger
 would not a clever man succeed | should not we
habile homme réussir
 understand | would not you warn | would not
entendre avertir
 your principles astonish.
principe étonner.
 should not I have endeavoured | wouldest not thou
tâcher
 have travelled | would not he have enjoyed
voyager jouir
 would not you have built | would not the
bâtir
 philosophers have cleared.
philosophe éclaircir.

Remarks upon Interrogations.

Questions are often asked by *est-ce que, n'est-ce pas que*, and then the nominative comes before the verb; as, *est-ce que vous apprenez le françois? n'est-ce pas que j'ai raison?* But this mode of interrogation is not so much used in order to be informed of a thing, as to shew our surprise at it. Therefore by this question, *est-ce que vous apprenez le françois?* I do not only ask you whether you learn French, or not; but I express my wonder at it.

By this other, *n'est-ce pas que j'ai raison?* I do not merely ask you whether I am in the right, or, not; but I assure you myself that I am in the right, and only want your confirmation of it.

This mode of interrogation is used to deter people from believing what is said; as, *est-ce que je trompe?* in English, I am a cheat, am I? who cheats? not I.

Questions are asked in this manner with the first person singular of the present of several verbs, like, *mentir, sentir, sortir, dormir, &c.* for it sounds harsh to say, *mens-je?* do I lye? *sors-je?* do I go out, it is better to say, *est-ce que je mens? est-ce que je sors?*

R U L E V.

The relatives *who, that, which*, being nominatives, are expressed by *qui*; and the following verb and adjective agree in person, gender, and number with its antecedent, that is, with the noun to which it relates as, *the scholar who reads, l'écolier qui lit; I who learn French, moi qui apprends le françois; the woman who is good, la femme qui est bonne.*

Observe, that in the course of this work, the tenses marked * are to be rendered in French by the imperfect. Those marked † are to be rendered by the perfect definite. When the second pluperfect is to be used it will be marked .

E X E R C I S E.

EXERCISE.

the dog who barks is troublesome | the men who
chien aboyer incommode homme
 shout are seditious | the soldiers who despise the
crier séditieux soldat mépriser
 dangers are brave | the woman who sings is not
danger brave femme chanter
 always merry | the girls who are attentive improve
toujours gai fille attentif profiter
 he met the troops who advanced slowly | he
*rencontrer * troupe f. avancer * lentement*
 dispatched a courier who informed the king
*dépêcher * courier informer * roi*
 he sent his ambassadors who spoke in his name
*envoyer * ambassadeur parler * en nom*
 he broke the officers who had not performed their duty
*casser * officier remplir devoir*
 a woman who is deceitful and vindictive will sacrifice
femme trompeur vindicatif sacrifier
 any thing to her passions | the general who had
tout passion général
 assembled a numerous army adopted the plan the
*assembler nombreux armée adopter * plan*
 most suitable to his situation | the minister who
convenable situation ministre
 would have followed another plan would not have
adopter un autre plan
 succeeded | Monckton who perceived his error
*réussir Monckton appercevoir * faute f.*
 endeavoured to recover his accustomed equanimity
*tâcher * de reprendre ordinaire tranquillité*
 her lover who was more urgent represented the motive
*amant pressant représenter * motif*
 of his conduct.
conduite, f.

Of the Conjugation of reflected Verbs.

R U L E I.

Reflected verbs differ from the active only in their being conjugated with two pronouns in this manner, *je me blesse, tu te blesses, il se blesse. Je me leve, tu te leves, il se leve.* They are sometimes rendered in English by a reflected verb; as, *je me blesse*, I hurt myself, &c. sometimes by a neuter, as, *je me leve*, I rise.

Observe, that tho' the pronoun *se* is only set down in the infinitive, the other pronouns *me, te, nous, vous* are used according to the nominative of the preceding verb; as,

Singular.	Plural.
Je compte me lever, <i>I intend to rise,</i>	Nous comptons nous lever, <i>we intend to rise,</i>
tu comptes te lever, <i>thou intendest to rise,</i>	vous comptez vous lever, <i>you intend to rise,</i>
il compte se lever, <i>he intends to rise.</i>	ils comptent se lever, <i>they intend to rise.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>se lever, to rise</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>s'être levé, to have risen,</i>
<i>Participle.</i>	<i>levé, risen,</i>
<i>Gerund present.</i>	<i>se levant, rising,</i>
<i>Gerund past.</i>	<i>s'étant levé, having risen</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.	Plural.
Je me leve, <i>I rise,</i>	Nous nous levons, <i>we rise,</i>
tu te leves, <i>thou risest,</i>	vous vous levez, <i>you rise,</i>
il se leve, <i>he rises.</i>	ils se levent, <i>they rise.</i>
	<i>Imperfect</i>

Imperfect.

Singular.

Je me levois, *I rose or did rise,*
 tu te levois, *thou didst rise,*
 il se levoit, *he did rise.*

Plural.

Nous nous levions, *we did rise,*
 vous vous leviez, *you did rise,*
 ils se levoient, *they did rise.*

Perfect Definite.

Je me levai, *I rose or did rise,*
 tu te levais, *thou rosedst,*
 il se leva, *he rose.*

Nous nous levâmes, *we rose,*
 vous vous levâtes, *you rose,*
 ils se leverent, *they rose.*

Perfect Indefinite

Je me suis levé, *I have risen,*
 tu t'es levé, *thou hast risen,*
 il s'est levé, *he has risen,*

Nous nous sommes levés, *we have risen,*
 vous vous êtes levés, *you have risen,*
 ils se sont levés, *they have risen.*

First Pluperfect.

Je m'étois levé, *I had risen,*
 tu t'étois levé, *thou hadst risen,*
 il s'étoit levé, *he had risen.*

Nous nous étions levés, *we had risen,*
 vous vous étiez levés, *you had risen,*
 ils s'étoient levés, *they had risen.*

Second Pluperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Je me fus levé, <i>I had risen,</i>	Nous nous fûmes levés, <i>we had risen,</i>
tu te fus levé, <i>thou hadst risen,</i>	vous vous fûtes levés, <i>you had risen,</i>
il se fut levé, <i>he had risen.</i>	ils se furent levés, <i>they had risen.</i>

Future Simple.

Je me leverai, <i>I shall or will rise,</i>	Nous nous leverons, <i>we shall rise,</i>
tu te leveras, <i>thou wilt rise,</i>	vous vous leverez, <i>you will rise,</i>
il se levera, <i>he will rise.</i>	ils se leveront, <i>they will rise.</i>

Future Compound.

Je me serai levé, <i>I shall have risen,</i>	Nous nous serons levés, <i>we shall have risen,</i>
tu te seras levé, <i>thou wilt have risen,</i>	vous vous serez levés, <i>you will have risen,</i>
il se sera levé, <i>he will have risen.</i>	ils se seront levés, <i>they will have risen.</i>

Conditional Present.

Je me leverois, <i>I should or would rise,</i>	Nous nous leverions, <i>we should rise,</i>
tu te leverois, <i>thou wouldst rise,</i>	vous vous leveriez, <i>you would rise,</i>
il se leveroit, <i>he would rise.</i>	ils se leveroient, <i>they would rise.</i>

Conditional Past.

Singular.	Plural.
Je me ferois levé, <i>I should have risen,</i>	Nous nous serions levés, <i>we should have risen,</i>
tu te ferois levé, <i>thou wouldst have risen,</i>	vous vous seriez levés, <i>you would have risen,</i>
il se feroit levé, <i>he would have risen,</i>	ils se seroient levés, <i>they would have risen.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.	Plural.
Leve toi, <i>rise thou</i>	Levons nous, <i>let us rise,</i>
qu'il se leve, <i>let him rise.</i>	levez vous, <i>rise, or, rise ye,</i>
	qu'ils se levent, <i>let them rise.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.	Plural.
Que <i>that</i>	
Je me leve, <i>I rise or may rise,</i>	Nous nous levions, <i>we may rise,</i>
tu te leves, <i>thou mayest rise,</i>	vous vous leviez, <i>you may rise,</i>
il se leve, <i>he may rise,</i>	ils se levent, <i>they may rise.</i>

Imperfect.

Que <i>that</i>	
Je me levasse, <i>I rose or might rise,</i>	Nous nous levassions, <i>we might rise,</i>
tu te levasses, <i>thou mightest rise,</i>	vous vous levassiez, <i>you might rise,</i>
il se levât, <i>he might rise.</i>	ils se levassent, <i>they might rise.</i>

Perfect

Perfect.

Singular.	Plural.
Que <i>that</i> Je me sois levé, <i>I may</i> <i>have risen,</i> tu te sois levé, <i>thou mayest</i> <i>have risen,</i> il se soit levé, <i>he may</i> <i>have risen.</i>	Nous nous soyons levés, <i>we may have risen,</i> vous vous soyez levés, <i>you</i> <i>may have risen,</i> ils se soient levés, <i>they may</i> <i>have risen.</i>

Pluperfect.

Que <i>that</i> Je me fusse levé, <i>I might</i> <i>have risen,</i> tu te fusses levé, <i>thou</i> <i>mightest have risen,</i> il se fût levé, <i>he might</i> <i>have risen.</i>	Nous nous fussions levés <i>we might have risen,</i> vous vous fussiez levés, <i>you might have risen,</i> ils se fussent levés, <i>they</i> <i>might have risen.</i>
---	--

Verbs to be Conjugated upon *se lever*.

s'accuser, <i>to accuse one's self,</i>	se défendre, <i>to defend one's</i>
s'adoucir, <i>to grow mild,</i>	self
s'appercevoir, <i>to perceive,</i>	se déshabiller, <i>to undress,</i>
s'habiller, <i>to dress,</i>	s'échauffer, <i>to grow warm,</i>
s'aniollir, <i>to grow soft,</i>	s'ennuyer, <i>to be tired,</i>
s'appeller, <i>to be called,</i>	s'étonner, <i>to wonder,</i>
s'appliquer, <i>to apply one's self</i>	s'établir, <i>to settle,</i>
s'appauvrir, <i>to grow poor,</i>	s'endurcir, <i>to grow hard,</i>
s'arrêter, <i>to stop,</i>	s'enrichir, <i>to grow rich,</i>
se corriger, <i>to mend,</i>	s'évanouir, <i>to faint,</i>
se coiffer, <i>to dress one's head,</i>	se former, <i>to improve,</i>
se coucher, <i>to go to bed,</i>	se guérir, <i>to cure,</i>
se consoler, <i>to be comforted,</i>	s'imaginer, <i>to fancy,</i>
se décourager, <i>to lose courage</i>	s'impacienter, <i>to grow impa-</i>
se divertir, <i>to divert one's self</i>	tient,

se mêler, to meddle,	se reculer, to go back,
se moucher, to blow one's nose,	se rétablir, to recover,
se morfondre, to catch cold	se réunir, to join,
se moquer, to laugh,	se refroidir, to grow cold,
s'offenser, to take offence,	se réjouir, to rejoice,
se perdre, to ruin one's self,	se rétrécir, to grow narrow,
se pendre, to hang one's self,	se répandre, to spread,
se rendre, to surrender,	se tromper, to be mistaken,
	se vanter to boast.

R U L E II.

To conjugate the simple tenses of a reflected verb negatively, you must place *pas* or *point* after the verb, and *ne* before the pronouns *me, te, se, nous, vous*, as *je ne me lève pas* I do not rise.

In the present of the infinitive, the two negatives may come before the pronouns *me, te, se, nous, vous*, as, *ne pas se lever*, or these pronouns may be placed between the two negatives; as, *ne se pas lever*. In the perfect, you may indifferently say *ne pas s'être levé*, *ne se pas être levé*, or, *ne s'être pas levé*.

In compound tenses you place the negative *ne* before the pronouns *me, te, se, &c.* and *pas* or *point* between the auxiliary verb and the participle, as *je ne me suis pas levé*, I have not risen.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	{ ne pas se lever, ne se pas lever, }	<i>not to rise,</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	{ ne pas s'être levé ne se pas être levé ne s'être pas levé }	<i>not to have risen,</i>
<i>Gerund present.</i>	ne se levant pas,	<i>not rising,</i>
<i>Gerund past.</i>	ne s'étant pas levé,	<i>not having risen.</i>

INDICATIVE

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.

Plural.

Je ne me leve pas, <i>I do</i> <i>not rise,</i>	Nous ne nous levons pas, <i>we do not rise,</i>
tu ne te leves pas, <i>thou dost</i> <i>not rise,</i>	vous ne vous levez pas, <i>you</i> <i>do not rise,</i>
il ne se leve pas, <i>he does not</i> <i>rise.</i>	ils ne se levent pas, <i>they do</i> <i>not rise.</i>

Perfect Indefinite.

Je ne me suis pas levé, <i>I</i> <i>have not risen,</i>	Nous ne nous sommes pas levés, <i>we have not risen,</i>
tu ne t'es pas levé, <i>thou</i> <i>hast not risen,</i>	vous ne vous êtes pas levés, <i>you have not risen,</i>
il ne s'est pas levé, <i>he has</i> <i>not risen.</i>	ils ne se sont pas levés, <i>they</i> <i>have not risen.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.

Plural.

Ne te leve pas, <i>do not</i> <i>rise,</i>	Ne nous levons pas, <i>let us</i> <i>not rise,</i>
qu'il ne se leve pas, <i>let him</i> <i>not rise.</i>	ne vous levez pas, <i>do not</i> <i>rise,</i>
	qu'ils ne se levent pas, <i>let</i> <i>them not rise.</i>

R U L E III.

If a question is asked with a reflected verb, the pronouns nominatives *je, tu, il, &c.* are placed after the verb in simple tenses; as, *me levé-je?* do I rise? and after the auxiliary in compound tenses; as *me suis-je levé?* have I risen?

If the nominative of the reflected verb is not a pronoun personal, the sentence follows the construction, explained page 65. sect. 3.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.	Plural.
Me levé-je ? <i>do I rise ?</i>	Nous levons nous ? <i>do we rise ?</i>
te leves tu ? <i>dost thou rise ?</i>	vous levez vous ? <i>do you rise ?</i>
se leve-t-il ? <i>does he rise ?</i>	se levent ils ? <i>do they rise ?</i>

Perfect Indefinite.

Me suis-je levé ? <i>have I risen ?</i>	Nous sommes nous levés ? <i>have we risen ?</i>
t'es tu levé ? <i>hast thou risen ?</i>	vous êtes vous levés ? <i>have you risen ?</i>
s'est-il levé ? <i>has he risen ?</i>	se sont ils levés ? <i>have they risen ?</i>

R U L E IV.

If the same verb is attended by a negative, *ne* is placed before the pronouns *me, te, se, &c.* and the negative *pas*, after the pronouns *je, tu, il, &c.* as, *ne me levé-je pas ? do not I rise ? ne me suis-je pas levé ? have not I risen ?*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.	Plural.
Ne me levé-je pas ? <i>do not I rise ?</i>	Ne nous levons nous pas ? <i>do not we rise ?</i>
ne te leves tu pas ? <i>dost not thou rise ?</i>	ne vous levez vous pas ? <i>do not you rise ?</i>
ne se leve-t-il pas ? <i>does not he rise ?</i>	ne se levent ils pas ? <i>do not they rise ?</i>

Perfect

Perfect Indefinite.

Singular.

Plural.

Ne me suis-je pas levé ? <i>have not I risen ?</i>	Ne nous sommes nous pas levés ? <i>have not we risen ?</i>
ne t'es tu pas levé ? <i>hast</i> <i>not thou risen ?</i>	ne vous êtes vous pas levés ? <i>have not you risen ?</i>
ne s'est il pas levé ? <i>has not</i> <i>he risen ?</i>	ne se sont ils pas levés ? <i>have not they risen ?</i>

R U L E V.

In reflected verbs, the participle always agrees in gender and number with the noun to which it relates. Thus in the masculine singular, you say, *je me suis levé*, in the feminine singular, *je me suis levée*, in the masculine plural, *nous nous sommes levés*, in the feminine plural, *nous nous sommes levées*.

There are indeed some few exceptions to this rule, but they will be mentioned in the syntax.

This variation in the participle, as well as in some other adjectives, is what grammarians call declension, saying that such a word is declined, when it takes the mark of the plural number and feminine gender, and undeclined when it is the same for both numbers and both genders.

E X E R C I S E.

I accuse myself | thou dost not grow mild | does your
s'accuser *s'adoucir*
brother perceive | do not we dress ourselves
frere s'appercevoir *s'habiller*
you grow soft | they are not called.
s'amollir *s'appeller*
did I apply myself | didst not thou grow poor
s'appliquer *s'appauvrir*
the horse stopt | we did not mend | did you dress your
cheval s'arrêter *se corriger* *se coiffer*
head | were not the parents comforted.
parent se consoler

I lost

I lost courage | thou didst not divert thyself | did the
se décourager *se divertir*
 soldier defend himself | did not we undress
soldat se défendre *se déshabiller*
 you grew warm | the spectators were not tired.
s'échauffer *spectateur* *s'ennuyer.*

I have wondered | thou hast not settled | is he grown
s'étonner *s'établir* *s'en-*
 hard | have not we fainted | you are grown rich
durcir *s'évanouir* *s'enrichir*
 have your pupils improved.

élève se former.
 had not I fancied | you had grown impatient
s'imaginer *s'impatienter*
 your friend had not meddled | had we laughed
ami se mêler *se moquer*
 had not you caught cold | the masters had
se morfondre *maître*
 taken offence.

s'offenser.
 when I had ruined myself | thou hadst hanged thyself
quand se ruiner *se pendre*
 the town had surrendered | we had gone back
ville se rendre *se reculer*
 you had not recovered | they had not joined.
se rétablir *se réunir.*

I shall not grow cold | will you rejoice | will not the
se refroidir *se réjouir*
 cloth grow narrow | we shall spread | you will not boast
drap se rétrécir *se répandre* *se vanter*
 will they be mistaken | do not the girls accuse themselves.
se tromper *fille s'accuser.*

I shall have mended | you will not have gone to bed
se corriger *se coucher*
 will not she have dressed her head | we shall have

se coiffer
 lost courage | you will have diverted yourselves
se décourager *se divertir*
 they will not have defended themselves.
se défendre.

I should

I should grow warm | thou wouldest not be tired
s'échauffer *s'ennuyer*

would he wonder | should not we grow hard
s'étonner *s'endurcir*

would not you grow rich | the ladies would faint.

s'enrichir *dame* *s'évanouir.*
 should I have cured | wouldest thou have fancied
se guérir *s'imaginer*

your sister would have caught cold | we should
sœur *se morfondre*

have laughed | you would not have recovered
se moquer *se rétablir*

would they have surrendered.

se rendre.
 do not go back | awake | do not grow angry | marry
se reculer *s'éveiller* *se fâcher* *se marier*

let him revenge himself | let a mother rejoice
se venger *mere* *se réjouir*

let us apply | let us unite | let us not grow cold
s'appliquer *se réunir* *se refroidir*

get up | do not quarrel | let the fools wonder
se lever *se quereller* *sot* *s'étonner*

let them not spread.

se répandre.
 I endeavour to mend | thou beginnest to grow tired
tâcher de se corriger *commencer à s'ennuyer*

he is afraid not to perceive | we begin not to meddle
avoir peur de s'apercevoir *commencer à se mêler*

you refuse to walk | your parents begin to grow
refuser de se promener *parent* *à*

impatient.
s'impatienter.

I should be glad to have risen and not to have meddled
être bien aise de se lever *de se mêler*

thou wouldest be glad to have stopt, and not to
de s'arrêter *de*

have quarrelled | he would be glad to have married,
se quereller *de* *se marier*

and not to have diverted himself | we should be glad
de se divertir

to

to have been mistaken, and not to have taken offence
se tromper *s'offenser*
 you would be glad to have united, and not to have
se réunir *de*
 surrendered | they would be glad to have mended,
se rendre *se corriger*
 and not to have ruined themselves.
se ruiner.

Of Verbs Passive.

Verbs passive are formed from the participle of any verb active, and the different tenses of the verb *to be*, *être*; as, *I am loved*, *je suis aimé*, or, *aimée*; *we are loved*, *nous sommes aimés*, or, *aimées*.

The participle of verbs passive is always declined without exception.

EXERCISE.

I am praised | thou art condemned | a virtuous man
louer *condamner* *vertueux homme*
 is esteemed | a sober girl is encouraged | we are
estimer *sage fille* *encourager*
 excused | you are protected | the good scholars are
excuser *protéger* *bon écolier*
 rewarded | we were dismissed | the actors were not
récompenser * *renvoyer* *acteur* *
 applauded.
applaudir.

I was annihilated | was Cicero banished | you were
 * *anéantir* * *Cicéron bannir* *

cured | the convicts were not hanged.
guérir *criminel* * *pendre.*

I have not been chosen | has not my heart been
choisir *cœur*
 oppressed | have not you been accused | the saints
oppresser *accuser* *saint*
 have been worshipped.
adorer.

I had

I had been called | the street had not been swept
appeller *rue* *balayer*
 had the enemy been wounded | we had been comforted
ennemi *blesser* *consoler*
 you had not been preserved | the books had been stolen.
conserver *livre m.* *voler.*
 I had been tried | the scholar had been struck
† juger *écolier* *† frapper*
 the wines had been tasted.
vin *† goûter.*
 I shall be scolded | will not the king be honoured
gronder *roi* *honorer*
 the linen will not be washed | shall we not be threatened
linge m. *blanchir* *menacer*
 the prisoners will be delivered up | we shall have been
prisonnier *délivrer*
 neglected | the cities will have been forgot.
négliger *ville* *oublier.*
 I should be carried | a wise man would not be deceived
emporter *sage homme* *tromper*
 should we be offended | you would not be nourished
offenser *nourrir*
 would not the huntsman be perceived.
chasseur *appercevoir.*
 I should have been bitten | the key would not have
mordre *clé*
 been found | would not the horses have been restored.
trouver *cheval* *rendre.*

Of Verbs Neuter.

1. Neuter verbs are conjugated like the active, but fifteen of them form their compound tenses with the verb *être*: they are,

arriver,	to arrive,	échoir,	to expire,
aller,	to go,	décéder,	to de cease,
choir,	to fall,	entrer,	to go in,
déchoir,	to decay,	mourir,	to dye,
			naître

naître, to be born, sortir, to go out,
partir, to set out, tomber, to fall,
venir, to come, and its compounds, devenir, intervenir,
parvenir, revenir, survenir.

Observe, that in neuter verbs which are conjugated with *être*, the participle is declined; as, *je suis arrivé*, or, *je suis arrivée*.

2. Some take indifferently *avoir* or *être*, they are,

Accourir,	to run to,	croître,	to grow,
périr,	to perish,	décroître,	to decrease,
apparoître,	} to appear,	accroître,	to increase,
comparoître,		recroître,	to grow again.
disparoître,	to disappear,		

Thus instead of saying *j'ai arrivé*, *j'avois arrivé*, &c. you will say, *je suis arrivé*, *j'étois arrivé*, &c. but you may say indifferently, *j'ai accouru*, or, *je suis accouru*, I have run to, *il a péri*, or, *il est péri*, he has perished.

Others take *avoir* or *être* according to the sense in which they are used; as,

3. *Accoucher*, to lay a woman, is conjugated with *avoir*. *Accoucher*, to be brought to bed, is conjugated with *être*.

4. *Cesser*, when it governs a noun, is conjugated with *avoir*; as, *il a cessé son ouvrage*, he has left off his work; if it governs no noun, it may be indifferently conjugated with *avoir* or *être*; *la pluie a cessé*, or, *est cessée*, the rain is over.

5. *Convenir*, to suit, to fit, is conjugated with *avoir*; *cette terre m'auroit convenu*, this estate would have suited me; *convenir*, to agree about a thing, is conjugated with *être*; *nous sommes convenus du prix*, we have agreed about the price.

6. *Contrevenir*, to infringe, *subvenir*, to relieve, tho' derived from *venir*, are conjugated with *avoir*.

7. *Demeurer*, to live, is conjugated with *avoir*; *j'ai demeuré à Londres*, I have lived in London;
demeurer,

demeurer, to remain, is conjugated with *être*; *je suis demeuré ici*, I have remained here.

8. *Descendre*, to bring down, is conjugated with *avoir*; *descendre une chose*, to bring a thing down; *descendre*, to come down, is conjugated with *être*.

9. *Echapper*, when it means to avoid, is conjugated with *avoir*; *échapper un danger*, to escape a danger, when it means to steal away, not to be perceived, it is conjugated with *avoir* or *être*.

10. *Monter*, to go or come up, is conjugated with *être*; *il est monté dans sa chambre*, he is gone up to his room; when it governs a noun it is conjugated with *avoir*; *j'ai monté votre malle*, I have carried up your trunk.

11. *Passer*, when it governs a noun, is conjugated with *avoir*; as, *il a passé son envie*, he has satisfied his desire. When it governs no noun, it is conjugated with *être*; as *il est passé*, he is gone by; it is also conjugated with *avoir*, when it signifies to be received; as, *ce mot a passé*, this word is received.

12. *Sortir*, is also conjugated with *avoir* and *être*; but *il a sorti*, means, he has been out, and *il est sorti*, he is out.

13. *Repartir*, to set out again, is conjugated with *être*; *votre frere est reparti*, your brother is gone back again, but *répartir*, to share or to reply, is conjugated with *avoir*; *il a réparti très vivement*, he has replied very briskly.

E X E R C I S E.

I have arrived | I had gone in | we have set out

1 arriver

1 entrer

1 parti

you had fallen | you have interposed | the

1 tomber

1 intervenu

ministers have attained | I have run to | the

ministre

1 parvenu

2 accouru

ship has perished | the angels have appeared

vaisseau

2 périr

ange

2 apparu

the witnesses have appeared | the symptoms have

témoin

2 comparu

symptôme

I

disappeared

disappeared | they have grown | you have left off
 2 *disparu* 2 *crû* 4 *cesser*
 your undertaking | her pains had ceased | this
entreprise, f. *douleur* 4 *cesser*
 cloth would have suited | we have agreed for
drap 5 *convenu* *convenu pour*
 twenty guineas | he had infringed the laws | his
vingt guinée 6 *contrevenu à* *loi*
 charity has relieved the distressed of the poor | I
charité 6 *subvenu à* *besoin* *pauvres*
 have lived in all the parts of the world | we are
 7 *demeurer dans tout* *partie* *monde*
 come back, but your brother has remained behind
 1 *revenu* *mais* *frere* 7 *demeurer derriere*
 he has brought down the clothes of your father
 8 *descendre* *habit* *pere*
 I was not come down | he has escaped a cruel death
 8 *descendre* 9 *échapper* *cruel mort*
 the hare has escaped the dogs | your sister is gone by
lievre 9 *échapper à* *chien* *sœur* 11 *passer*
 the captain has exceeded his orders | the
capitaine 11 *passer* *ordre, m.*
 Carthaginians had passed the Alps | have you
Carthaginians 11 *passé* *Alpes*
 been out this morning | you were out when I went
 12 *sortir* *matin* 12 *sorti* *j'ai été*
 to see you | he is gone back again | he has shared
vous voir 13 *repartir* 13 *réparti*
 the lots | you have not replied.
lot *répartir.*

IRREGULAR VERBS.

As the scholar should be well grounded in the four regular verbs, as well as in the general rules for the formation of tenses, before he attempts to conjugate those which are irregular, I think it needless to set down all their tenses in full length, and shall only take notice of their irregularities. It would be, I think,
 an

an excellent plan to make a young beginner write, by way of exercise, the whole tenses from the rules given before, and this method, slow and tedious as it may appear, will have a very useful effect, that of preventing his learning by rote.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Aller, to go.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	aller	to go,
Participle.	allé,	gone,
Gerund	allant,	going.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.	Je vas, or, je vais, tu vas, il va—ils vont,
	<i>I go,</i>
Perfect.	j'allai, <i>I went,</i>
Future.	j'irai, <i>I shall go.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Va, qu'il aille—qu'ils aillent.
go thou.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. — nous aillions, vous ailliez, ils aillent,
that I may go.

This verb is often used with *en* and a double pronoun, after this manner, *je m'en vas, tu t'en vas, &c.* it is then conjugated like a reflected verb.

The imperative *va* is spelled *vas* when it is followed by the word *y*, as, *vas y, go thou*, but if after *y* there comes a verb, *va* is written without an *s*, as *va y porter ton argent, go and carry thy money there.*

Puer, to stink.

This verb is only irregular in the singular of the present of the indicative; *je pus, tu pus, il put*, instead

stead of *je pue, tu pues, il pue*, but *sentir mauvais*, is more generally used.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Haïr, to hate.

This verb is only irregular in the present of the singular of the indicative, which is spelled *je hais, tu hais, il hait*, and pronounced as if written *je hés, tu hés, il hét*; the plural is regular, *nous haïssons, vous haïssez, ils haïssent*.

The perfect definite, *je haïs* is seldom used.

Sentir, to smell.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>sentir, to smell,</i>
<i>Participle.</i>	<i>senti, smelled,</i>
<i>Gerund.</i>	<i>sentant, smelling.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>je sens, I smell,</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>je sentis, I smelled.</i>

Conjugate after the same manner.

<i>Consentir, to consent,</i>	<i>se repentir, to repent,</i>
<i>ressentir, to feel,</i>	<i>servir, to serve,</i>
<i>pressentir, to foresee,</i>	<i>desservir, to take away,</i>
<i>mentir, to lye,</i>	<i>sortir, to go out,</i>
<i>démentir, to give the lye</i>	<i>partir, to set out,</i>
<i>dormir, to sleep,</i>	<i>ressortir, to go out again,</i>
<i>endormir, to lull asleep,</i>	<i>répartir, to reply.</i>

Ressortir, to belong to, *sortir*, to get, (law words) and *répartir*, to share, are conjugated like *punir*.

Benir,

Benir, *to bless.*

This verb has two participles *béni*, *bénie*, and *bénit*, *bénite*. This last is only said of things which have been consecrated by priests; as, *de l'eau-bénite*, holy water.

Fleurir, *to blossom, to flourish.*

This verb is regular, when it signifies *to blossom*; but speaking of arts, sciences and empires, we say, *florissant*, *florissoit*, instead of *fleurissant*, *fleurissoit*; as, *le royaume étoit florissant*, the kingdom was flourishing, *les arts florissoient*, the arts were flourishing.

Bouillir, *to boil.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>bouillir,</i>	<i>to boil.</i>
<i>Participle</i>	<i>bouilli,</i>	<i>boiled,</i>
<i>Gerund</i>	<i>bouillant,</i>	<i>boiling.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>je bous,</i>	<i>I boil,</i>
<i>Perfect,</i>	<i>je bouillis,</i>	<i>I boiled,</i>
<i>Future,</i>	<i>je bouilleraï, or, je bouillirai,</i>	<i>I shall boil.</i>

We do not use this verb actively, therefore instead of *bouillir de l'eau*, to boil water, it is usual to say, *faire bouillir de l'eau*, to make some water boil.

Courir, or Courre, *to run.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>courir,</i>	<i>to run,</i>
<i>Participle,</i>	<i>couru,</i>	<i>run,</i>
<i>Gerund,</i>	<i>courant,</i>	<i>running.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>Je cours,</i>	<i>I run,</i>
<i>Perfect,</i>	<i>je courus,</i>	<i>I ran,</i>
<i>Future,</i>	<i>je courrai,</i>	<i>I shall run.</i>

Conjugate after the same Manner,

<i>Accourir,</i>	<i>to run to,</i>	<i>parcourir,</i>	<i>to run over,</i>
<i>concourir,</i>	<i>to concur,</i>	<i>recourir,</i>	<i>to have recourse,</i>
<i>discourir,</i>	<i>to discourse,</i>	<i>secourir,</i>	<i>to succour.</i>
<i>encourir,</i>	<i>to incur,</i>		

Faillir, to fail, *défaillir*, to faint away, are only used in the present of the infinitive ; in the participle, *failli* ; in the gerund, *faillant* ; in the perfect definite, *je faillis* ; and in the compound tenses, *j'ai failli*.

Fuir, to run away.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Fuir,</i>	<i>to run away,</i>
<i>Participle.</i>	<i>fui,</i>	<i>run away,</i>
<i>Gerund.</i>	<i>fuyant,</i>	<i>running away.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Je fuis,</i>	<i>I run away.</i>
-----------------	-----------------	--------------------

The preterite of the indicative, the present and imperfect of the subjunctive are seldom used, instead of which, we say, *prendre la fuite*, or, *éviter*.

Mourir, to dye.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Mourir,</i>	<i>to dye,</i>
<i>Participle.</i>	<i>mort,</i>	<i>dead,</i>
<i>Gerund.</i>	<i>mourant,</i>	<i>dying.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Je meurs,	—	ils meurent,
	<i>I die,</i>		
<i>Perfect.</i>	je mourus,		<i>I died,</i>
<i>Future.</i>	je mourrai,		<i>I shall die.</i>

Ouir, to hear, is only used in the compound tenses, with the infinitive of the verb *dire*; as, *j'ai oui dire*, I have heard.

Acquerir, to acquire.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Acquerir,	to acquire,
<i>Participle.</i>	acquis,	acquired,
<i>Gerund.</i>	acquerant,	acquiring.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	J'acquiers,	—	ils acquierent,
	<i>I acquire,</i>		
<i>Perfect.</i>	j'acquis,		<i>I acquired,</i>
<i>Future.</i>	j'acquerrai,		<i>I shall acquire.</i>

Conjugate after the same manner, *enquérir*, to inquire, and *requérir*, to request.

Querir, to fetch.

This verb is only used in the present of the infinitive with *aller*, to go, *envoyer*, to send, *venir*, to come, and is generally expressed by the preposition *for*; as, *aller querir*, to go for, *venir querir*, to come for, *envoyer querir*, to send for.

Conquerir, to conquer.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Conquerir,	to conquer,
<i>Participle.</i>	conquis,	conquered,
<i>Gerund.</i>	conquerant,	conquering.

This

This verb is only used in the perfect of the indicative, *je conquies*, the imperfect of the subjunctive, *je conquisse*, and in the compound tenses.

Revêtir, to invest.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Revêtir,	to invest,
<i>Participle.</i>	revêtu,	invested,
<i>Gerund.</i>	revêtant,	investing.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Je revêts,	I invest,
<i>Perfect.</i>	je revêtis,	I invested.

Conjugate in the same manner, *se dévêtir*, to lay off one's clothes, *se revêtir*, to put on one's clothes.

Vêtir, to cloath, is only used in the present of the infinitive and participle *vêtu*. In the other tenses we use *habiller*.

Ouvrir, to open.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Ouvrir,	to open,
<i>Participle.</i>	ouvert,	opened,
<i>Gerund.</i>	ouvrant,	opening.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	J'ouvre,	I open,
<i>Perfect.</i>	j'ouvris,	I opened.

Conjugate in the same manner,

Découvrir, to discover,	offrir, to offer,
rouvrir, to open again,	mésoffrir, to underbid,
recouvrir, to cover again,	souffrir, to suffer.
entr'ouvrir, to open but a little,	

Cueillir

Cueillir, *to gather.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Cueillir,	<i>to gather,</i>
<i>Participle.</i>	cueilli,	<i>gathered,</i>
<i>Gerund.</i>	cueillant,	<i>gathering.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Je cueille,	<i>I gather,</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	je cueillis,	<i>I gathered,</i>
<i>Future.</i>	je cueillerai,	<i>I shall gather.</i>

Conjugate in the same manner its compounds,
Accueillir, *to receive* recueillir, *to reap.*

Tenir, *to hold.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Tenir,	<i>to hold,</i>
<i>Participle.</i>	tenu,	<i>held,</i>
<i>Gerund.</i>	tenant,	<i>holding.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Je tiens, — ils tiennent,
I hold,

Perfect. je tins, *I held,*

For the future, see page 39, sect. 3.

Conjugate in the same manner,

s'abstenir,	<i>to abstain,</i>	intervenir,	<i>to intervene,</i>
appartenir,	<i>to belong,</i>	entretenir,	<i>to keep up,</i>
contenir,	<i>to contain,</i>	maintenir,	<i>to maintain,</i>
détenir,	<i>to detain,</i>	devenir,	<i>to become,</i>
contrevenir,	<i>to infringe,</i>	convenir,	<i>to agree,</i>
obtenir,	<i>to obtain,</i>	disconvenir,	<i>to disagree,</i>
retenir,	<i>to keep,</i>	provenir,	<i>to proceed,</i>
soutenir,	<i>to maintain,</i>	se souvenir,	<i>to remember,</i>
venir,	<i>to come,</i>	se ressouvenir,	<i>to recollect,</i>
		parvenir,	

parvenir, to attain, subvenir, to relieve,
 prévenir, to prevent, survenir, to befall,
 revenir, to come again, avenir, to happen.

This last is an obsolete verb impersonal.

Saillir, to jut out, is only used in the present of the infinitive, in the gerund *saillant*, and in the third persons of the following tenses.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	il faille <i>it juts out,</i>	—	ils faillent,
<i>Imperfect.</i>	il faillait <i>it did jut out,</i>	—	ils faillaient,
<i>Future.</i>	il faillera, <i>it will jut out,</i>	—	ils failleront,
<i>Conditional.</i>	il failleroit, <i>it would jut out.</i>	—	ils failleroient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	il faille <i>it may jut out,</i>	—	ils faillent,
<i>Imperfect.</i>	il faillît <i>it might jut out.</i>	—	ils faillissent.

When it means to gush out, it is conjugated regularly, but is only used in the the third persons, as, *les eaux saillaient*, the waters gush out.

Affaillir, to assault, is seldom used but in the present of the infinitive, and the participle, *assailli*.

Tressaillir, to start.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	tressaillir,	to start,
<i>Participle.</i>	tressailli,	started,
<i>Gerund.</i>	tressaillant,	starting.

INDICA-

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.	je tressaille,	<i>I start,</i>
Perfect.	je tressaillis,	<i>I started,</i>
Future.	je tressaillerai,	<i>or, tressaillirai, I shall start.</i>

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Voir, *to see.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	voir,	<i>to see,</i>
Participle.	vu,	<i>seen,</i>
Gerund.	voyant,	<i>seeing.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.	je vois,	<i>I see,</i>
Perfect.	je vis,	<i>I saw,</i>
Future.	je verrai,	<i>I shall see.</i>

Conjugate in the same manner.

prévoir,	<i>to foresee,</i>	entrevoir,	<i>to see a little,</i>
revoir,	<i>to see again,</i>	pourvoir,	<i>to provide.</i>

Pourvoir, makes in the perfect definite *je pourvus*, in the imperfect of the subjunctive, *je pourvusse*, in the future *je pourvoirai*, in the conditional *je pourvoirois*. *Prévoir* makes in the future *je prévoirai*, in the conditional *je prévoirois*.

Mouvoir, *to move.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	mouvoir,	<i>to move,</i>
Participle.	mu,	<i>moved,</i>
Gerund.	mouvant,	<i>moving.</i>

INDICA.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	je meus — ils meuvent.
	<i>I move,</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	je mus, <i>I moved,</i>
<i>Future.</i>	je mouvrai, <i>I shall move.</i>

The future, conditional, and preterite tenses are seldom used.

Emouvoir, to stir up, *s'émouvoir*, to be moved, are conjugated after the same manner.

Démouvoir, to make one desist, is used only in the infinitive.

Promouvoir, to promote, has but its participle *promu*.

Pleuvoir, to rain. (Impersonal verb.)

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	pleuvoir, <i>to rain,</i>
<i>Participle.</i>	plu, <i>rained,</i>
<i>Gerund.</i>	pleuvant, <i>raining.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	il pleut, <i>it rains,</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	il plut, <i>it rained,</i>
<i>Future.</i>	il pleuvra, <i>it will rain.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	il pleuve, <i>I may rise,</i>
<i>Imperfect.</i>	il plût, <i>it might rain.</i>

Falloir, to be necessary. (Impersonal verb.)

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Participle.</i>	fallu, <i>been necessary.</i>
--------------------	-------------------------------

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	il faut,	<i>it is necessary,</i>
<i>Imperfect.</i>	il falloit,	} <i>it was necessary,</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	il fallut,	
<i>Future.</i>	il faudra,	<i>it will be necessary,</i>
<i>Conditional.</i>	il faudroit,	<i>it would be necessary.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	il faille,	<i>it may be necessary,</i>
<i>Imperfect.</i>	il fallût,	<i>it might be necessary.</i>

Pouvoir, *to be able.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	pouvoir,	<i>to be able,</i>
<i>Participle.</i>	pu,	<i>been able,</i>
<i>Gerund.</i>	pouvant,	<i>being able.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	je puis or je peux, tu peux — ils peuvent
	<i>I am able,</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	je pus, <i>I was able,</i>
<i>Future.</i>	je pourrai, <i>I shall be able.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	{ Sing.	je puisse, <i>I may be able,</i>
	{ Plu.	nous puissions, vous puissiez,
		ils puissent.

Sçavoir or savoir, *to know.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	savoir,	<i>to know,</i>
<i>Participle.</i>	su,	<i>known,</i>
<i>Gerund.</i>	sachant,	<i>knowing.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	je fais — nous savons, &c.
	<i>I know,</i>
<i>Imperfect.</i>	je savois, <i>I did know,</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	je fus, <i>I knew,</i>
<i>Future.</i>	je saurai, <i>I shall know.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Singular.</i>	sache, qu'il sache, <i>know thou,</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	sachons, sachez, qu'ils sachent.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	— nous sachions, vous sachiez, ils sachent.
	<i>I may know.</i>

Je ne sache point, is sometimes used instead of *je ne sais point*, I do not know; and *je ne saurois*, instead of *je ne peux*, I cannot.

Valoir, *to be worth.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	valoir, <i>to be worth,</i>
<i>Participle.</i>	valu, <i>been worth,</i>
<i>Gerund.</i>	valant, <i>being worth.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	je vaudrai, <i>I am worth,</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	je valus, <i>I was worth,</i>
<i>Future.</i>	je vaudrai, <i>I shall be worth.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	je vaille — ils valent,
	<i>I may be worth.</i>

The imperative is not used.

Conjugate

Conjugate in the same manner,

équivaloir, *to be of equal value*, prévaloir, *to prevail*,
révaloir, *to be even with one*.

Prévaloir, is regular in the present of the subjunctive, *que je prevale*, &c.

Vouloir, *to be willing*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	vouloir,	<i>to be willing,</i>
<i>Participle.</i>	voulu,	<i>been willing,</i>
<i>Gerund.</i>	voulant,	<i>being willing.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	je veux,	—	ils veulent.
	<i>I am willing.</i>		
<i>Perfect.</i>	je voulus,	<i>I was willing,</i>	
<i>Future.</i>	je voudrai,	<i>I shall be willing.</i>	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	je veuille.	--	ils veuillent.
	<i>I may be willing.</i>		

There is no imperative.

S'asseoir, *to sit down*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	s'asseoir,	<i>to sit down,</i>
<i>Participle.</i>	assis,	<i>sat down,</i>
<i>Gerund.</i>	s'asseyant,	<i>sitting down.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	je m'assieds,	<i>I sit down,</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	je m'assis,	<i>I sat down,</i>
<i>Future.</i>	je m'asseierai, or, je m'asseirai,	<i>I shall sit down.</i>

Some conjugate this verb in this manner: *s'asseoyant*, *je m'asseois*, *tu t'asseois*, &c. *je m'asseoyois*, *je m'assis*, *je m'asseoirai*, &c. but the former is more generally used.

Rasseoir, to settle, has only the infinitive.

Seoir, to become, or to fit, is only used in the third persons.

Present.	il sied, it becomes,	—	ils siéent,
Imperfect.	il séioit, it did become,	—	ils séioient,
Future.	il siéra, it will become,	—	ils siéront,
Conditional.	il siéroit, it would become,	—	ils siéroient,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.	il siée, it may become.	—	ils siéent.
----------	----------------------------	---	-------------

This verb has no compound tenses.

Surseoir, to adjourn, has a participle, *surfis*. The future *je surseoirai*, and conditional, *je surseirois*, are seldom used.

Seoir, to fit, is used in the infinitive in some obsolete phrases.

Cheoir, to fall, has a participle, *chu*; but this verb is only used in the familiar style.

Déchoir, to decay, has a participle *déchu*, and is not used in other tenses.

Echoir, to expire, makes in the participle *échu*, in the gerund *échéant*, in the third person singular of the present of the indicative *échet*, in the third singular of the perfect *échut*, in the future *echerra*, and in the conditional *écherroit*; as, *mon terme échet*, &c. my rent expires, &c.

Ravoir, to have again, and *se ravoir*, to recover, have only the infinitive.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Plaindre, *to pity.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	plaindre,	<i>to pity,</i>
<i>Participle,</i>	plaint,	<i>pitied,</i>
<i>Gerund,</i>	plaignant,	<i>pitying.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	je plains,	<i>I pity,</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	je plaiguis,	<i>I pitied.</i>

All verbs in *aindre*, as, *craindre*, to fear, in *eindre*, as, *peindre*, to paint, in *oindre*, as *joindre*, to join, are conjugated in the same manner.

Prendre, *to take.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	prendre,	<i>to take,</i>
<i>Participle.</i>	pris,	<i>taken,</i>
<i>Gerund.</i>	prenant,	<i>taking.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	je prends,	—	ils prennent.
	<i>I take,</i>		
<i>Perfect.</i>	je pris,	<i>I took.</i>	

Conjugate in the same manner,

apprendre,	<i>to learn,</i>	se méprendre,	<i>to mistake,</i>
comprendre,	<i>to understand,</i>	repandre,	<i>to take again,</i>
désapprendre,	<i>to unlearn,</i>	surprendre,	<i>to surprise.</i>
entreprendre,	<i>to undertake,</i>		

Coudre, *to sew.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	coudre, <i>to sew,</i>
<i>Participle.</i>	cousu, <i>sewn,</i>
<i>Gerund.</i>	cousant, <i>sewing.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	je couds, <i>I sew,</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	je cousis, <i>I sewed.</i>

Conjugate in the same manner.

Découdre, *to unsew,* recoudre, *to sew again.*

Mettre, *to put.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	mettre, <i>to put,</i>
<i>Participle.</i>	mis, <i>put,</i>
<i>Gerund.</i>	mettant, <i>putting.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	je mets, <i>I put,</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	je mis, <i>I put.</i>

Conjugate in the same manner.

Admettre, <i>to admit,</i>	entremettre, <i>to intermeddle,</i>
commettre, <i>to commit,</i>	omettre, <i>to omit,</i>
démettre, <i>to remove,</i>	permettre, <i>to permit.</i>

Moudre, *to grind.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	moudre, <i>to grind,</i>
<i>Participle.</i>	moulu, <i>ground,</i>
<i>Gerund.</i>	moulant, <i>grinding.</i>

INDICA.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. je mouds, *I grind,*
Perfect. je moulus, *I ground.*

Conjugate in the same manner.

émoudre, *to grind,* rémoudre, *to grind again.*

Résoudre, *to resolve.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. résoudre, *to resolve,*
Participle. résolu, *resolved,*
Gerund. résolvant, *resolving.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. je résous, *I resolve,*
Perfect. je résolu, *I resolved.*

Résoudre, when it signifies to change a thing into another, makes in its participle *résous*, which has no feminine.

Absoudre, to absolve, *dissoudre*, to dissolve, follow the same conjugation, but they have no perfect in the indicative, and no imperfect in the subjunctive; their participles are *absous*, which has no feminine, and *dissous*, which makes *dissoute*.

Soudre, to solder, is only used in the present of the infinitive.

Suivre, *to follow.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. suivre, *to follow,*
Participle. suivi, *followed,*
Gerund. suivant, *following.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. je suis, *I follow,*
Perfect. je suivis, *I followed.*
Poursuivre,

Poursuivre, to pursue, *s'ensuivre*, to follow from thence, are conjugated in the same manner.

Vivre, to live.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>vivre</i> , to live,
<i>Participle.</i>	<i>vécu</i> , lived,
<i>Gerund.</i>	<i>vivant</i> , living.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>je vis</i> , I live,
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>je vecus</i> , I lived.

Revivre, to revive, *survivre*, to out-live, are conjugated in the same manner.

Convaincre, to convince.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>convaincre</i> , to convince,
<i>Participle.</i>	<i>convaincu</i> , convinced,
<i>Gerund.</i>	<i>convainquant</i> , convincing.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>je convaincs</i> , I convince,
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>je convainquis</i> , I convinced.

Vaincre, to overcome, is conjugated in the same manner.

Plaire, to please.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>plaire</i> , to please,
<i>Participle.</i>	<i>plu</i> , pleased,
<i>Gerund.</i>	<i>plaisant</i> , pleasing.

INDI-

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	je plais,	<i>I please,</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	je plus,	<i>I pleased.</i>

Déplaire, to displease, is conjugated in the same manner.

Faire, to do.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	faire,	to do,
<i>Participle.</i>	fait,	done,
<i>Gerund.</i>	faissant,	doing.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	je fais, — nous faisons, vous faites, ils font.
	<i>I do,</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	je fis, <i>I did,</i>
<i>Future.</i>	je ferai, <i>I shall do.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

— qu'il fasse, — qu'ils fassent,
do thou.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. — nous fassions, vous fassiez, ils fassent,
I may do.

Conjugate after the same manner,

Refaire,	to do again,	contrefaire,	to counterfeit,
défaire,	to undo,	satisfaire,	to satisfy,
redéfaire,	to undo again,	surfaire,	to exact.

Forfaire, to trespass, *malfaire*, or, *méfaire*, to do ill, *parfaire*, to finish, are only used in the infinitive and the compound tenses.

Traire,

Traire, *to milk.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	traire,	<i>to milk,</i>
<i>Participle.</i>	trait,	<i>milked,</i>
<i>Gerund.</i>	trayant,	<i>milking.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. je trais, *I milk,*

This verb has no preterite in the indicative, and no imperfect in the subjunctive; but the other tenses are formed regularly.

Conjugate in the same manner,

attirer,	<i>to attract,</i>	retraire,	<i>to draw,</i>
distraindre,	<i>to divert from,</i>	soustraire,	<i>to withdraw,</i>
extraire,	<i>to extract,</i>	retraire,	<i>to redeem.</i>

Paroître, *to appear.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	paroître,	<i>to appear,</i>
<i>Participle</i>	paru,	<i>appeared,</i>
<i>Gerund</i>	paraissant,	<i>appearing.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	je paroïs,	<i>I appear,</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	je parus,	<i>I appeared.</i>

Conjugate after the same manner,

disparoître,	<i>to disappear,</i>	connoître,	<i>to know,</i>
comparoître,	} <i>to appear,</i>	reconnoître,	<i>to recollect,</i>
apparoître,		croître,	<i>to grow,</i>
reparoître,	<i>to appear again,</i>	décroître,	<i>to decrease.</i>

Naître,

Naître, to be born.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>naître,</i>	<i>to be born,</i>
<i>Participle.</i>	<i>né,</i>	<i>born,</i>
<i>Gerund.</i>	<i>naissant,</i>	<i>being born.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>je nais,</i>	<i>I am born,</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>je naquis,</i>	<i>I was born.</i>

Renaitre, to be born again, *paître*, to graze, and *repaitre*, to feed, are conjugated in the same manner, but the two last want the perfect of the indicative, and the imperfect of the subjunctive. Their participles *pu* and *repu* are seldom used.

Dire, to say.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>dire,</i>	<i>to say,</i>
<i>Participle.</i>	<i>dit,</i>	<i>said,</i>
<i>Gerund.</i>	<i>disant,</i>	<i>saying.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Je dis,</i>	—	<i>Vous dites,</i>
	<i>I say,</i>		
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>je dis, I said.</i>		

Redire, to say again, is conjugated like *dire*.

Contredire, to contradict, *se dédire*, to retreat, *médire*, to slander, *circoncire*, to circumcise, *maudire*, to curse, *interdire*, to interdict, *prédire*, to foretel, *confire*, to preserve, *suffire*, to suffice, follow the same conjugation with these exceptions, that they form the second person plural of the present regularly, *vous contredisez*, *vous vous délisez*. *Maudire* doubles the *s* throughout all its tenses, making in the gerund *maudissant*, and thus,

thus, *nous maudissons, je maudissois, &c.* *Circoncire* makes in the participle *circoncis*, and *suffire* makes *suffi*.

Lire, to read.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>lire,</i>	<i>to read,</i>
<i>Participle.</i>	<i>lu,</i>	<i>read,</i>
<i>Gerund.</i>	<i>lisant,</i>	<i>reading.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>resent.</i>	<i>je lis,</i>	<i>I read,</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>je lus,</i>	<i>I read.</i>

Relire, to read again, *élire*, to elect, are conjugated in the same manner.

Rire, to laugh.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>rire,</i>	<i>to laugh,</i>
<i>Participle.</i>	<i>ri,</i>	<i>laughed,</i>
<i>Gerund.</i>	<i>riant,</i>	<i>laughing.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>je ris,</i>	<i>I laugh,</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>je ris,</i>	<i>I laughed.</i>

Sourire, to smile, follows the same conjugation.

Ecrire, to write.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>écrire,</i>	<i>to write,</i>
<i>Participle.</i>	<i>écrit,</i>	<i>written,</i>
<i>Gerund.</i>	<i>écrivant,</i>	<i>writing.</i>

INDICA-

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>j'écris,</i>	<i>I write,</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>j'écrivis,</i>	<i>I wrote.</i>

Conjugate in the same manner,

<i>circonscire,</i>	<i>to circumscribe,</i>	<i>proscire,</i>	<i>to out-law,</i>
<i>décrire,</i>	<i>to describe,</i>	<i>récrire,</i>	<i>to write again,</i>
<i>inscrire,</i>	<i>to inscribe,</i>	<i>souscrire,</i>	<i>to subscribe,</i>
<i>prescrire,</i>	<i>to prescribe,</i>	<i>transcrire,</i>	<i>to transcribe.</i>

Frيره, to fry, is only used in the present of the infinitive, the future, conditional and compound tenses. Its participle is *frit*, but we generally use the verb, *fricasser*, or the compound *faire frيره*.

Réduire, to reduce.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>réduire,</i>	<i>to reduce,</i>
<i>Participle.</i>	<i>réduit,</i>	<i>reduced,</i>
<i>Gerund.</i>	<i>réduisant,</i>	<i>reducing.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>je réduis,</i>	<i>I reduce,</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>je réduisis,</i>	<i>I reduced.</i>

Conjugate in the same manner all verbs in *uire*, except *luire* and *reluire*, to shine, *nuire*, to hurt, which make in the participle *lui*, *relui*, *nui*. *Bruire*, to rustle, is only used in the present of the infinitive, in the gerund, *bruyant*, and in the third persons of the imperfect in the indicative, *bruyoit*, *bruyoient*.

Boire, to drink.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	boire,	to drink,
<i>Participle.</i>	bu,	drunk,
<i>Gerund.</i>	buvant,	drinking.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	je bois,	<i>I drink,</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	je bus,	<i>I drank.</i>

Reboire, to drink again, is conjugated in the same manner.

Clorre, to close.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	clorre,	to close,
<i>Participle.</i>	clos,	closed.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	je clos, tu clos, il clôt,	<i>I close,</i>
<i>Future.</i>	je clorrai,	<i>I shall close,</i>
<i>Conditional.</i>	je clorrois,	<i>I should close.</i>

The other tenses are wanting. *Enclorre*, to enclose, follows the same conjugation.

Eclorre, to blow, or open.

This verb is used in the present of the infinitive, in the participle *éclos*, and in the third persons of the following tenses.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	il éclôt,	—	ils éclosent,
	<i>it opens,</i>		
<i>Future.</i>	il éclora,	—	ils écloront,
	<i>it will open,</i>		
<i>Conditional.</i>	il écloroit,	—	ils écloroient.
	<i>it would open.</i>		

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. il éclosé — ils éclosent.
it may open.

Conclure, to conclude.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. conclure, to conclude,
Participle. conclu, concluded,
Gerund. concluant, concluding.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. je conclus, I conclude.

The *i* before *ons* and *ez*, in the first and second persons plural of the imperfect, is marked with a diæresis, *nous conclusions*, *vous concluez*.

Perfect. je conclus, I concluded.

Exclure, to exclude, is conjugated in the same manner, except the participle, which is *exclus*; its feminine is *excluse*, or, *exclue*.

A Table of all the irregular and defective Verbs.

Aller,	to go,	servir,	to serve,
puer,	to stink,	desservir,	to take away,
haïr,	to hate,	sortir,	to go out,
sentir,	to smell,	partir,	to set out,
consentir,	to consent,	ressortir,	to go out again,
ressentir	to feel,	répartir,	to reply,
pressentir,	to foresee,	ressortir,	to belong to,
mentir,	to lie,	sortir,	to get,
démentir,	to give the lie,	répartir,	to share,
dormir,	to sleep,	benir,	to bless,
endormir	to lull asleep,	fleurir,	to flourish,
se repentir,	to repent,	bouillir,	to boil,
		L 2	courir,

courir,	<i>to run,</i>	contrevenir,	<i>to infringe,</i>
accourir,	<i>to run to,</i>	obtenir,	<i>to obtain,</i>
concourir,	<i>to concur,</i>	retenir,	<i>to keep,</i>
discourir,	<i>to discourse,</i>	soutenir,	<i>to maintain,</i>
encourir,	<i>to incur,</i>	venir,	<i>to come,</i>
parcourir,	<i>to run over,</i>	intervenir,	<i>to intervene,</i>
recourir,	<i>to have recourse</i>	entretenir,	<i>to keep up,</i>
secourir,	<i>to succour,</i>	maintenir,	<i>to maintain,</i>
faillir,	<i>to fail,</i>	devenir,	<i>to become,</i>
défaillir,	<i>to faint away,</i>	convenir,	<i>to agree,</i>
fuir,	<i>to run away,</i>	disconvenir,	<i>to disagree,</i>
mourir,	<i>to die,</i>	provenir,	<i>to proceed,</i>
ouïr,	<i>to hear,</i>	se souvenir,	<i>to remember,</i>
acquérir,	<i>to acquire,</i>	se ressouvenir,	<i>to recollect,</i>
enquerir,	<i>to inquire,</i>	parvenir,	<i>to attain to,</i>
requérir,	<i>to require,</i>	prévenir,	<i>to prevent,</i>
querir,	<i>to fetch,</i>	revenir,	<i>to come again,</i>
conquerir,	<i>to conquer,</i>	subvenir,	<i>to relieve,</i>
revêtir,	<i>to invest,</i>	survenir,	<i>to befall,</i>
se dévêtir,	<i>to lay off one's</i> <i>clothes,</i>	avenir,	<i>to happen,</i>
se revêtir,	<i>to put on,</i>	saillir,	<i>to gush out,</i>
vêtir,	<i>to cloath,</i>	assaillir,	<i>to jut out,</i>
ouvrir,	<i>to open,</i>	treffaillir,	<i>to assault,</i>
découvrir,	<i>to discover,</i>	voir,	<i>to start,</i>
rouvrir,	<i>to open again,</i>	prévoir,	<i>to see,</i>
recouvrir,	<i>to cover again,</i>	revoir,	<i>to foresee,</i>
entr'ouvrir,	<i>to open but a</i> <i>little,</i>	entrevoir,	<i>to see again,</i>
offrir,	<i>to offer,</i>	pourvoir,	<i>to see but a little</i> <i>to provide,</i>
mésoffrir,	<i>to underbid,</i>	emouvoir,	} <i>to move,</i>
souffrir,	<i>to suffer,</i>	mouvoir,	
cueillir,	<i>to gather,</i>	s'émouvoir,	<i>to be moved,</i>
accueillir,	<i>to receive,</i>	démouvoir,	<i>to make one de-</i> <i>sist,</i>
recueillir,	<i>to reap,</i>	promouvoir,	<i>to promote,</i>
tenir,	<i>to hold,</i>	pleuvoir,	<i>to rain,</i>
s'abstenir,	<i>to abstain,</i>	falloir,	<i>to be necessary,</i>
appartenir,	<i>to belong,</i>	pouvoir,	<i>to be able,</i>
contenir,	<i>to contain,</i>	savoir,	<i>to know,</i>
détenir,	<i>to detain,</i>	valoir,	<i>to be worth,</i>
			équiva-

équivaloir,	to be of equal value,	surprendre,	to surprise,
revaloir,	to be even with one,	coudre,	to sew,
prévaloir,	to prevail,	découdre,	to unsew,
vouloir	to be willing,	recoudre,	to sew again,
s'asseoir,	to sit down,	mettre,	to put,
rasseoir,	to settle,	admettre,	to admit,
seoir,	to become,	commettre,	to commit,
surseoir,	to adjourn,	démètre,	to remove,
seoir,	to fit,	entremettre,	to intermeddle,
choir,	to fall,	omettre,	to omit,
déchoir,	to decay,	permettre,	to permit,
échoir,	to expire,	moudre,	} to grind,
ravoir,	to have again,	émoudre,	
se ravoir,	to recover,	remoudre,	to grind again,
plaindre,	to pity,	résoudre,	to resolve,
craindre,	to fear,	résoudre,	to change a thing into another,
peindre,	to paint,	absoudre,	to absolve,
joindre,	to join,	dissoudre,	to dissolve,
astreindre,	to oblige,	soudre,	to solder,
atteindre,	to reach,	suivre,	to follow,
ceindre,	to gird,	poursuivre,	to pursue,
contraindre,	to constrain,	s'ensuivre,	to follow from thence,
enceindre,	to inclose,	voir,	to live,
enfreindre,	to infringe,	revivre,	to revive,
enjoindre,	to injain,	survivre,	to out-live,
éteindre,	to extinguish,	convaincre,	to convince,
feindre,	to feign,	vaincre,	to overcome,
joindre,	to join,	plaire,	to please,
peindre,	to paint,	déplaire,	to displease,
restreindre,	to astringe,	faire,	to do,
teindre,	to dye,	refaire,	to do again,
prendre,	to take,	défaire,	to undo,
apprendre,	to learn,	redéfaire,	to undo again,
comprendre,	to understand,	contrefaire,	to counterfeit,
désapprendre,	to unlearn,	satisfaire,	to satisfy,
entreprendre,	to undertake,	surfaire,	to exact,
se méprendre,	to mistake,	forfaire,	to trespass,
repandre,	to take again,		malfaire,

malfaire,	} to do ill,	confire,	to preserve,
méfaire,		suffire,	to suffice,
parfaire,	to finish,	lire,	to read,
traire,	to milk,	relire,	to read again,
attirer,	to attract,	élire,	to elect,
distraindre,	to divert from,	rire,	to laugh,
extraire,	to extract,	sourire,	to smile,
rentraire,	to darn,	écrire,	to write,
soustraire,	to withdraw,	circonscrire,	to circumscribe,
retraire,	to redeem,	décrire,	to describe,
paraître,	} to appear,	inscrire,	to inscribe,
comparaître,		prescrire,	to prescribe,
apparaître,	} to disappear,	proscrire,	to out-law,
disparaître,		recire,	to write again,
reparaître,	to appear again,	souscrire,	to subscribe,
connoître,	to know,	transcrire,	to transcribe,
reconnoître,	to recollect,	frire,	to fry,
croître,	to grow,	reduire,	to reduce,
décroître,	to decrease,	conduire,	to conduct,
naître,	to be born,	luire,	} to shine,
renaître,	to be born again,	reluire,	
paître,	to graze,	nuire,	to hurt,
repâître,	to feed,	bruire,	to rustle,
dire,	to say,	boire,	to drink,
redire,	to say again,	reboire,	to drink again,
contredire,	to contradict,	clorre,	to close,
se dédire,	to retract,	enclore,	to enclose,
médire,	to slander,	eclorre,	to blow, or,
maudire,	to curse,		open,
interdire,	to interdict,	conclure,	to conclude,
predire,	to foretell,	exclure,	to exclude.

This table has been inserted thereby to enable the scholar to conjugate all the irregular verbs at once, either repeating all the first persons singular of the present of the indicative ; as, *je vas, je sens mauvais, je hais, &c.* or taking a person from each verb ; as, *je vas, tu sens mauvais, il hait, &c.* and particularly observing those which are defective, that is, which want some of their tenses, or persons.

Of Participles and Gerunds.

A participle is thus called, because it partakes of the nature of the verb and that of the adjective.

It partakes of the nature of the verb, because it may be taken in the sense of one, expressing an action and governing a noun; as, I have written a book, *j'ai écrit un livre*; I have educated two boys, *j'ai élevé deux garçons*, it partakes of the nature of the adjective because it serves sometimes to qualify a substantive; as, a well written book, *un livre bien écrit*; an ill-bred fellow, *un drôle mal élevé*.

The Gerund expresses

1. The state or situation of the nominative, and is then generally preceded in English by the verb, *to be*; as, *I am reading, I was singing*. It is rendered in French by the verb itself, put in the same tense as the verb, *to be*, is; as, *je lis, je chantois*.

2. The reason, motive, or some circumstance of an action; *his master, knowing him to be in the wrong, turned him away*. *Son maître, sachant qu'il avoit tort, le renvoya*.

3. The manner of succeeding in a thing; *you will learn french by speaking it*. *Vous apprendrez le françois en le parlant*.

4. Observe, that the gerund when it is preceded by a preposition, is rendered in French by the present of the infinitive; as, *I delight in reading*, *je prens du plaisir à lire*, except when that preposition can be rendered by *en*; for then the gerund must be retained as in the example of the 3d section, *by speaking*, *en parlant*.

EXERCISE.

I am	I learning		we are	I considering		I was
	<i>apprendre</i>			<i>considérer</i>		

I perusing

1 perusing | the messenger was 1 telling | I have
parcourir *messenger* *raconter*
 been 1 listening | she has been 1 dancing | have
écouter *danser*
 you been 1 playing | I had been 1 teasing | we
jouer *tourmenter*
 had been 1 hunting | 2 considering Master Monkton
chasser *regarder* *Monsieur Monkton*
 as a married man, she was not afraid of 4 telling
comme marié homme *craindre* *faire connoître*
 a him her distress | and 2 snatching away her hand she
lui *embarras* *retirer promptement* *main*
 threw herself into the carriage | Mr. Harrel 2 taking
*se jeter ** *dans* *voiture* *Mr. Harrel prendre*
 a glass, brought it to Cecilia | he had gained a
verre, m. l'apporta *Cecile* *se faire*
 powerful friend by 3 refusing that offer | she had the
puissant ami en rejeter *offre, f.* ***
 pleasure of 4 telling the captain | he walked away
plaisir *dire à* *capitaine* *se retirer **
 without 4 adding another word | instead of 4 taking
proférer une seule parole *au lieu de profiter de*
 the privilege of his present situation | she had not
privilege *présent situation* ***
 the power of 4 denying that request.
force, f. *refuser* *requête.*

Of Adverbs.

Adverb signifies joined to a verb; it serves to express some circumstance of the action denoted by the verb; as, *I read well*, *je lis bien*; *you speak correctly*, *vous parlez correctement*; the words *well* and *correctly* which denote the manner in which I read and speak are adverbs.

^a This pronoun comes before the verb.

An adverb is also joined to an adjective or participle; as, *very good*, très bon, *much esteemed*, fort estimé; sometimes to another adverb; as, *exceedingly well*, extraordinairement bien.

Adverbs are either simple; as, *justly*, justement, *yesterday*, hier; or, compound, as, *for the present*, pour le présent, *in future*, à l'avenir.

These last are placed in the class of adverbs, because they express some circumstance or modification as well as simple adverbs.

Adverbs may be reduced to the following classes;

Of *time*; as, *now*, à présent, *to-day*, aujourd'hui, *yesterday*, hier, *the day before yesterday*, avant-hier, *formerly*, autrefois, *lately*, dernièrement, *before*, auparavant, *already*, déjà, *presently*, tout-à-l'heure, *immediately*, sur le champ, *by and by*, tantôt, *to-morrow*, demain, *henceforth*, désormais, *henceforward*, dorenavant, *when*, quand, *often*, souvent, *sometimes*, quelquefois, *seldom*, rarement, *daily*, journellement, *always*, toujours, *never*, jamais, &c.

Of *number and quantity*, as, *once*, une fois, *twice*, deux fois, *how much*, combien, *much*, beaucoup, *little*, peu, *enough*, assez, *so much*, tant, *as much*, autant, *too much*, trop, &c.

Of *order or rank*; as, *first*, premièrement, *secondly*, secondement, *lastly*, enfin, *alternately*, alternativement, *together*, ensemble, &c.

Of *place or situation*; as, *where*, où, *here*, ici, *there*, là, *elsewhere*, ailleurs, *every where*, par-tout, *no where*, nulle part, *some where*, quelque part, *within*, dedans, *without*, dehors, *upward*, en haut, *downward*, en bas, *forward*, en avant, *backward*, à reculons, &c.

Of *affirming, denying, and doubting*; as, *verily*, en vérité, *truly*, vraiment, *surely*, sûrement, *certainly*, certainement, *yes*, oui, *no*, not, non, *ne pas*, ne point, *not at all*, point du tout, *by no means*, nullement, *perhaps*, peut-être, &c.

Of *manner and quality*; as, *so*, ainsi, si, *as*, comme, *very*, très, *fort*, *otherwise*, autrement, *almost*, presque, *scarcely*,

scarcely, à peine, as much, autant, more, plus, davantage, better, mieux, worse, pis, less, moins, modestly, modestement, prudently, prudemment, &c.

Most adverbs of quality in French end in *ment*, and are formed from adjectives in this manner.

1. When the adjective masculine ends with a vowel, the adverb is formed by the addition of the syllable *ment*; thus from the adjectives, *vrai, sage, true, wise*, you form the adverbs *vraiment, sagement, truly, wisely*.

2. If the adjective masculine ends with a consonant, the adverb is formed from the feminine termination, to which you add *ment*; as, *grand, grande, grandement, great, greatly, heureux, heureuse, heureusement, happy, happily*.

3. The adjectives *nouveau, new, beau, handsome, fou, foolish, mou, soft*, likewise form their adverbs from their feminines; as, *beau, belle, bellement; nouveau, nouvelle, nouvellement, &c.*

Gentil, pretty, makes gentiment.

4. The adjectives in *ant* and *ent* form their adverbs by changing *ant* into *amment* and *ent* into *emment*; as,

Note. In adverbs which are derived from participle or adjectives ending in *é*, the accent is retained; as, *sensé, sensément, wise, wisely*, but the *e* preceding *ment*, in the following adverbs is acute, though it is not accented in the adjectives from which they derive, *aveuglement, blindly, commodément, conveniently, communément, commonly, conformément, conformably, énormément, greatly, expressément, expressly, importunément, importunately, impunément, with impunity, incommodément, inconveniently, obscurément, obscurely, opiniâtrément, obstinately, précisément, precisely, profondément, deeply, profusément, largely.*

savant,

savant, savamment, learned, learnedly, prudent, prudently, prudent, prudently.

But the adjectives, *lent, slow, présent, present*, make *lentement, présentement*, according to the 2d rule.

Observe, that adjectives in *ant* derived from verbs, such as *charmant*, seldom have any adverb.

EXERCISE,

upon the formation of Adverbs.

Honest, honestly <i>honnête</i> 1		faithful, faithfully <i>fidèle</i> 1		sincere <i>sincere</i>
sincerely 1		charitable, charitably <i>charitable</i> 1		severe, severely <i>sévère</i> 1
polite, politely <i>poli</i> 1		positive, positively <i>positif</i> 2		plain, <i>franc</i>
plainly 2		public, publicly <i>public</i> 2		mortal, mortally <i>mortel</i> 2
curious, curiously <i>curieux</i> 2		simple, simply <i>simple</i> 2		imperious, <i>impérieux</i>
imperiously 2		neat, neatly <i>net</i> 2		false, falsely <i>faux</i> 2
sweet, sweetly <i>doux</i> 2		new, newly <i>nouveau</i> 3		mad, madly <i>fou</i> 3
constant, constantly <i>constant</i> 4		diligent, diligently <i>diligent</i> 4		
negligent, negligently <i>négligent</i> 4		independent, independently <i>indépendant</i> 4		
slow, slowly. <i>lent</i> 4				

Though it is impossible to determine by certain rules the place of adverbs in the construction of the French sentence; I shall, however, propose the following observations, in following which, though deviations from them often occur in good authors, the scholar will seldom be wrong.

Observa-

Observations upon *Adverbs*.

1. The adverb in French is seldom placed between its verb and nominative, as in English, but comes after the verb if the tense is simple, and generally between the auxiliary and participle if the tense is compound; as, *he always speaks*, il parle toujours, *he has always spoken*, il a toujours parlé.

2. Neither is it to be put, especially when it is simple, after the noun governed by the verb; it is better to place it immediately after the verb; as, *I saw your brother yesterday*, je vis hier votre frere.

3. Compound adverbs may always be placed after the compound tenses; as, *he is lost for ever*, il est perdu pour toujours.

Except *très bien*, *fort bien*, very well, *très mal*, *fort mal*, very ill, *beaucoup mieux*, much better, *plus mal*, worse; which come between the auxiliary and participle; *she has read very well*, elle a fort bien lu.

4. The monosyllables *bien*, *mal*, *mieux*, may indifferently come either before or after an infinitive; as, *bien parler*.

5. The following adverbs require *ne* before their verb, without *pas* or *point*; *nullement*, by no means, *guere*, but little, *jamais*, when it means never, *nulle part*, no where, *point du tout*, not at all, *plus*, when it stands for no more, *mot* and *goute* in the following phrases, *ne dire mot*, not to say one word, *ne voir goutte*, not to see at all.

E X E R C I S E.

I always speak		I often read		I commonly
<i>toujours parler</i>		<i>souvent lire</i>		<i>ordinairement</i>
I lose when I play		a good horse		sometimes
<i>perdre quand jouer</i>		<i>bon cheval</i>		<i>quelquefois</i>
stumbles		your father		seldom fails to go in the
<i>broncher</i>		<i>pere</i>		<i>rarement manquer de aller à</i>

country

country in the month of September | I shall
campagne, f. à mois Septembre
 1 certainly see your brother 2 to-morrow | he 1 then
certainement voir frere demain ensuite
 took a glass | his principal study was 1 carefully to
*prendre * verre, m. principal étude, f. * soigneusement de*
 avoid all public gallantry | Cecilia had easily
éviter tout public galanterie Cecile aisément
 declined this proposal | your brother has not 1 yet
refuser offre, f. frere encore
 read the ancient history | I shall see the king
lire ancien histoire, f. voir roi
 2 to-morrow | I went to the play 2 last night
*demain aller * comédie hier au soir*
 I should have ^a come 3 immediately | you have
venir sur le champ
^a arrived 3 seasonably | if you had ^a come 3 early,
arriver à propos venir de bonne heure
 you would have seen the king | they have answered
voir roi répondre à
 his speech 3 very well | he had behaved to their
discours très bien se comporter vis-a-vis de
 ambassadors 3 very ill | you would have done
ambassadeur fort mal faire
 3 much better if you had not been intimidated | this
beaucoup mieux si intimider
 actor is well organized and promises to sing 4 well
acteur organisé promettre de chanter bien
 if you wish to please, try to sing 4 better | I 5 by no
souhaiter de plaire tâcher de chanter mieux nulle-
 means consent to grant that request | I have
ment consentir à accorder requête, f.
 5 but little thought of your affair | shall we 5 never
guere penser à affaire, f. jamais
 see the end of your book | I shall inquire no more
voir fin livre, m. s'informer plus
 about your affairs.
de.

^a See page 83. sect. 1.

Of PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions express the relation or reference which some words have with one another; as, *a voyage through France*, the word *through* which denotes the relation of the other words *voyage* and *France*, will be a preposition. *The master is in the closet*. The word *in* will be a preposition, because it expresses a relation between *the master* and *the closet*.

They are also called prepositions because they are placed before the noun they govern, without which they cannot make any sense; but this definition is not true in English, where they are elegantly put at the end of the sentence; as, *what are you speaking of?* instead of, *of what are you speaking?*

They are either simple, that is, expressed in one word, or compound, that is, expressed in several words.

The following prepositions are immediately followed by the noun which they govern.

à,	at, to,	selon,	} according to,
de	of, from,	suivant,	
dès	from,	contre,	} against,
avant,	} before,	touchant,	} about,
devant,		concernant,	
derrière,	behind,	sans,	} without,
avec,	with,	pour,	} for,
chez,	at,	moyennant,	
après,	after,	nonobstant,	} notwithstanding,
depuis,	since,		ing,
durant,	} during,	excepté,	} except,
pendant,		hormis,	} but,
entre,	between,	hors,	
parmi,	among,	malgré,	} in spite of,
environ,	about,	outré,	} besides,
vers,	} towards,	par,	} by,
envers,		sur,	} upon,
			sous,

fous, under, à travers, through.
fauf, save,

The following ones require the preposition *de* before the next noun.

auprès,	} by, near,	au dessus,	above,
près,		au dessous,	under,
proche,	} along,	au tour,	} about, round,
le long,		à l'entour,	
ensuite,	after,	à rebours,	against,
au deça,	} on this side,	vis-a-vis,	over-against,
en deça,		à l'opposite	opposite to,
au delà,	on the other side,	au travers,	through,
		à côté,	by.

Jusque, as far as, is followed by *à*; as, *jusqu'à la Chine*, as far as China.

Sauf is also followed by *à* in such sentences as this, *sauf à vous à plaider*, but you may plead.

EXERCISE.

There have been wicked men from the beginning of
y avoir des scélérats *dès commencement*
the world | the wanton cupids stood behind the
monde *badin amour se tenir* * *derriere*
chariot of the goddesses | the consuls had a great
char *déesse* *consul* *
power amongst the Romans | the cold is very
pouvoir chez Romain *froid*
severe during four months of the year | she was
sévère pendant quatre mois *année* *
struck with that uncommon speech | he ^a always
frapper de extraordinaire discours *toujours*
takes something between his meals | he had
prendre quelque chose entre repas
revolted against his lawful king | I shall undertake
se révolter contre légitime roi *entreprendre*

^a See page 120. sect. 1.

that law-suit in spite of the advice of my friends
procès malgré avis ami
 he stood by his mistress upon a bed of roses | we
*être * auprès maitresse sur lit rose*
 were now near the place where our companions had
** alors près endroit où compagnons*
 been killed | as I was ^a walking along the river
*tuer comme * se promener le long riviere*
^b yesterday, I perceived a squirrel through the
*hier appercevoir * écureuil au travers*
 branches of the trees | when they were on the
*branche, f. arbre quand * au*
 other side the mountains, they began to reflect on
*delà montagne, f. commencer * à réfléchir sur*
 their present situation | she had ^d raised herself
présent situation s'élever
 above the weakness of her sex | can I return here
au dessus foiblesse sexe, m. pouvoir revenir ici
 without ^c going along the river?
sans passer le long riviere ?

Of CONJUNCTIONS.

Conjunctions serve to join different words or parts of a sentence. They join words, as, *Cesar and Alexander were two great captains.* *Cesar & Alexandre ont été deux grands capitaines.* *The father or son will do it.* *Le pere ou le fils le fera.* *And, or,* which join the nouns *Cesar* and *Alexander*, *father* and *son*, are conjunctions. They join sentences; as, *I shall give it you if you come.* *Je vous le donnerai si vous venez.* *I give you warning that you may be ready.* *Je vous avertis afin que vous soyez prêt.* The words *if* and *that* which

^a See page 115. sect. 1.

^c See page 115. sect. 4.

^b See page 120. sect. 2.

^d See page 79. rule 5.

join the different members of the above sentences are conjunctions.

Of conjunctions; some govern the indicative, some the subjunctive, others sometimes govern the indicative, and sometimes the subjunctive.

The following conjunctions govern the indicative.

et,	<i>and,</i>	enfin,	<i>in short,</i>
ni,	<i>nor, neither,</i>	toutes les fois que,	<i>as often as</i>
soit,	<i>whether,</i>	depuis que,	<i>since,</i>
ou,	<i>or,</i>	de plus,	<i>moreover,</i>
comme,	<i>as,</i>	outre que,	<i>besides,</i>
si,	<i>if,</i>	au lieu que,	<i>whereas,</i>
que,	<i>that,</i>	néanmoins,	<i>nevertheless,</i>
ainsi,	} <i>therefore,</i>	pourtant,	} <i>yet, however,</i>
aussi,		toutes fois,	
aussi bien que,	<i>as well as,</i>	cependant,	
ainsi que,	} <i>as, just as,</i>	en effet	<i>indeed,</i>
de même que,		car,	<i>for,</i>
tant que,	<i>as long as,</i>	parce que,	} <i>because,</i>
non plus que,	<i>no more than,</i>	a cause que,	
en tant que,	<i>as much as,</i>	vu que,	<i>seeing that,</i>
non seulement,	<i>not only,</i>	attendu que,	<i>considering</i>
mais encore,	} <i>but also,</i>		<i>that,</i>
mais aussi,		d'ailleurs,	<i>besides,</i>
sinon,	} <i>or else,</i>	ensuite,	} <i>then,</i>
ou, ou bien,		puis,	
quand	} <i>when,</i>	même,	<i>even,</i>
lorsque,		de même,	<i>likewise,</i>
quand,	} <i>tho' although</i>	là dessus,	<i>thereupon,</i>
quand même		sur quoi,	<i>whereupon,</i>
d'autant que,	<i>the more as,</i>	dès que,	} <i>as soon as,</i>
d'autant plus	<i>so much the</i>	sitôt que,	
que,	<i>more as,</i>	aussitôt que,	
puisque,	<i>since,</i>	après que,	<i>after,</i>
c'est pourquoi,	<i>therefore,</i>	pendant que,	<i>whilst,</i>
par conséquent,	<i>consequently</i>	mais,	<i>but,</i>
donc,	<i>then,</i>		

OBSERVATIONS.

1. *Que*, whether alone or compound ; as, *dès que* is spelled *qu'* before a vowel, and *si*, if, is spelled *s'* before the pronouns *il*, *ils*.

2. *But*, may also be considered as an adverb used instead of *only* ; as, *he loves but you*, and is then rendered by *ne que* ; this last keeps the same place as *but* in English, and *ne* comes before the verb ; as, *il n'aime que vous*.

3. The conjunction *that*, which serves to join parts of a sentence, is very often understood in English, where you may say, *I know you learn French*, instead of, *I know that you learn French*. It must always be expressed in French ; as, *I hear he is dead*, *j'apprends qu'il est mort*.

4. When two verbs in English are joined by *neither*, *nor* ; *neither* is expressed by *ne*, and *nor* by *ni*, which also requires *ne* before its verb ; as, *I neither drink nor smoke*, *je ne bois ni ne fume*.

5. But if the two verbs being in the infinitive are preceded by another verb, in this manner, *I neither love to drink nor smoke* ; *neither* is rendered by *ne* which comes before the first verb, and the two verbs in the infinitive are preceded by *ni* ; as, *je n'aime ni à boire ni à fumer*.

6. If *neither*, *nor*, serve to join two substantives, *ni* must be repeated before both substantives, and *ne* put before the verb ; as, *I have neither gold nor silver*, *je n'ai ni or ni argent*.

EXERCISE.

When she entered the apartment, she curtsied
quand entrer dans l'appartement faire* la révérence*
 without saying a single word | her fondness for Miss
sans dire seule parole, f. tendresse pour mademoiselle
 Belfield, as well as the sincerity of her intentions made
*Belfield, aussi bien que sincérité intention^a rendre**
 the detection of this secret peculiarly cruel | 6 neither
découverte, f. secret singulièrement cruel,
 her beauty nor her youth moved their savage hearts
beauté jeunesse toucher sauvage cœur*
 he is forsaken by his friends, since he has 6 neither lands
abandonné de ami depuis que terre
 nor money | the ministers will^c certainly succeed ; for
argent ministre certainement réussir car
 they have friends | I neither care to win nor to lose
des amis se soucier de gagner de perdu
 he 5 neither likes to lend nor to borrow | whereas
aimer à prêter à emprunter au lieu que
 you would have been elected, if you had^b come sooner
élire venir plutôt
 our soldiers will be courageous, if they be well com-
soldat courageux si com-
 manded | the scholars^c commonly begin to
mandé écolier ordinairement commencer à
 make a noise as soon as the master is gone out
faire du bruit aussitôt que maître sorti
 I amused myse'f with^d walking when I was in the
s'amuser à se promener lorsque* à*
 country | he has kept at home ; however he had
compagne, f. se tenir au logis cependant

^a This verb must be in the singular. ^c See page 120. sect. 1.

^b See page 83. sect. 1.

^d See page 71. rule 1.

given his word of honour | as soon as the ship had
donner parole, f. honneur aussitôt que vaisseau †
 left the harbour, the sailors began to rejoice
*sortir de port matelot commencer * à se réjouir*
 though you would succeed, you would get 2 but
quand même réussir gagner
 a guinea | in this dreadful situation he had 2 but the
*guinée terrible situation **
 assistance of his friend | I hear that you have dismissed
assistance ami apprendre que renvoyer
 your clerk | you forget 3 you have already told that
commis oublier déjà raconter
 story | I know 3 you would be sorry not to
histoire, f. savoir être fâché de
 please your master.
plaire à maître.

The following conjunctions govern the subjunctive.

que,	<i>to the end that,</i>	aucas que,	} <i>in case that,</i>
afin que,	} <i>that,</i>	en cas que,	
pour que,			pourvu que,
avant que	<i>before,</i>	moyennant que,	
à moins que,	<i>unless,</i>	fans que,	<i>without,</i>
bien que,	} <i>though,</i>	non que,	<i>not that,</i>
quoique,		<i>although,</i>	non pas que,
encor que,		loin que,	<i>far from,</i>
de crainte que,	} <i>test,</i>	excepté que	} <i>except, or,</i>
de peur que,		hormis que,	
que ne,	} <i>till, until,</i>	hors que,	} <i>suppose that.</i>
jusqu'à ce que,		posé que,	
soit que,	<i>whether,</i>	supposé que,	

OBSERVATIONS.

1. Some of the above conjunctions are sometimes followed by *de* instead of *que*; as, *afin de, de crainte*

^b See page 83. sect. 1.

de, &c. they then govern the infinitive instead of the subjunctive.

2. *Non pas que*, when it serves to express, not but, *amoins que*, *de peur que*, *de crainte que*, govern *ne* before the next verb when it is not attended by a negative in English; as, *unless you come*, *à moins que vous ne veniez*.

3. *Que ne*, instead of *à moins que*, and *jusqu'à ce que*, can only be used when the preceding verb is attended by a negative; as, *I shall not undertake it unless you promise me your assistance*, *je ne l'entreprendrai pas que vous ne me promettiez votre assistance*.

EXERCISE.

That I may arrive | that thou mayest accomplish
afin que arriver pour que accomplir
 before he receives | 2 unless he comes down | though
avant que recevoir à moins que descendre quoique
 the masters consent | though I ran | 2 lest thou might-
maître consentir bien que courir de pour que
 est run away | 2 for fear that the patient died
a s'enfuir de crainte que malade mourir
 till we opened | whether you did acquire | provided
jusqu'à ce que ouvrir soit que acquérir pourvu que
 the girls did not gather | provided the spectators did
fille cueillir moyenant que spectateur
 not see | without I have stirred | not that he has
voir sans que remuer non que
 been able | 2 not but we have known | except you
pouvoir non pas que savoir excepté que
 have been seen | he brought a chair that I might
*voir apporter * chaise, f. afin que pouvoir*
 sit down | he instructed my son | that he might
*b s'asseoir instruire * fils pour que*

^a See its irregularity, p. 90.

^b See page 71. rule 1.

know something | suppose that he learned | before
savoir quelque chose supposé que apprendre avant que
 you did put | 2 unless they did enjoin | though I had
mettre à moins que enjoindre bien que
 resolved | though thou hadst followed | although he
résoudre encor que suivre bien que
 had lived | till we had convinced | whether you had
vivre jusqu'à ce que convaincre soit que
 pleased | provided they had done | provided you do
plaire pourvu que fait moyennant que
 not appear | though we are born | without he had
paraître quoique naître sans que
 said one word | not that I read | 2 not but I laugh
dire parole, f. non pas que lire non pas que rire
 except you write | suppose he drinks | suppose he
excepté que écrire posé que boire supposé que
 does not reduce | suppose I went | lend me some
réduire aller prêter moi
 money that I may succour my friend | that I die in
argent que aider ami afin que mourir en
 peace | that thou mightest invest | before he had
paix pour que pouvoir investir avant que
 offered | 2 unless I gathered | though I did not see
offrir à moins que cueillir quoique voir
 though I acted | although it rained | 2 for fear I
bien que agir encor que pleuvoir de crainte que
 can | 2 lest I may know | I shall not go 3 till he
pouvoir de peur que savoir aller
 comes | I shall not set out 3 till I have your leave
venir partir que permission
 without you took | not that we have run | 2 not but
sans que prendre non pas que courir non pas que
 we had done | except you had said | suppose we had
finir excepté que dire supposé que
 read | in case he had pleased | 1 in order to pay his
lire en cas que plaire afin de payer
 debts | 1 for fear of speaking imprudently | 1 far
dette, f. de crainte de parler imprudemment loin
 from doing his duty.
de faire devoir.

Other conjunctions sometimes govern the indicative, and sometimes the subjunctive ; but they shall be taken notice of in the Syntax.

Of INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections serve to denote some sudden emotion of the mind ; such as,

ah !	<i>ha !</i>	chut,	<i>hush,</i>
ha !	<i>oh !</i>	allez,	<i>away,</i>
hélas !	<i>alás !</i>	fy, &c.	<i>fye, &c.</i>

Of SYNTAX.

Syntax is the order and construction of words according to the genius of a language. I shall now consider that construction of the different parts of speech more at large, and in the same order as I have explained their natures.

Of ARTICLES.

RULE I.

1. Common names require the article definite before them in French when they are taken in a general sense, that is, when they serve to express a whole species, or which though a less metaphysical is a rule not less certain, when the words *a, an, some*, cannot be put before them; as, *man was born for society; honesty is the soul of trade*. In the above sentences the words *man, society, honesty, and trade* are taken in a general sense; for they do not mean *a man, a society alone*, but *man, society* in general. They must therefore be thus rendered in French, *l'homme est né pour la société, l'honnêteté est l'âme du commerce*.

EXERCISE.

1 Fortune	is a capricious deity		1 method makes
fortune, f.	être capricieux divinité		méthode, f. rendre
1 business easy		your brother devotes his time to	
travail facile		consacrer	temps
the study of 1 sciences		1 harmony is the ground of	
étude, f.	science	harmonie	fondement
1 music		1 friendship in 1 women is more sincere	
musique, f.	amitié dans femme		sincère
			than

than all the vows of men | misfortune ^a still
tout vœu homme malheur encore
 increafes the fenfibility of noble souls | I fhall
augmenter fenfibilité noble âme, f.
 difoblige the beft of fathers if I am not ready to
désobliger meilleur fi prêt à
 marry Lucinda | that young lady has left off
époufer Lucinde jeune demoifelle quitté
 i mufic to learn i geography | i fortitude is a
mufique, f. pour apprendre géographie courage
 virtue and i falshood a vice | men are naturally
vertu diffimulation vice, m. naturellement
 inclined to i gallantry.
porté galanterie.

R U L E II.

Common names are ufed without the article.

1. When they are in the vocative; as, *friends, let us fly to glory.* Amis, volons à la gloire.

There are fome oddities of expreffion which may be looked upon as an exception to this rule; thus, when we call to people whose names we do not know, we fometimes fay, *écoutez l'homme, la femme, la fille;* hark ye man, woman, girl; but thefe irregularities being confined to few instances, do not prevent the rule from being general.

2. By way of emphasis; as, *no body was fatisfied: father, uncles, brother, fister, all thought themfelves postponed.* Personne ne fut fatisfait: pere, oncles frere, foeur, tous fe crurent négligés.

3. After *neither*, when they are not taken in a general fenfe; as, *I have neither friends nor money,* je n'ai ni amis ni argent.

^a See page 120. feét. I.

E X E R C I S E.

1 Citizens, how long will you support the most
citoyen jusqu'à quand soutenir
 dangerous enemy of your constitution? | I have
dangereux ennemi constitution
 found every thing in her, 2 advice; 2 example;
trouver tout en elle conseil exemple, m.
 2 comfort; 2 friendship | 2 bribes, 2 promises,
consolation tendresse présent promesse
 2 threats, all the arts ^a which influence popular
menace moyen déterminer populaire
^b assemblies were used to gain the members
*assemblée * employé pour gagner membre, m.*
 I have had a sad conflict, 2 trial upon 2 trial;
essuyer terrible attaque, f. épreuve sur
 conference upon conference | that prince had
conférence prince
^c neither 3 vices nor 3 virtues | these expeditions
ni vice vertu expédition
 though expensive procured ^c neither 3 glory nor
*quoique dispendieux procurer * ni gloire*
 3 profit.
profit.

R U L E III.

1. The article definite is also used before proper names of countries, kingdoms, and provinces; as, *France is more populous than Spain*, *la France est plus peuplée que L'Espagne*. *Normandy and Picardy are two large provinces*. *La Normandie et la Picardie sont deux grandes provinces*.

2. Names of countries which have in French the same name as their capitals, such as *Valence*, *Candie*,

^a See page 69. rule 5.

^b See page 132. rule 1.

^c — 126. sect. 6.

Naples, may be used without an article; as, *Naples* *comprehends a part of the ancient campania*. *Naples* renferme une partie de l'ancienne campanie. But to remove the ambiguity it is better to put the words *royaume* *province*, *île* before them, and say, *le royaume de Naples renferme une partie de l'ancienne Campanie*.

EXERCISE.

1 Italy is the garden of 1 Europe		1 Virginia
<i>Italie</i> <i>jardin</i> <i>Europe</i>		<i>Virginie</i>
is the most ancient of our colonies		1 Russia
<i>ancien</i> <i>colonie</i>		<i>Russie</i>
begins to be a formidable power		1 Burgundy
<i>commencer à</i> <i>formidable puissance</i>		<i>Bourgogne</i>
is bounded on the north by 1 Champagne, on the		
<i>borné à nord par Champagne</i>		
east by 1 Franche-comté, on the south by		
<i>orient Franche-comté, f. midi</i>		
1 Lyonnais, and on the west by the Bourbonnois		
<i>Lyonnois occident Bourbonnois</i>		
^a love ^b never forgets to reward his votaries, and		
<i>amour jamais oublier de récompenser adorateur</i>		
1 Great Britain seems to be his favourite country		
<i>Grande Brétagne paroître favori pays</i>		
the winters of 1 New England are much severer		
<i>biver Nouveau Angleterre sévère</i>		
than ours 2 Candia was first subdued by the		
<i>Candie * d'abord subjugué par</i>		
Romans, and afterwards by the Saracens 2 Naples		
<i>Romain ensuite Sarrafin</i>		
is a delightful country, but unhealthful to		
<i>délicieux pays mais mal-sain pour</i>		

^a See page 132. rule 1.

^b See page 120. sect. 1. § 5.

^c This adjective comes before its substantive.

^a foreigners | the dominions of ² Venice extend
etranger *état* *Venise s'étendre*
 along the coast of the Adriatic sea.
le long de *côte* *Adriatique mer.*

R U L E IV.

1. Names of countries are used without an article after the propositions, *to, in, from, out of*, when they depend upon words signifying going or coming to and from, residing, travelling, being in, them. *To* and *in* are then expressed by *en*; and *from* or *out of* by *de*; as, *to live in England*, *vivre en Angleterre*.

2. They are also used without an article after a noun of dignity and title; as, *the king of France*, *le roi de France*. *The parliament of England*, *le parlement d'Angleterre*.

3. After the name of a commodity; as, *the silks of Italy*, *les soies d'Italie*.

4. But several names of countries, either remote or little known, such as, *Mexico, Peru, the Indies*, the names of some provinces in France, *la Marche, le Maine, le Perche*, &c. and various Italian names, *the Milanese, the Veronese*, &c. retain the article; as, *to come from Mexico*, *venir du Mexique*.

E X E R C I S E.

I shall go to ¹ Italy in the month of August; but I
aller *Italie à* *mois* *Août*
 shall return to ¹ England in the beginning of
revenir *Angleterre à* *commencement*
 November | my cousin who comes from
Novembre *cousin qui venir*

^a See page 132. rule 1.

1 Germany says that the number of ^a Monks
Allemagne dire nombre Moine
 lessens daily | Charles to whom ^a time was
*diminuer de jour en jour Charles qui tems **
 precious staid, ^b but four days in 1 England
*précieux rester * que quatre jour en*
 the two greatest men (according to the common
grand dans ordinaire
 acceptation of the word great) are Lewis king of
sens mot Louis roi
 2 France and Peter emperor of 2 Russia
Pierre empereur Russie
 he demanded the restitution of the dutchy of 2 Burgundy
*demande * restitution duché Bourgogne*
 during a residence of six weeks in 1 England he
pendant séjour six semaine, f. Angleterre
 gained the king and the ministers | ^a war and
*gagner * roi ministre, f. guerre*
^a persecution have ruined the kingdom of
persecution ruiner
 2 Bohemia | your brother says ^c he intends
Bohême avoir dessein
 to go to 4 Virginia and to 4 Jamaica | the
d'aller Virginie Jamaïque
 sovereign council of 4 Martinico superintends all
souverain conseil Martinique avoir l'inspection sur
 the other islands | the empire of 4 China
autre île, f. empire Chine
 is bounded on the north by the ^d celebrated
borné à nord fameux
 wall and on the east by the yellow sea.
muraille orient jaune mer.

^a See page 132. rule 1.

^c ——— 126. sect. 3.

^b See page 126. sect. 2.

^d This adjective comes before its substantive.

R U L E V.

1. Names of rivers must be preceded by the article in French; and the word *river* which is sometimes put before them in English is suppressed; as, *the Thames*, or, *the river Thames*, la Tamise; yet in some occasions we use the word *fleuve*; as, *the river St. Lawrence*, le fleuve St. Laurent.

2. Names of hills and mountains are likewise most commonly preceded by the article; as, *the Alps*, les Alpes, *Mount Parnassus*, le Parnasse.

3. Some require one of these words *mont*, or *montagne*. The first governs neither article nor preposition, but will be preceded by the article *le*; as, *Mount Ararat*, le Mont Ararat.

It is impossible to determine by rules which are used with the article, and which must be preceded by the words *mont* or *montagne*.

E X E R C I S E.

^a Troyes seated on the river 1 Seine is not so
Troyes situé sur Seine
^b flourishing as formerly | the river 1 Neva has
fleurir autrefois Narva
 not every where the same depth, so that several
par-tout même profondeur de sorte que plusieurs
 merchant ships are cleared at Cronstad
vaisseaux marchands déchargé à Cronstad
 1 Jourdain is formed by the union of two streams
Jourdain formé par jonction deux ruisseaux
^c which rise at the foot of 2 Antilibanus | the
avoir sa source à pié Antiliban

^a See page 14. sect. 10.

^c ——— 69. rule 5.

^b See the irregularity of this
 verb, p. 89.

mountains

mountains of Lesser ^a Asia are 2 Olympus, 2 Ida,
montagne, f. Asie Mineure Olympe Ida
 2 Tauris | 3 Mount Ossa according to the
Tauris Mont Ossa selon
 fabulous accounts of ^b antiquity was inhabited by
*fabuleux récit antiquité * habité par*
 the Centaurs | the French passed the Alps at
*Centaure François passer * Alpes*
 3 mount Cenis, and as their success depended on
*Cenis comme succès dépendre * de*
 their dispatch, they advanced with the greatest
*célérité avancer * avec*
 diligence | 3 mount Olivet or the mountain of
diligence Olivet ou montagne, f. des
 Olives is only about a mile from Jerusalem
Olives n'est qu'à environ mille Jérusalem
 2 mount Hermon, like 2 Libanus, is very high
mont Hermon semblable à Liban élevé
 and capped with snow during the greatest part of
couvert de neige pendant partie
 the year.
année.

R U L E. VI.

1. The article definite is used before nouns of dignities, titles, liberal professions; and use will have the words *monseigneur, monsieur, madame, mademoiselle*, prefixed to them, when we speak to the persons themselves or before their friends and relations; as, *my lord archbishop, monseigneur l'archevêque, marshal d'estrées, le maréchal or Mr. le maréchal d'estrées.*

2. With abusing words or names of mechanical professions, before which the words *monsieur, madame, mademoiselle* are put ironically; as, *Mr. Lazy Bones, Mr. Le Paresseux.*

3. Before adjectives used substantively; as, *black is my favourite colour, le rouge est ma couleur favorite.*

^a See p. 134. rule III. ^b See p. 132. rule 1.

E X E R C I S E .

During these transactions I pope Adrian
pendant que ces choses se passoient pape Adrien
 died in ^a Italy | what business brings you to
*mourir * Italie - quelle affaire vous amene*
 Lisbon, I colonel | I was ^b walking this evening
Lisbonne colonel se promener soir
 with my friend I captain Sentry | the reinforcements
ami capitaine Sentry renforcement
 for the states of I prince Heraclius are ^b defiling hastily
état prince Heraclius défilér en hâte
 towards his provinces | he alighted at the palace of
*vers province, f. descendre, * palais*
 I cardinal Mansani, whence he ^c immediately went
*cardinal Mansani d'où sur le champ aller **
 to pay a visit to the pope | fill the glass,
rendre visite remplir verre, m.
 master 2 barber, said Jones, and ask no more questions
*monsieur barbier dire * Jones ne faites plus de questions*
 I queen Anne of ^d Austria had raised I cardinal
reine Anne Autriche élever
 Mazarine to the first dignities in the kingdom | of all the
Mazarin charge, f. de royaume
 colours, 3 red is the most shining | the study of
couleur rouge éclatant études, f.
 3 French has been the ^e chief employment of my
François- faire principal occupation
 life.
vie.

R U L E VII.

1. When a common name is used in such a manner that it does not express the whole species, but

^a See page 136. sect. 1. ^c See p. 120. sect. 1.

^b ——— 115. sect. 1. ^d ——— 136. sect. 2.

^e This adjective comes before its substantive.

only part of it, or, when the word *some* may be put before it, the partitive articles *du, de la, des*, are used; as, *Spain was torn with intestine commotions.* L'Espagne étoit déchirée par des troubles civils. *The resentment of the citizens of Segovia produced effects still more fatal.* Le ressentiment des citoyens de Ségovie produisit des effets encore plus funestes.

2. This article, as has been observed before, is not expressed after the preposition *de*; as, *a heap of stones*, un monceau de pierres.

EXERCISE.

She provided for the security of the frontiers, and
*pourvoir * à sûreté frontiere*
 raised 1 sums sufficient for ^a paying their arrears
*lever * somme, f. suffisant pour payer arrérage*
 a merchant and a grandee of ^b Spain are inconsistent
marchand grand Espagne incompatible
 1 names | I come from ^c Maine, where I have seen
nom venir Maine où voir
 mines of 2 iron and quarries of 2 marble | ^d honor and
mine, f. fer carriers marbre honneur
^d equity are not chimerical 1 notions | this opinion,
équité chimérique idée opinion
 supported by 1 arguments so plausible, made a deep
soutenu par argument plausible fit sur les
 impression on the electors | he had 1 abilities, but those
*électeurs une impression profonde * talent mais*
 abilities were ^e by no means sufficient | this country
** nullement pays*
 produces 1 citrons, 1 oranges, 1 lemons, 1 grapes
produire limon oranges citron raisin

^a See p. 115. sect. 4.

^c See p. 136. sect. 4.

^b — 136. sect. 2.

^d — 132. rule 1.

^e — 120. sect. 5.

of an uncommon sweetness, 1 almonds, 1 olives, and
extraordinaire douceur *amande, f. olive*
 1 chestnuts.
châtaigne, f.

R U L E V I I I .

1. When a noun taken in a partitive sense, is attended by an adjective which precedes it in French, *de* is put before the adjective; as, *there are handsome women in England.* Il y a de belles femmes en Angleterre. *This is good bread.* Voici de bon pain.

2. Except when the substantive and adjective form an indivisible sense, the partitive article must then be used; as, *des petits maîtres, beaux, des petites maisons,* a bedlam.

E X E R C I S E .

The league produced great 1 effects in ^a Italy, and
ligue * *effet*
 rendered ^b Lombardy the chief theatre of ^c war.
rendre * *Lombardie* *principal théâtre, m. guerre, f.*
 your condescension has no doubt prevented great
complaisance *sans doute* *prévenir*
 1 mischiefs | ^b China produces ^d corn, ^d grain,
malheur *Chine* *blé* *grain*
 and fine 1 oranges | he introduced young 1 girls
introduire * *jeune* *fille*
^e who danced after the manner of their country
danser * *à* *maniere* *pays*
 he says that in his travels he has drunk good
dire *que dans* *voyage* *boire*
 1 wine and bad 1 beer | when I drink 2 small
vin *mauvais biere* *quand*

^a See p. 136. sect. 1.

^c See p. 132. rule 1.

^b ——— 134. sect. 1.

^d ——— 140. rule 7.

^e ——— 169. rule 5.

2 beer I do not fear the head-ake | Zadig gave
craindre mal de tête Zadig donner *
 entertainments to which he invited handsome
 2 petit soupé où inviter * beau
 1 women and wits
femme 2 bel esprit.

R U L E IX.

1. In mentioning the price or value of things, the article indefinite *a* which is put before the nouns of measure, weight, and number, must be rendered by the article definite, *le, la*; as, *five shillings a bushel*, *cin chelins le boisseau*. *Two pence a yard*, *deux sous verge*. You may likewise say, *cinq chelins par boisseau*, *deux sous la verge*.

2. *Par* is generally used in this and such like occasions, *so much a week, a month*, and the next word has no article.

EXERCISE.

^a Wine is so cheap this year that it is worth ^b but
vin à si bon marché que il valoir
 two pence ^a 1 bottle | ^a peaches were so common
deux sou bouteille pêche commun
 last year, that they sold a shilling ^a 1 hundred
*l'année passée se vendre * chelin cent*
 my cousin comes from ^c China, from whence he has
cousin venir d'où
 brought over very good ^d tea at sixpence ^a 1 pound
apporter thé à six sou livre, f.

^a See p. 132. rule 1.

^b — 126. sect. 2.

^c See p. 136. sect. 4.

^d — 142. sect. 1.

there are ^a seasons in the year when ^b partridges are
faison de année où perdrix
 so scarce, that they sell eight shillings a brace
rare huit couple
 several persons ^c still remember the dancing
plusieurs personnes, f. encore se souvenir de maître
 master ^d who had a guinea a lesson.
*de danse prendre * guinée leçon.*

R U L E X.

1. No article is used before a substantive which serves to qualify another substantive expressed before; as, *the duke of York*, A PRINCE OF THE BLOOD, *le duc d'York, prince du sang*. It is likewise suppressed before a substantive in the middle of a sentence, when that part of the sentence is a kind of observation upon the other; as, *he was treated with all the respect paid to those who direct the sentiments of other men*; AN HOMAGE more sincere, as well as more flattering than any which pre-eminence in birth or condition can command. *Il fut traité avec tout le respect qu'on rend à ceux qui dirigent les sentiments des autres hommes; hommage plus sincère & en même tems plus flatteur que tous ceux que peut donner l'avantage du rang ou de la naissance.*

E X E R C I S E S.

^b Life is not 1 life in the country | his father, Philip,
vie à campagne Philippe
 the handsome, archduke of ^c Austria was 1 the son
*beau archiduc Autriche * fils*

^a See p. 140. rule 7.^c See p. 120. sect. 1.^b — 132. rule 1.^d — 69. rule 5.^c — 136. sect. 2.

of the Emperor Maximilian and of Mary, ^{Empereur Maximilien} the only ^{Marie} child of Charles the Bold, ^{unique} the last prince of the ^{Charles} ^{téméraire} ^{dernier} ^{prince} ^{maison} ^{Bourgogne} ^{Castillon} ^{irrité} house of a Burgundy | the Castilians exasperated against his brother, ^{contre} an ill advised and vicious prince, ^{prince vicieux & mal conseillé} publicly charged him with impotence | ^{publicquement l'accuserent} ^{de impuissance} ^{America} ^{Amérique} has been discovered by the perseverance of the great ^{découvert par} ^{persévérance} Columbus, ^{Colombe} ^{Génois} ^{dire *} ^{valoir * mieux} a Genoese | he said that it was better to see a daughter over-modest than over-forward; ^{voir} ^{trop modeste} ^{libre} a sentiment ^{sentiment} ^{* beaucoup applaudi de} which was highly applauded by the parson | the Pope conferred on Henry the title of ^{ministre} ^{Pape} ^{donner *} ^{à Henri} ^{titre, m.} Defender of the Faith, ^{Défenseur} ^{Foi} ^{nom} ^{que} an appellation which that prince ^{bientôt perdre *} ^{s'être déjà} soon forfeited | the Cardinal had already secured fifteen voices, ^{assuré de quinze voix} ^{nombre suffisant pour exclure} a number sufficient to exclude any other candidate. ^{tout autre candidat.}

R U L E XI.

1. The article indefinite is also most commonly left out before those substantives which denote the country of persons, before nouns of dignities, titles and pro-

^a See p. 136. sect. 2.

^b See p. 120. sect. 1.

^c p. 134. sect. 1.

^d p. 69. rule 5.

fections preceded in French by the verbs *devenir*, to become; *passer pour*, to pass for. After some verbs passive, *être pris pour*, to be taken for; *être créé* or *nommé*, to be created, or, nominated; as, *he is taken for a Frenchman*; *il est pris pour François*. Likewise after the verb *être*, to be (when it has not *ce* for its nominative); as, *he is an officer*; *il est officier*, or, *c'est un officier*.

2. After *as*, or *like*, when they signify in quality of; as, *I have spoken as a father*, *j'ai parlé comme pere*.

EXERCISE.

The mistress of the house where these lovers had
maitresse maison où amant
 a hitherto b met was become an honest woman |
jusqu'alors se voir honnête
 c tho' he was born d a Frenchman, he had resided so
quoique naître François demeurer si
 long in d England that he was become quite e an
longtems tout-a-fait

Note. If the substantives were attended by an adjective, or followed by a relative, or some other words depending upon them, the article must be then expressed; as, *his father is a brave officer*; *son pere est un brave officier*; *his father is an officer of astonishing courage*, *son pere est un officier d'un courage étonnant*. Yet we say, *il est officier aux gardes*, he is an officer in the guards; *il est honnête homme*, he is an honest man. Because these words, *officier aux gardes*, *honnête homme*, make an indivisible sense in French.

a See p. 120. sect. 3.
 c p. 128.

b See p. 79. rule 5.

d p. 136. sect. 1.

Englishman | he speaks several languages ^a so well
parler plusieurs langues si bien
 that he is taken for 1 an Italian by the Italians, and
Italien par
 for 1 an Englishman, when he is with the English |
pour Anglois quand avec les Anglois
 in this posture which became his character ^b both
*dans posture convenir * à caractère*
 as 2 a soldier and as 2 a christian, he ^a calmly
comme soldat chrétien tranquillement
 waited the approach of death | as soon as he had
attendre approche, f. mort aussitôt que †*
 looked at the wound, he said, shall I speak as 2 a
*regardé blessure * †*
 surgeon, or as 2 a friend ? | Cicero was no less 1 a
*chirurgien ami Ciceron **
 philosopher than 1 an orator.
philosophe orateur.

R U L E XII

1. When a substantive with one of these prepositions, *with, by, through, without*, or any other, rendered in French by the prepositions *avec, par, sans à*, making then a kind of adverb, expresses a modification of a verb, or, of another noun, as, *to speak with ease, to live without care*, which have the same meaning, as, *to speak easily, to live carelessly*, that noun has no article in French; as, *parler avec facilité, vivre sans soin*.

2. It may also be established as a rule, that the preposition *en*, will have no article before the next noun; as, *in summer, en été; in winter, en hiver*. There are some few exceptions which shall be taken notice of in the Syntax.

^a See p. 120. sect. 1.

^b This word is not expressed.
O 2

E X E R C I S E.

I have ^a pleasure in ^b conversing with you by ¹
avoir plaisir à s'entretenir par
 letters | he is ^a plotter without a ¹ head, and a
lettre c'est conspirateur sans tête
 brother without a ¹ heart | he has ruined himself in
cœur se ruiner par
¹ love to me | the cowardice of the garrison obliged
*amour pour moi lâcheté garnison obliger **
 the governor to surrender almost without ¹ resis-
gouverneur de se rendre presque résis-
 tance | he accepted their invitation with ¹ alacrity,
*tance accepter * invitation joie*
 and said to Cecilia, have I not skilfully timed my
*dire * Cecile se présenter à*
 introduction? | ^c tho' he had many bad qualities,
propos quoique plusieurs qualité
 yet he excelled all his companions ² in gene-
*cependant surpasser * compagnon en géné-*
 rosity | after ^b having given the necessary orders, he
rosité après nécessaire ordre, m.
 entered ² the field with an army as numerous as
se mettre en campagne armée nombreux
 well disciplined.
bien discipliné.

R U L E XIII.

1. The articles *a, an,* are elegantly suppressed in Eng-
 lish before a metaphysical substantive singular, attended
 by an adjective; as, *this is very youthful philosophy;*

^a See p. 140. sect. 1. ^b See page 115. sect. 4.
 p. 128.

he paid unusual attention to her advice. It is clear that the indefinite *a*, not the definite *the*, is understood in these sentences ; for the sense will not be changed if you say, *this a very youthful philosophy ; he paid an unusual attention to her advice.* But it must be expressed in French ; as, *voici une philosophie bien jeune ; il écouta ses avis avec une attention extraordinaire.*

2. The adjectives, *great, small*, in that case, are often changed into the adverbs of quantity, *much, little*, and their comparatives into *more, less*, which govern *de* before the next substantive ; as, *he is a man of great learning, but still greater luck, c'est un homme qui a beaucoup de savoir, & encor plus de bonheur.*

3. On the contrary, when two substantives with the article indefinite *a*, are joined by the preposition *of*, the article is not expressed before the second ; if it does not serve to qualify the first ; as, *a scoundrel of an ass, un faquin d'âne.*

E X E R C I S E.

Martial^a exercises formed then a chief part in
militaire exercice, m. faire alors principal partie de*
the education of ^a persons of ^b noble birth | I know
education personne noble extraction connoître
his situation, and nothing would give me ² greater
situation rien ne me feroit
joy than an opportunity of ^c serving my
plaisir de trouver une occasion servir
friend | Colonna determined to attempt the reduc-
*Colonne résoudre * d'entry rendre réduction*
tion of Genoa, and accomplished his design with
tion Gênes et il accomplit dessein

^a See p. 132. rule 1.

^c p. 115, Sect. 4.

^b This adject. comes before its subst.

amazing

amazing 1 facility | that ^a noble recompence bestowed
étonnant facilité *récompense que reçut*
 on their preceptor was looked upon as an act of un-
*précepteur * regardé comme action ex-*
 common 1 magnificence, and threw 2 great lustre
traordinaire magnificence *jetter * lustre*
 on their administration | he beheld with ^a deep 1 concern
*sur administration voir * profond chagrin*
 his kingdom on the point of ^b being plunged in all the
à la veille plongé dans
 miseries of civil 1 war | Francis, at the head of a
horreur civil guerre, f. Francois tête
 numerous army, made several conquests of 2 small
*nombreux armée faire * plusieurs conquête, f.*
 importance | the countenance of Cecilia during this
importance contenance Cecile pendant
 exhortation, was 1 testimony sufficient that his advice
*exhortation * témoignage suffisant avis*
 came not too soon | here is a baggage of a 3 daughter
*venir * trop tôt voici coquine, f. fille*
^c who refuses the most advantageous match | I see
refuser avantageux parti voir
 now a probability of a 3 war between ^d Turkey and
à présent apparence guerre entre Turquie
^dRussia.
Russie.

R U L E XIV.

1. The articles, whether single or contracted with the prepositions *de* and *à*, must be repeated in French before every substantive, or adjective taken substantively; as, *the father and son are in the country*; *le pere & le fils sont à la campagne*. *White and black are op-*

^a This adject. comes before its subst.

^b See p. 115, sect. 4.

^c See p. 69, rule 5.

^d p. 134. sect. 1.

posite colours; le blanc & le noir sont des couleurs opposées.

2. The prepositions *de* and *à* are likewise generally repeated before other words which are not preceded by the article; as, *I complain of you and him*; je me plains de vous & de lui. *I have spoken to Peter and Paul*; j'ai parlé à Pierre & à Paul.

E X E R C I S E.

By the ill conduct of his ministers he had lost the
par mauvais conduite, f. ministre perdre
 esteem and affection of his subjects | Padilla was at
*estime, f. affection sujet Padilla **
 that time the idol of the people and soldiers, and
alors idole, f. peuple soldat
 thought the only person worthy of this honour |
regardé comme seul personne, f. digne honneur
 instead of making one great effort to penetrate into
au lieu de faire effort pour pénétrer en
^a France with all the forces of ^b Spain and the ^c Low
force, f. Pays
 Countries, he had recourse to the artifices of ^c in-
*Bas * recours artifice, m. in-*
 trigue and negotiation | ^b England was at that
*trigue négociation * alors*
 time the seat of ^c philosophy, and the most distinguished
siège philosophie fameux
 nursery of ^c arts and sciences | ^d true ^c wisdom con-
pépinier art science véritable sagesse con-
 sists not in the contempt of ^c pleasure and riches |
sister dans mépris richesses

^a See p. 136. sect. 1.

^b p. 134. sect. 1.

^c p. 132. rule 1.

^d This adj. comes before the
 subst.

his mind was tempered with that philosophy ^a which
*esprit * adouci philosophie*
 becomes a man and ² a christian | the cause of
convenir à chrétien cause
^b King George is the cause of ^c liberty and ¹ religion.
Roi George liberté religion.

R U L E XV.

1. Proper names follow the same rules in French as in English, except some Italian names, which require the article definite, as, *le Tasse, l'Arioste, le Dante, le Titien, le Carrache, &c.* and the names of some towns, as, *le Caire, la Meque, la Flèche, la Rochelle, &c.*

2. The article is contracted with the above Italian names when they begin with a consonant, as, *les ouvrages du Tasse*, the works of Tasso; but it is not with French proper names; as, *le livre de la Maire*, le Maire's book.

E X E R C I S E.

I read the works of Aristotle and ^d Plato, with the
lire ouvrage Aristote Platon avec
 rest of those inestimable treasures which ^e Greece
reste, m. inestimable trésor que Grèce
 has ^f bequeathed to the world | we read in the Spec-
légué monde, m. Spec-
 tator that he went to ¹ Cairo to measure a pyramid
*tateur aller * Caire, m. pour mesurer pyramide f.*

^a See p. 69, rule 5.

^b p. 139. sect. 1.

^c p. 132. rule 1.

^d See p. 151. sect. 2.

^e p. 134. sect. 1.

^f This participle is declined.
 the

[the Mahometans ^a who reside in ^b Africa, embark at Suez. to go to 1 Mecca] 1 Tasso is superior to some poets by the disposition of the plan and the dignity of his characters [the works of 2 Dante are obscure to those who know ^c Italian ^d best. I have read several times the speeches of 2 le Maître, 1 a countellor in the parliament of Paris.

*mahometan résider Afrique s'em-
barquer à Suez pour la Meque Tasse l'emporter
sur quelque poëte par disposition plan
dignité caractere Dante
obscur pour ceux savoir Italien le mieux
lire plusieurs fois plaidoyer
avocat à parlement Paris.*

Of N O U N S.

Of S U B S T A N T I V E S.

R U L E. I.

1. The English genitive formed by the addition of an *s* with an apostrophe (*'s*) always comes before the noun upon which it depends; as, *the King's palace*, *Milton's Paradise Lost*: in French it comes after with the preposition *de*; as, *le palais du Roi*, *le Paradis Perdu de Milton*; the palace of the King, the Paradise Lost of Milton.

2. If it is preceded by the articles *a* or *an*, as, *a King's palace*, it may be rendered two ways in French, that is, *le palais d'un Roi*; or, *un palais de Roi*. The first means the palace of some king, and the second, a palace fit for no body but a king.

^a See p. 69. rule 5.

^b p. 136. sect. 1.

^c p. 139. sect. 3.

^d See page 120. sect. 2.

^e page 144. rule 10.

3. When

3. When it comes after the Verb *to be*, signifying *to belong*, it requires the proposition *à*; as, *this hat is the gentleman's*; *ce chapeau est à Monsieur*.

4. The sign of the dative is often suppressed in English; as, *I have sent your brother what I had promised him*. The preposition *to* before a noun in the dative must always be expressed in French; as, *j'ai envoyé à votre frere, &c.*

E X E R C I S E.

Cajetan enraged at 1 Luther's abrupt retreat, and at
Cajetan indigné de Luther précipité retraite f.
the publication of his appeal wrote to the elector of
publication appel écrire électeur*
^a Saxony | several prelates exclaimed against the
*Saxe plusieurs prélat se r^{tr}ier * contre*
1 pope's lenity | under 1 Clement's feeble conduct
pape douceur sous Clement foible administration
all was ^b consternation, ^b disorder, and ^b irresolution |
tout consternation désordre irrésolution*
that beautiful house on the declivity of the hill
beau maison sur penchant colline f.
will be your 3 brother's ^c in time | he knew from
appartenir un jour savoir par*
^d experience that a wise man ^e ought not to trust a
experience sage devoir se fier à
2 courtier's promises | these reproaches were too well
*courtisan promesse reproche **
grounded^f not to hurt an 2 author's 1 sensibility | he
fondé pour blesser auteur sensibilité

^a See p. 136. sect. 2.

^b p. 133. sect. 2.

^c p. 120. sect. 2.

^d p. 147. sect. 1.

^e This Verb must be put in the present.

^f See p. 62. sect. 3.

had given his 4 allies a new cause to doubt his
donner allié nouveau raison de douter de
 sincerity.
sincérité.

R U L E II.

1. When two substantives come together, making, as it were, a compound word, their order is to be altered in French, and the first is to be put last with the preposition *de*, and the articles *le, la, les*, when it is taken in a particular and determinate sense; as, *shut the parlour door*, *fermez la porte de la salle*; but with the preposition *de* only if it is used indefinitely; as, *silk stockings*, *des bas de soie*.

2. But if the first substantive serves to shew the use of the second, instead of the preposition *de*, it must be preceded by the preposition *à*, either alone, or with the article, according to the preceding distinction. Thus this sentence, *bring the ink bottle*, may be in French, *apportez la bouteille à encre*, or, *apportez la bouteille à l'encre*. The last signifies a bottle in which we use to put our ink, and the first, a bottle in which ink may be put.

E X E R C I S E.

Our heroine, having unlocked one of the 1 house-
héroïne ouvrir maison
 doors, hastened to the place of appointment | ^a Mount
porte f. s'empressa de se rendre au lieu du rendez-vous
 Carmel, situated on the 1 sea-shore, is the most re-
Carmel, situé sur mer bord re-
 markable head-land on that coast | 1 the silver tankard
marquable promontoire, m. de côte argent pot
 is on the 1 parlour table or on the 1 hall window |
sur salle table ou vestibule m. fenêtre f.

^a See p. 138. sect. 3.

in short we ^a soon separated, and I went to take the
enfin bientôt se separer aller* prendre*
 1 Bath waters | he can more easily find the way
Bath eau il trouve plus aisément chemin
 to the 2 wine-cellar than that ^b which leads to the
de vin cave celui conduire
 library | he determined to write a 1 farewell letter
bibliothèque, f. se déterminer à adieu lettre, f.*
 to Sophia | you will find an old 2 coffee-mill in
Sophie trouver vieux café moulin sur
 one of the garret windows.
grénier fenêtre.

R U L E III.

1. Substantives preceded by an adverb or any other word denoting quantity, must be preceded in French by the preposition *de* ; as, *much money*, beaucoup d'argent ; *plenty of victuals*, abondance de vivres ; *bien*, much, governs the article besides the preposition ; as, *bien de l'argent* ; and *assez*, enough, comes before the substantive ; as, *money enough*, assez d'argent.

2. The adverb *jamais*, in the sense of never, likewise governs *de* when the substantive following its verb is in the accusative, except that substantive was attended either by an article, a noun of number, or a pronoun possessive ; as, *he never has books*, il n'a jamais de livres ; *he never has his books*, il n'a jamais ses livres.

3. The preposition *de* coming after *pas* or *point*, is sometimes contracted with the article before the substantive, when the negative only falls upon the verb without being connected with the noun ; as in this sentence, *do not divide inseparable words*, ne coupez point des mots inséparables.

^a p. 120. sect. I.^b p. 69. rule 5.

4. The preposition *de*, is likewise put before substantives denoting increase or decrease; or before nouns of number, before which those substantives are understood; as, *he has grown two inches, and his sister one, il a cru de deux pouces, & sa sœur d'un.*

E X E R C I S E.

From ^a Aragon Charles proceeded to ^a Catalonia,
*Arragon Charles se rendre * Catalogne*
 where he wasted as much ⁱ time, encountered more
*où perdre * autant tems avoir * à combattre*
ⁱ difficulties, and gained less ⁱ money | she loved her
*difficulté gagner * argent aimer **
 brother ^b though she despised his ^c parts, or rather his
frere mépriser esprit plutôt
 little ⁱ knowledge of the world | she agreed to see
*connoissance monde, m. consentir * à voir*
 Blifil ^b though she had scarce ⁱ strength enough to
Blifil à peine force pour
 utter her assent | some people might ^d not
dire qu'elle le vouloit bien quelque gens pourroient
 have ⁱ charity enough to conclude ^e we were in our
charité pour conclure être dans son
 sober ^c senses | so many ⁱ years have not washed
bon sens tant année
 away the shame of this act | this art requires
effacer honte, f. action art demander
 as much ⁱ coolness as the most austere school of
autant sang froid austere école, f.
^f philosophy | he has now a dozen ⁱ horses and
philosophie à présent douzaine cheval

^a See p. 136, sect. 1.

^b p. 128.

^c This word must be singular. ^f

^d See p. 62, sect. 3.

^e See p. 126, sect. 3:

p. 141, sect. 2.

a servants at Gloucester | he expressed so much
*domestique Gloucester témoigner * tant*
 I alacrity that Jones was perfectly satisfied with his
*joie Jones * parfaitement convaincu de*
 veracity | he quoted an old proverb and testified
*bonne foi citer * vieux proverbe, m. témoigner*
 much I dissatisfaction | b though you may have
mécontentement
 I cruelty enough c not to satisfy a d lady's longing,
cruauté pour satisfaire femme passion
 I you have too much I generosity c not to be tender
générosité pour ménager
 of her honour | I shall not trust you with 3 secrets
honneur confier secret
 of that importance | the longest day in summer is
importance long jour d'été
 about thirteen 4 hours, and the shortest in winter
environ heure court en hiver
 about 4 eleven | b though you are very rich, you
onze riche
 2 never will have friends, e unless you mend your
ami reformer
 temper.
humeur.

Of ADJECTIVES.

R U L E I.

1. When an adjective is joined to a substantive alone, it must, as we have said before, agree with that substantive; as, *a virtuous man*, un homme vertueux; *a virtuous woman*, une femme vertueuse.

^a See p. 151, sect. 2.

^b p. 128.

^c p. 62, sect. 3.

^d See p. 153, sect. 2.

^e p. 129, sect. 2.

Observe, that in the adjective feminine *grande*, the *e* is often suppressed, and an apostrophe put instead of it before some words beginning with a consonant; as, *j'ai grand' faim*, *grand' soif*, I am very hungry, very thirsty; *grand' peur*, a terrible fright; *grand' chose*, a great matter; *grand' mere*, grand-mother; *grand' chambre*, high court.

Nu, naked, may not be declined in these sentences; *nu-pieds*, bare-footed; *nu-jambes*, bare-legged; *nu tête*, bare-headed; *feu*, late, may come before an article or pronoun possessive, and then it is not declined; as, *feu la reine*, the late Queen; *feu notre reine*, our late Queen; otherwise say, *la feue reine*, *notre feue reine*.

2. When the adjective relates to several substantives of different genders and numbers, it must be plural, and of the masculine gender; as, *the husband and wife are insolent*, *le mari & la femme sont insolens*.

3. If the adjective relates to several substantives of the same gender, it must be plural, and agree in gender with them; as, *the mother and daughter are polite*, *la mere & la fille sont polies*.

4. When several substantives have but one adjective in common, if it is one of those which in French always come first, it must be repeated before each substantive, and agree in gender with it; as, *great events and revolutions followed the death of Cesar*, *de grands événemens & de grandes révolutions suivirent la mort de Cesar*. But if it comes after the substantives, and they express the names of inanimate things, then it generally agrees with the last only; as, *he fought with astonishing courage and intrepidity*, *il se battit avec un courage & une intrépidité étonnante*.

Contrary to this rule, we say, *pains, conduit, and fortune joined together*, *le travail, la conduite & la for-*

tune joints ensemble ; because then the participle, denoting the union of all the substantives must be made plural.

E X E R C I S E.

He had a 1 profound judgment, an 1 unwearied
** profond jugement infatigable*
 industry, and an 1 extensive knowledge of the views
industrie étendu connoissance vue
 and a interests of 1 foreign courts | when a man
intérêt étranger cour lorsque
 tells his own story, the motives,^a circumstances
raconte lui-même son histoire motif circonstance
 and a consequences are very 2 different | the suspicions
conséquence bien différent soupçon
 and a fears of Mr. Monckton appeared no^b longer
*crainte, f. paroître * plus*
 2 over-strained | the purity of her intentions and the
extravagant pureté intention
 rectitude of her principles were 3 known | the aunt
droiture principe, m. connu tante*
 and the niece are as 3 thoughtless and as 3 negligent
nièce étourdi negligent
 as the father and a son are 3 prudent and 3 attentive |
prudent attentif
 they^c now exclaimed with less^d vehemence against
** alors déclamer * moins violence contre*
 the exactions of the 1 foreign ministers than against
exaction étranger ministre
 the 4 immense wealth and power of the nobles | at
immense richesses pouvoir

^a See p. 150, sect. 1.

^b p. 120, sect. 5.

^c See p. 120, sect. 1.

^d p. 156, sect. 1.

Rome Adrian's conduct was considered as a proof
*Rome Adrien conduite, f. * regardé comme preuve, f.*
 of the most 4 childish simplicity and imprudence.

puéril simplicité imprudence.

R U L E II.

Those substantives have been mentioned, page 18, which almost always come before their substantives; the following ones are generally placed after.

1. Such as express physical or elementary qualities; *cold, froid; hot, chaud.*

2. Those which express the names of nations; as, *French, François; English, Anglois;* but when they are joined to names of commodities, they are changed into a substantive with the preposition *of*; as, *French wines, les vins de France.*

When they are joined to names of persons, they are subject to irregularities, which practice alone can teach; thus use will have you say, *a French officer, un officier François; the French ambassador, l'ambassadeur de France.*

3. Adjectives of figure, taste, colour, hearing and touching: as, *round, rond; bitter, amer; black, noir; sonorous, sonore; tough, dur.* Yet these adjectives *blanc, rouge, vert,* are placed before in these expressions, *les blancs manteaux,* an order of friars; *du blanc manger,* a sort of dainty dish; *un blanc bec,* a raw, unexperienced youth; *un rouge bord,* a brimmer; *une rouge trogne,* a red face; *un rouge gorge,* a robin-red-breast; also, *une verte jeunesse,* a brisk youth; *une verte vieillesse,* a vigorous old age; *un vert galant,* a brisk spark.

4. Verbal adjectives; *entertaining, amusant; ruined, ruiné.*

5. Those which in French end in *esque*; as *romanesque, romantick;* in *il* or *ile,* as *puéril, childish;*

in *ule*, as *credula*, credulous; in *ique*, as *soporifique*, soporiferous.

6. Those which express moral qualities, either good or bad, are for the most part indifferently placed before or after the substantive; such as, *amiable*, *charitable*, *aimable*, *charitable*; *an amiable man*, *un homme aimable*, or, *un aimable homme*.

E X E R C I S E.

These people live content under a cold
peuple, m. vivre content sous
 climate, and know neither the conveniencies nor
climat connoître commodité
 the luxuries of life | Mr. Venetiani's aerostatic
délicatesse vie Venetiani aerostatique
 globe sustains itself in the air, descends or remounts
globe, m. se soutenir dans air descendre remonter
 at pleasure | the longest day in the northern parts
à volonté long jour septentrional partie
 is about fourteen hours, and the shortest about
environ quatorze heure court
 ten | the Turkish armies are ready to pour in upon
dix Turc armée prêt à fondre sur
 Germany with a violence unknown in the former
Allemagne violence inconnu premier
 ages | how often have I told you that an English
âge combien de fois vous ai-je dit Anglois
 woman is not to be treated like a slave? |
femme ne veut pas traité en slave
 imagination can scarce conceive the variety of
imagination pouvoir à peine concevoir variété

^a See p. 126, sect. 6.

^c p. 153, sect. 1.

^e p. 157, sect. 4.

^g p. 147, sect. 2.

^b See p. 132, rule 1.

^d p. 147, sect. 1.

^f p. 134, sect. 1.

a 2 Chinese landscape | the town is situated about
Chinois paysage ville situé vers
 the middle of the northern coast | the roof is
milieu septentrional côte f. toit
 supported within by 3 octangular pillars | two
soutenu en dedans par octogone pilier deux -
 basins of 3 yellow marble are held out by two angels |
bassin jaune marbre, m. soutenu par deux ange
 that country produces a fruits of a 3 bitter taste | he
pays produire fruit amer goût
 had not strength enough to resist the charms of an
 * *force assez pour résister à charme, m.*
 3 harmonious voice | his 4 preceding behaviour was
*harmonieux voix précédent conduite, f. **
 not a 4 sufficient excuse | they were interrupted by
*suffisant excuse, f. * interrompu*
 the arrival of a well 4 dressed man | in 5 ecclesiastical
arrivée habillé homme dans ecclesiastique
 c matters | that city is under the jurisdiction of the
affaire, f. ville juridiction
 bishop | this 5 romantick situation helped to nourish
évêque romanesque situation servir à nourrir*
 his 5 melancholy thoughts | in the progress of his
mélancolique pensée cours
 travels he has learned 5 useful a things | I admire
voyage apprendre utile chose, f. admirer
 very much the writings of those 6 learned ladies | he
beaucoup ouvrage savant dame
 had studied the principles of c eloquence in those
étudier principe, m. eloquence dans
 6 admirable speeches which Demosthenes and Cicero
admirable harangue, f. que Demosthene Ciceron
 have left us.
nous ont laissées.

a See p. 140, sect. I.

b See p. 156, sect. I.

c p. 132, rule I.

REMARKS upon ADJECTIVES.

Some adjectives coming after a Substantive in a proper sense, must precede it when they are taken figuratively; as,

Proper Sense.	Figurative Sense.
Action juste, <i>a just action.</i>	Juste prix, <i>a reasonable price</i>
Homme juste, <i>a just man.</i>	Juste colere, <i>a reasonable an-</i>
Action basse, <i>a low action.</i>	Bas prix, <i>a low price</i> [ger
Plancher bas, <i>a low floor.</i>	Bas Languedoc, <i>low Lan-</i> <i>guedoc</i>
Fruit mûr, <i>a ripe fruit</i>	Mûre délibération, <i>a ma-</i> <i>ture deliberation</i>
Enfant maigre, <i>a lean child.</i>	Maigre chere, <i>bad cheer</i>
Homme vif, <i>a quick man.</i>	Vive douleur, <i>a sharp pain</i>
We likewise say, <i>du vif argent</i> , quick-silver.	

Others have a different meaning, as they are placed before or after the substantive; as,

Une chose certaine, <i>a cer-</i> <i>tainty</i>	Une certaine chose, <i>some-</i> <i>thing</i>
Une voix commune, <i>an</i> <i>ordinary voice</i>	D'une commune voix, <i>una-</i> <i>nimously</i>
Une eau morte, <i>standing water</i>	La morte eau, <i>dead water</i>
L'esprit Saint, <i>the Spirit of</i> <i>God</i>	Le St. Esprit, <i>the Holy</i> <i>Ghost</i>
Une femme sage, <i>a prudent</i> <i>woman</i>	Une sage femme, <i>a mid-</i> <i>wife</i>
Une femme grosse, <i>a preg-</i> <i>nant woman</i>	Une grosse femme, <i>a corpu-</i> <i>lent woman</i>
Un homme galant, <i>a cour-</i> <i>tier, or a beau</i>	Un galant homme, <i>a gal-</i> <i>lant man</i>
Un homme gentil, <i>a pretty</i> <i>man</i>	Un gentil-homme, <i>a noble-</i> <i>man</i>
Un homme pauvre, <i>a man</i> <i>who is not rich.</i>	Un pauvre homme, <i>a poor</i> <i>man</i>
Un homme plaisant, <i>a face-</i> <i>tious man</i>	Un plaisant homme, <i>a</i> <i>comical fellow</i>

Un

Un homme honnête, <i>a</i>	Un honnête homme, <i>an</i>
<i>civil man</i>	<i>honest man</i>
Un vilain homme, <i>an</i>	Un homme vilain, <i>a</i>
<i>ugly man</i>	<i>miser</i>
Un animal furieux, <i>a</i>	Un furieux animal, <i>a</i>
<i>fierce animal</i>	<i>monstrous animal</i>
Une corde fausse, <i>a</i>	Une fausse corde, <i>a</i>
<i>false string</i>	<i>string that is not in tune</i>
L'air grand, <i>a</i>	Le grand air, <i>the</i>
<i>noble countenance</i>	<i>manners of the great</i>
Un homme grand, <i>a</i>	Un grand homme, <i>a</i>
<i>tall man</i>	<i>great man</i>

Yet if after *grand homme*, some bodily qualities are added ; as, *c'est un grand homme blond*, he is a tall fair man ; *grand homme* will still signify a tall man. The adjective *cher*, denoting price, always comes after its substantive, and before, when it denotes affection ; as, *mon cher ami*, dear friend ; *un repas cher*, a dear repast.

The adjective *new* is expressed in French by *neuf* and *nouveau* ; the former comes after, and the latter indifferently before and after the substantive ; but this observation is to be made ; *neuf* signifies that a thing is newly made and is only joined to substantives which are the object of mechanical arts ; as, *une robe neuve*, a new gown ; but if I said, *elle a toujours de nouvelles robes* ; in that case, *nouvelles* means different, and not newly made.

R U L E III.

1. When two or more adjectives are joined to a substantive, the safest way is to place them after it ; for, though sometimes two adjectives may with greater elegance come before their substantive, yet it is but seldom the scholar will be wrong in putting them after ;
as,

as, *a just and bountiful God*, un Dieu juste & bien-faisant.

2. When two adjectives come before their substantive, the latter must generally be preceded by the conjunction & ; as, *I will torment you no more my sweet young friend*, je ne vous tourmenterai plus ma chère & jeune amie.

We say indeed, *une bonne petite fille*, a good little girl ; *ma pauvre malheureuse mère*, my poor unfortunate mother. But except these instances, and two or three perhaps of the same kind, the conjunction & must be used.

3. If one of the adjectives belongs to those mentioned page 161, rule 11, and the other may be placed before; they follow each their natural order in French, and if they are joined in English by the conjunction *and*, that conjunction is suppressed in French ; as, *you know that short and tawny girl*, vous connoissez cette petite fille bazannée ; *she had an old red gown*, elle avoit une vieille robe rouge.

EXERCISE.

He flattered himself that under a young and liberal
*se flatter * sous jeune liberal*
 1 Prince, he might attain to power and honours
Prince il parviendrait au pouvoir & aux honneurs
 which he could ^a never hope for in the service of
*que pouvoir * esperer à service, m.*
 an old and frugal 1 master | this thoughtless and
vieux frugal maître indiscret
 accidental 1 folly of Lady Honoria's was truly
fortuit saillie Lady Honoria mortifia

^a See p. 120, sect. 1 and 5.

mortifying

mortifying to Cecilia | what strange 2 unfathomable
vraiment Cecile étrange impénétrable
 cause could render necessary a conduct so
*cause pouvoir * rendre nécessaire conduite, f.*
 mysterious | Delville, with an emotion he seemed
mystérieux Deville dans mouvement dont il parut
 to find wholly irrepressible, ^a passionately
ne pas être entièrement le maître avec passion
 exclaimed, sweet 2 lovely burthen | I suppose
*s'écrier * doux charmant fardeau supposer*
^b he'll shut himself up in one of those little 3 round
s'enfermer dans rond
 towers | the ^c green lizards ^d which are very nimble,
tour vert lézard agile
 have a fine 3 glossy skin, and are quite
luisant peau ne sont point
 harmless | the famous 3 black stone is in a
du tout dangereux fameux noir pierre, f.
 corner next to the door of the temple | the outside is
coin près de temple dehors
 covered with rich 3 black damask, adorned with an
couvert d'un riche noir damas orné de
 embroidered band of gold | there are likewise ^e mines
brodé, bande, f. or aussi mine, f.
 of silver and ^f copper ^d which contain a very beautiful
argent cuivre renfermer bel
 3 red and white alabaster | the conciliators of St.
rouge blanc albâtre conciliateur St.
 Mark ^a sometimes wear long 3 red or purple
Marc quelquefois porter long rouge pourpre
^e robes.
robe, f.

^a See p. 120, sect. 1.

^b p. 126, sect. 3.

^c p. 161, sect. 3.

^d See p. 69, rule 5:

^e p. 140, sect. 1.

^f p. 151, sect. 2.

R U L E IV.

1. When an adjective of dimension, such as *high*, *thick*, is preceded by a noun of measure; the adjective in French comes before the noun of measure, and governs the preposition *de*: thus this sentence, *a book three inches thick*, is literally in French, *a book thick of three inches*; but it is better to change the adjective into its substantive, with the preposition *de* before it, which must also be put before the noun of number expressing the quantity of measure; literally, *a book of three inches of thickness*, *un livre de trois pouces d'épaisseur*.

It is not uncommon to see the adjective of dimension used as a substantive, and we often say, *un livre de trois pouces d'épais*.

2. If the substantive of dimension is used in English, and attended by the preposition *in*, that preposition is expressed by *de*, which must still be put before every quantity of measure; as, *a room twenty feet in length*, *une chambre de vingt piés de longueur*.

3. If the thing measured is followed by the verb *to be*, we generally use the corresponding tense in the verb *avoir*. Thus instead of saying, *that book is three inches thick*, we say, *that book has three inches of thickness*, *ce livre a trois pouces d'épaisseur*.

4. If it has two different dimensions, instead of joining them in French by the conjunction *&*, you may use the preposition *sur*; but in this case the substantive and not the adjective of dimension must be used; as, *that table is two feet long and three inches thick*, *cette table a deux piés de longueur sur six pouces d'épaisseur*.

E X E R C I S E

E X E R C I S E.

Mr. ^a Montgolfier's aerostatic machine is made of
Montgolfier aerostatique machine, f. fait
 cloth; it has the form of a tent, sixty feet
toile, f. elle forme, f. pavillon soixante pié
 1 high, 4 and forty six in 2 diameter | the two
haut quarante six de diametre deux
 baskets of osier, placed on each side of the
panier osier placé de chaque côté
 machine 3 are five feet long, three broad, and four
cinq long trois large quatre
 6 feet hollow | these pillars form a portico sixty feet
capacité pilier former portique
 1 broad 4 and twenty four deep | about the middle
large vingt quatre profond vers milieu
 of the city there is a castle of ^b an ^c oval form,
ville est château oval forme, f.
 with strong ^d walls fourteen inches 1 thick, and
avec fort muraille quatorze ponce, m.
 flanked with ^c square towers | there is at St. Ferreol,
flanqué de quarré tour à St. Ferreol,
 a large reservoir, twelve hundred fathoms in 2 length,
grand réservoir douze cents toise, f.
 five hundred in breadth and twenty 1 deep | this
cinq cents vingt profond
 building leads to ^{ba} portico of ^b a hundred and
bâtiment conduire portique, m.
 fifty paces in 2 length | the temple is an ^c oblong
cinquante pas temple, m. oblong
 square of ^{ban} hundred ^b and ninety feet in 2 length
quarré cent quatre-vingt-dix
 on the outside, and ^{ban} 2 hundred ^b and twenty within
en dehors cent vingt en dedans

^a See p. 153. sect. I^c See p. 161. Sect 3.^b This word is not expressed^d p. 142. sect. I.

] the gallery ^{gallerie} 3 is ten feet four inches in ^{dix} 2 depth, and ^{pouce, m. profondeur} twelve feet five inches in 2 breadth | the tomb ^{douze} made of ^{cinq} a white marble, and covered with ^{largeur} a crimson ^{ton beau} velvet, ^{construit} 3 is three feet in height, nine in ^{blanc marbre, m. couvert de cramoisi} 2 length, ^{velours} and four in ^{trois} 2 breadth | this ^{neuf} a square structure 3 is ^{quatre} twenty four cubits ^{quarré bâtiment} 1 long, 4 and twenty three broad. ^{coudée}

R U L E V.

1. When the comparative *que*, than, coming after *plus*, more ; *moins*, less ; *meilleur*, better ; *pire*, worse ; *autre*, another ; *autrement*, otherwise ; *plutôt*, rather, is followed by a verb ; that verb must be preceded by *de*, if it is in the infinitive mood ; as, *il est plus agréable de gagner que de perdre*, it is more agreeable to win than to lose.

2. If the verb is in any other mood, and not preceded by a conjunction, the negative *ne* must be put before it ; as, *les femmes parlent mieux qu'elles n'écrivent*, women speak better than they write.

3. French verbs that are attended by the comparatives *mieux* and *autant*, likewise govern *de* before the second infinitive ; as, *il aime mieux mourir de faim que de travailler*, he had rather starve than work.

4. Observe, that it is more elegant to put *plutôt* immediately before *que* ; as, *he had resolved rather to lose his place than consent to it*, *il avoit résolu de perdre sa place plutôt que d'y consentir*.

^a See p. 161 sect. 3

E X E R C I S E.

The bargain being struck, Sophia set forward in
marché *conclu* Sophie *se mettre* * à la
pursuit of Mr. Jones, contrary to the remonstrances
poursuite *Jones* *malgré* *remontrance*
of Mrs. Honour, ^a who had much more ^b desire
Mde. Honour * *envie*
to see London ¹ than to see Mr. Jones | he insisted
de voir Londres *faire* * *valoir*
on the necessity of ^c fighting the imperialists ¹ rather
nécessité *attaquer* *impériaux*
than relinquish the undertaking | and ¹ rather than
abandonner *entreprise*
to expose himself to the slightest imputation, he
s'exposer *moindre* *reproche*, m.
chose to forego all the advantages ^a that were the
aimer * *mieux sacrifier* *avantage* *
certain consequences of a retreat | they had resolved
certain *conséquence* *retraite*, f. *résoudre*
to defend themselves to the best of their power,
de se défendre *de toutes* *leurs forces*
with a firm purpose ⁴ rather to perish ¹ than submit
Et ils étoient décidés *à périr* *se soumettre*
to a foreign dominion | the barber pressed very
à étranger domination *barbier demander* *
eagerly to be his bottle, but Jones said, ^d he
instamment à faire venir sa bouteille *dire* *
had already drunk more ² than he ought | I betook
déjà boire *devoir* * *se*
myself again to ^e study with a more inordinate
remettre * *a étude*, f. *avec* *fort*

^a See p. 69. rule 5.

^b p. 156. sect. 1.

^c p. 115. sect. 4.

^d See p. 126. sect. 3.

^e p. 132. rule 1.

] the gallery ^{gallerie} 3 is ten feet four inches in ^{dix} 2 depth, and
 twelve feet five inches in ^{pouce, m. profondeur} 2 breadth | the tomb
^{douze} made of a white marble, and covered with a crimson
^{cinq} ^{largeur} ^{tombeau}
^{construit} ^{blanc marbre, m.} ^{couvert de} ^{cramoisi}
 velvet, 3 is three feet in height, nine in ^{neuf} 2 length,
^{velours} ^{trois} and four in ^{quatre} 2 breadth | this a square structure 3 is
^{quarré bâtiment}
 twenty four cubits ^{coudée} 1 long, 4 and twenty three broad.

R U L E V.

1. When the comparative *que*, than, coming after *plus*, more ; *moins*, less ; *meilleur*, better ; *pire*, worse ; *autre*, another ; *autrement*, otherwise ; *plutôt*, rather, is followed by a verb ; that verb must be preceded by *de*, if it is in the infinitive mood ; as, *il est plus agréable de gagner que de perdre*, it is more agreeable to win than to lose.

2. If the verb is in any other mood, and not preceded by a conjunction, the negative *ne* must be put before it ; as, *les femmes parlent mieux qu'elles n'écrivent*, women speak better than they write.

3. French verbs that are attended by the comparatives *mieux* and *autant*, likewise govern *de* before the second infinitive ; as, *il aime mieux mourir de faim que de travailler*, he had rather starve than work.

4. Observe, that it is more elegant to put *plutôt* immediately before *que* ; as, *he had resolved rather to lose his place than consent to it*, *il avoit résolu de perdre sa place plutôt que d'y consentir*.

^a See p. 161 sect. 3.

E X E R C I S E.

The bargain being struck, Sophia set forward in
marché *conclu* Sophie se mettre * à la
pursuit of Mr. Jones, contrary to the remonstrances
poursuite *Jones* *malgré* *remontrance*
of Mrs. Honour, ^a who had much more ^b desire
Mde. Honour * *envie*
to see London ¹ than to see Mr. Jones | he insisted
de voir Londres *faire* * *valoir*
on the necessity of ^c fighting the imperialists ¹ rather
nécessité *attaquer* *impériaux*
than relinquish the undertaking | and ¹ rather than
abandonner *entreprise*
to expose himself to the slightest imputation, he
s'exposer *moindre* *reproche*, m.
chose to forego all the advantages ^a that were the
aimer * *mieux* *sacrifier* *avantage* *
certain consequences of a retreat | they had resolved
certain *conséquence* *retraite*, f. *résoudre* *
to defend themselves to the best of their power,
de se défendre *de toutes* *leurs* *forces*
with a firm purpose ⁴ rather to perish ¹ than submit
Et ils étoient décidés *à périr* *se soumettre*
to a foreign dominion | the barber pressed very
à étranger domination *barbier demander* *
eagerly to be his bottle, but Jones said, ^d he
instamment à faire venir sa bouteille *dire* *
had already drunk more ² than he ought | I betook
déjà *bouteille* *devoir* * *se*
myself again to ^e study with a more inordinate
remettre * *a* *étude*, f. *avec* *fort*

^a See p. 69. rule 5.^d See p. 126. sect. 3.^b p. 156. sect. 1.^e p. 132. rule 1.^c p. 115. sect. 4.

application ^a 2 than I had done formerly | ^a philosophy
application *faire auparavant* *philosophie*
 and ^a religion taught him to bear this
religion *lui apprenoit à souffrir* *ce*
 disappointment rather better ² than passionate
contraires avec plus de patience *passionné*
^a lovers bear these kinds of evils | she was perhaps
supporter *sorte, f. mal* *peut-être*
 more ^b pleased with the violent raptures of his
flatté de la violence des transports
 love ² than she was ^b offended with the rest |
choqué de *reste, f.*
^a men have never been happier ² than when the
heureux *lorsque*
 greatest part of the then ^c known world was under
partie *alors* *connu* *monde, m.* *sous*
 the dominion of a single master.
domination *seul*

R U L E VI.

1. When a comparison is made between two substantives, with the comparatives, *more*, *less*, *so much*, *as much*, the preposition *de* must be put in French before both substantives; that which comes after these comparatives, and that which follows *as* or *than*; as, *he has not so much learning as piety*, *il n'a pas tant de savoir que de piété*.

It may be here observed, that the plurals *so many*, *as many*, follow the same rules as their singulars *so much*, *as much*.

^a See p. 132. rule 1.

^c See p. 161. sect. 4.

^b p. 82.

E X E R C I S E.

He did not perform this operation with less
faire * *opération*
 dexterity than quickness | the poor lady started
adresse *promptitude, &c.* *dame* *se*
 from her sleep with as much amazement as
reveiller * *en sursaut avec* *étonnement*
 terror | he flew to the assistance of the little gentleman
terreur *voler* * *secours* *monsieur*
 who had not so much strength as spirit |
autant *force* *courage*
 those acquisitions have given your brother more
acquisition
 pride than reputation | the French General
orgueil *reputation* *Général*
 followed this plan with as much prudence as
suivre * *plan* *prudence*
 success | these expeditions were attended with greater
expédition *faire* * *plus*
 honour than profit.
honneur *profit*

R U L E VII.

1. It has been said before, that *so much* and *as much* are expressed by *tant* and *autant*; but before a participle used adjectively, they may also be expressed the first by *si*, and the second by *aussi*; as, *he is not so much esteemed as your brother*, *il n'est pas si, or, tant estimé que votre frere*; *he is as much esteemed*, *il est aussi, or, autant estimé*.

^a See p. 154. sec. 4.

^b See p. 161. sect. 3.

2. So, besides its natural signification of *si*, may also be expressed by *aussi*, when it denotes comparison; as, *she is not so amiable as her sister*, elle n'est pas si, or, aussi aimable que sa sœur.

3. When *so* coming before an adjective is followed by an infinitive, *que de* is to be put before that infinitive in French; as, *he was so generous as to give*, il fut si généreux que de donner; you may likewise say, *il fut assez généreux pour donner*. Sometimes the adjective is changed into its substantive, and the verb *to have*, avoir, is used instead of the verb *to be*, être; as, *he had the generosity to give*, il eut la générosité de donner.

4. So before an adverb, and *so much* before a participle, followed by an infinitive, cause that infinitive to be put in the indicative in French, with the conjunction *que*; as, *he behaved so artfully as to impose upon your father himself*, il se conduisit avec tant d'art qu'il trompa votre père lui-même.

E X E R C I S E.

Jones was 1 as much pleased with Partridge as
Jones * *satisfait de Partridge*
 Partridge could be with him | he was 1 so much
pouvoit l'être de lui *
 delighted with that permission, that he came the
enchanté de permission * *le*
 next day | you are not 2 so rich as he, but you
lendemain *riche lui*
 are 1 as much esteemed | a though she has read
livre
 more b books than her brother, yet she is not
livre, m. *cependant*

a See p. 128.

b See p. 156, sect. 1

2 so learned as he, because it is not enough to read
savant lui parce que il suffire de
much | she chid a me for my vehemence, but she
*gronder * me de vivacité*
was 3 so good as to tell me, that she would sound
** sonder*
my Uncle Harlowe | he thought that ^b ministers
*Harlowe penser * ministre*
could not be 3 so mad as to attempt a dissolution
*pouvoir * tenter dissolution*
while affairs were so situated | can you
dans la position des affaires seriez vous
indeed be 3 so barbarous as to leave our house? |
en effet cruel abandonner maison
while Bonnivet was ^c exerting himself with much
*tandis que Bonnivet * se conduire*
dvalour, he was wounded 4 so dangerously as to
*valeur * blessé dangereusement*
be obliged to quit the field of battle | in some
** obligé de quitter champ de bataille dans certain*
places of ^e Germany, ^f people of the lowest class
partie Allemagne peuple dernier classe, f.
were 4 so entirely in the power of their masters,
** tellement à la discrétion maître*
as to be subject to ^g personal and domestic
** sujet personnelle domestique*
^h slavery | they were not 3 so weak as to imagine
** esclavage faible s'imaginer*
they could support themselves in office without
*pouvoir * conserver leurs charges*

^a This pron. comes before
the verb.

^b See p. 132, rule 1.

^c p. 115, sect. 1.

^d p. 156, sect. 1.

^e See p. 134, sect. 1.

^f This word must be sing.

^g See p. 165, sect. 1.

^h p. 148, sect. 1.

ⁱ p. 126, sect. 3.

the approbation of the House of Commons | art
agrément *Chambre, f. des Communes*
 thou really ³ so foolish to mind what an enraged
réellement *prendre garde à ce que dit.*
 woman says?
une femme outrée de co'e-e?

R U L E VIII.

1. The preposition *by*, even before the adverbs *much*, *far*, *little*, serving to shew by how much a thing is more or less than another, is expressed by *de*; as, *he is taller than you by a whole head*, *il est plus grand que vous de toute la tête.*

But the adverbs *beaucoup*, *peu*, are only preceded by *de* when they come after the adjectives; as, *much taller*, *beaucoup plus grand*, or, *plus grand de beaucoup.*

2. The conjunction *than*, serving to join a certain quantity to the adverbs *more* or *less*, is also expressed by *de*; as, *have you more than a guinea?* *avez-vous plus d'une guinée?*

3. The preposition *above*, in the sense of, *more than*, is also expressed by *plus de*; as, *he is not above two years old*, *il n'a pas plus de deux ans.*

E X E R C I S E.

The army which Francis had ^a assembled was
armée que François *assemblé **
 inferior in number to these united bodies | in
inférieur en nombre *réuni corps*

^a This particle is declined ^b See p. 161, sect. 4.

less 2 than a month the captain and a lady were
 man and wife | the English did ^b not attain to that
 degree of political knowledge until more 2 than
 a century afterwards | the violence of her passions
 had more 2 than once exposed the kingdom to the
 greatest danger | she had read much English ^c divinity,
 and puzzled more 2 than one of the neighbouring
 curates | I had spent 3 above four years in the most
 delightful manner to myself | she left Mrs.
 Whitefield's about eleven at night, and striking
 directly ^d into the ^e Worcester road, she arrived
 within less 2 than four hours | my husband took
 a second journey to London, where he did not
 continue longer 2 than three months.

^a See p. 150. sect. 1.

^b This negation is expressed by ne only.

^c See p. 156, sect. 1.

^d This word is not expressed.

^e See p. 155. sect. 1.

R U L E IX.

1. *The more, the less*, coming before two different members of a sentence, are expressed, *the more* by *plus*, *the less* by *moins*; as, *the more you have, the more you want to have*, plus vous avez, plus vous voulez avoir.

2. When the article definite *the* comes before an adjective or adverb, compared either with the syllable *er*, or the adverbs *more* and *less*; the substantive or pronoun to which that adjective relates, must come after *plus* or *moins*, and the adjective or adverb after the verb; as, *the longer the day is, the shorter the night is*, plus le jour est long, plus la nuit est courte.

3. It is perhaps more elegant in English in such comparative sentences to put the verb before its nominative; as, *the longer the day is, the shorter is the night*; nay, the verb *is* might be suppressed; as, *the longer the day, the shorter the night*; but in French it must be expressed and come after its nominative; as, *plus le jour est long, plus la nuit est courte*.

4. If these adverbs *the more, the less*, came before a substantive governed by the following verb, that substantive must come after the verb, and be preceded by the preposition *de*; as, *the more money you have, the more covetous you are*, plus vous avez d'argent, plus vous êtes avare.

E X E R C I S E.

I The more he succeeded with her in private,
 réussir * *elle en particulier*
 I the more reserve I 3 was he in public | I the more they
 réservé * *en public* *ils*

heard

heard the bell ring, 1 the more they were
entendoient sonner la cloche *
 a frightened; and, as it were, a nailed in their places |
effrayé comme cloué à place
 but 1 the more they increased in b number, 2 the
*mais augmenter * en nombre, m.*
 more sensible they felt the distress arising
*sensiblement éprouver * l'embarras que cause*
 from want of money | 2 the more extraordinary the
le défaut d'argent extraordinaire
 invention was, 2 the greater was the surprise of the
*invention * surprise*
 credulous reader | I have observed that 2 the more
crédule lecteur observer
 merry and good humoured my husband is b in
gai de bonne humeur en
 company, 2 the more sullen and morose he is
compagnie chagrin hargneux
 at our next private meeting | the credit of
dans notre premier tête-à-tête crédit
 c pri- s, during the infancy of c commerce, was not
*prince dans enfance commerce, m. **
 extensive; and as his ordinary revenues were
*étendu ordinaire revenu **
 exhausted, 1 the more his army increased b in
*épuisée son armée augmenter * en*
 number, 3 the more were his generals embarrassed
*nombre, m. * généraux embarrassé*
 and distressed | 4 the more civility she shewed, 1 the
*dans la détresse politesse montrer **
 more they doubted her sincerity | the 2 soberer
*se défier * de sincérité sage*

^a See p. 82.

^b See p. 147, sect. 2,

^c p. 132, rule 1.

a young man was, & the more pleasure he had in his
*jeune homme * plaisir * à la*
 destruction.
perdre.

R U L E X.

1. When the adverbs *the rather, the more, so much the more as, the less, so much the less as*, serve to connect two different parts of a sentence, they are expressed by *d'autant plus que, d'autant moins que*; as, *we are the more to be pitied as we are poor*, nous sommes d'autant plus à plaindre que nous sommes pauvres.

2. *Because*, being used instead of *as*, after *the more, so much the more, &c.* is also expressed by *que*.

3. These expressions *by how much the more, by so much the more*, are expressed in the same manner; as, *the more*, serving to join two different members of a sentence. See the preceding rule.

4. *The more, so much the more, the less, so much the less*, not being followed by *as* or *because*, are expressed by *plus*, or *d'autant plus*, but govern the relative *en*, before their verb.

E X E R C I S E.

She was [†] the less confounded as that lady had
 always [†] taken her side ^{interdit} against her father | I was ^{dame} the
 less ^{prendre parti contre} pleased with his behaviour to me, as he
 was ^{satisfait de conduite, f. envers moi} under great ^{avoir *} obligations to my family |
^{obligation} ^{famille}

^a See p. 142, sect. 1.

Thwackum was 1 the more confirmed in this
Thwackum * *confirmé dans*
 opinion as she had more ^a than once sily caused
opinion *adroitement exciter*
^b him to whip Tom Jones [I am 1 the more at
le à fouetter Tom Jones *à mon*
 ease in the ^c Knight's family, 2 because it consists
aise dans chevalier famille *elle est composée*
 of ^d sober and staid persons | this year the reformation
sage posé personne, f. *année réformation*
 lost its first protector, Frederic, elector of
*perdre * son protecteur Frederic électeur*
^e Saxony, but the blow was 1 the less sensibly felt,
Saxe * *sensible*
 as he was succeeded by his brother John | 3 by how
que son frere jean lui succéda
 much the better man you are yourself, 3 by so
bonnête homme *vous-même*
 much the more will you be inclined to believe ^b me [*porté à croire me*
 she rejoiced that Mr. Arnot had escaped, ^f yet she
*se réjouir * de ce que Mr. Arnot* *échapper encor que*
 was certain the storm would fall 4 the more heavily
certain orage tomber violemment
 upon herself.
sur sa tête.

R U L E X I.

1. The article definite must always be used before these adjectives *young, little, poor, old*, when they have none in English and are joined to a substantive singular; as, *young Belfield, le jeune Belfield*.

^a See p. 176. sect. 2.

^c p. 153. sect. 1.

^d p. 165. sect. 1.

^f p. 128.

^b This pronoun comes before the verb.

^e See p. 136. sect. 2.

E X E R C I S E.

Certainly, Sir, if ever a man deserved a
Certainement, monsieur, si jamais homme à mérite
 young lady, you deserve i young madam Western | young
jeune mademoiselle
 Delville concluded, a she was absolutely engaged
conclure tout-à-fait engagé
 to Mr. Belfield | i old Mr. Belfield said, a he hoped
avec vieux dire espérer
 a a little more b learning would give c him a little
un peu savoir lui
 more e sense | i poor Jones spent a very melancholy
bon sens pauvre passer triste
 night, d and e the more d so as he was without his
nuit privé de
 usual companion.
ordinaire compagnon.

R U L E XII.

1. When the superlative relative comes after its substantive, both must have the article; as, *the bravest officer*, *l'officier le plus brave*.

2. The substantive sometimes in English, comes before the superlative without an article; as, *he urged reasons most powerful*; sometimes, with the article indefinite a; as, *he has a daughter the most amiable*. In the first instance, it must be preceded in French by the article definite; and in the second it is generally better to use it; as, *il fit valoir les raisons les plus fortes*; *il a la fille la plus aimable*.

a See p. 126. sect. 3.

c This pronoun comes before the verb.

b See p. 156. sect. 1.

d This word is not expressed.

e See p. 180. sect. 1.

3. The preposition *in* coming after the superlative is expressed by *de* when the verb *to be*, with one of the relatives *who*, *that*, *which*, can be put before it; as, *the bravest officer in the army*, that is, *who is in the army*, *le plus brave officier de l'armée*.

E X E R C I S E.

She saw in their situation 2 danger the most
voir dans situation danger
 alarming | and in the behaviour of Mr. Harrel
alarmant conduite, f.

2 selfishness the most inexcusable | 2 an apprehension
égoïsme inexcusable crainte, f.

the most painful took possession of Cecilia; and,
vis s'emparer Cecile

absorbed in thought, she continued a for some
absorbée dans ses pensées demeurer quelque

moments silent and immoveable | this young lady who
instant muet immobile dame

was of 2 a character the most airy and unthinking,
** caractere, m. léger le plus étourdi*

ran on during her whole visit in a vein of fashionable
épuisa pendant le cours de sa visite tous les lieux communs

scandal | 1 the greatest philosopher
de la chronique scandaleuse philosophe

3 in b England says, that after dinner the mind
Angleterre que c'est après le diner que esprit

is generally the most ductile | the Archbishoprick
ordinairement souple archevêché

of Toledo is one of 1 the richest dignities 3 in the
Toledo dignité

church | women are the prettiest play-things 3 in
église joujou

a This preposition is not expressed. b See p. 134. sect. 1.

^a nature; but ^a gold, solid ^a gold, gives ^b them the
 nature or *seul* *leur*
 air, the mein, the shape, the grace and ^c beauty
air les manieres taille grace beauté
 of a goddess | ^d Arabia is one of the most extensive
déesse Arabie étendu
 peninsulas ³ in the known world; it ^e is four hundred
peninsule connu monde, f. elle
 leagues long, and as many broad | this man, from
lieue long large
 one of the lowest ranks ³ in ^a life, had risen to that
dernier rang société s'élever
 height of power and ^f dignity.
comble pouvoir dignité.

R U L E XIII.

1. *Le plus*, the most; *le moins*, the least; are not declined when they come before an adverb; as, *she bore her misfortunes most courageously*, *elle supportoit ses malheurs le plus courageusement.*

2. Neither must they be declined when they come before an adjective without, properly speaking, implying comparison; as, *we sometimes displease when we are the most willing to oblige*, *nous déplaçons quelquefois lors même que nous sommes le plus officieux.*

^a See p. 132. rule 1.

^c p. 150. sect. 1.

^d p. 134. sect. 1.

^f p. 151. sect. 2.

^b This pronoun comes before the verb.

^e Page 168. sect. 3.

E X E R C I S E.

The prince said, ^a he would punish those of his
prince dire ^b enemies ^c who had ^d behaved ^e the most insolently | *ceux*
ennemi ^f several ^g courted the honour to dine with him, ^h tho' ⁱ
se comporter ^j *insolamment*
plusieurs briguer ^k * *honneur de* ^l *lui*
his table was ^m the most wretchedly ⁿ provided | it
mesquieusement servi ^o *il*
^p then happens that the soul is ^q the most subject to
alors arriver ^r *ame, f.* ^s *sujet à*
the passions at a time when it has ^t the least
passion dans le tems que elle être
instigations from the body | the Governor himself
aiguillonné par les sens ^u *Gouverneur lui-même*
is obliged to walk round the town when his presence
obligé de faire le tour de la ville quand ^v *présence*
is ^w least expected.
attendu

R U L E XIV.

I. When two adjectives, which express opposite
qualities, are joined to one substantive, the articles and
prepositions must be repeated before them; as, *the*
handsome and ugly women that were in the park, *les belles*
& les laides femmes qui étoient au parc; *it is the custom*
of the most barbarous and civilized nations, *c'est la cou-*
tume des nations les plus barbares & des plus ci-
vilisées.

^a See p. 126. sect. 3.

^b p. 79. rule 5.

^c p. 120. sect. 1.

^d This participle is declined.

^e See p. 128.

2. If the adjectives do not express opposite qualities, and are in the positive, it is needless to repeat the article or preposition; as, *the fine and learned speech*, la belle & savante harangue.

3. If they are in the superlative, the article alone must be repeated when they come after the substantive; as, *I have dealt with the most whimsical and uncivil man in the world*, j'ai eu affaire à l'homme du monde le plus impoli & le plus capricieux.

4. But if they precede it, both the article and preposition must be repeated; as, *you have applied to the most civil and amiable woman that I know*, vous vous êtes adressé à la plus honnête & à la plus aimable femme que je connoisse.

E X E R C I S E.

The sweetness of his temper makes him beloved
douceur caractère, m. fait qu'il est aimé
 by ^a the old and young persons who know him |
de vieux jeune personne, f. qui le connoissent
¹ the ancient and new laws were equally forgot
*ancien nouveau loi * également oublié*
 or neglected | she expatiated with ^a warmth upon
*négligé s'étendre * avec chaleur sur*
² the rare and estimable qualities of the lady | ² the
rare estimable qualité dame
 vast and dangerous schemes which Francis the first
vaste dangereux projet que François premier
 was ^b forming against Charles, made it necessary for
** former contre Charles le forcèrent*
 him to regulate his conduct by ^c views more extensive
de régler conduite, f. sur vue étendu

^a See p. 147. sect. 1.

^c p. 140. sect. 1.

^b See p. 115. sect. 1.

| she said ^a she was now so accustomed to her society,
^{à présent accoutumée société}
 that she should require ² long and frequent visits
^{avoir besoin de long fréquent visites, f.}
 to soften the separation | you are certainly one ⁴ of
^{pour adoucir séparation certainement}
 the oddest and most comical fellows I ever met
^{étrange comique personnage que j'ai jamais}
 with | she is maltreated by a ^b father ³ the most gloomy
^{vous maltraité sombre}
 and positive, at the instigation of a ^b brother ³ the most
^{absolu instigation frère}
 arrogant and selfish | when you first came acquainted
^{arrogant égoïste lorsque faire & connoissance}
 with our family, you found me one of the happiest
^{famille vous me vîtes la plus heureuse}
 creatures ^c in the world, beloved by ⁴ the best and
^{créature monde, m. chéri de}
 most indulgent of parents | Lerio was one of ³ the
^{indulgent père Lériis *}
 strongest and most important cities of ^d Pontus ; but
^{fort important ville Pont}
 at present it is but a trifling place, situated on the
^{à présent c'est une place de peu d'importance situé sur}
^e sea coast, near the mouth of the river ^f Ther-
^{mer bord près de embouchure Ther-}
 modan.
^{modan.}

R U L E XV.

1. The comparative adverbs *si, aussi, plus, moins, très, fort, le plus, le moins, &c.* must be repeated be-

^a See p. 126. sect. 3.

^c p. 183. sect. 3.

^e p. 155. sect. 1.

^b See p. 182. sect. 2.

^d p. 134. sect. 1.

^f p. 138. sect. 1.

fore every adjective or adverb ; as, *he is less polite and obliging than his sister*, il est moins poli & moins obligeant que sa sœur ; *he writes more elegantly and correctly than the other*, il écrit plus élégamment & plus correctement que l'autre.

EXERCISE.

He had married a ^{épouser} very handsome and virtuous ^{beau} woman | a ^{conjoncture} juncture ^{critique} so delicate and critical would have demanded the sagacity and experience of one ^{exiger} of the most ^{sagacité} able prelates ^{expérience} in the ^{expert} sacred college | he was ^{prélat} as kind and gentle to this youth as he ^{sacré college, m.} was harsh, nay even barbarous to the other | this ^{doux complaisant envers jeune homme} knowledge is infinitely the better of the two, and ^{dur} ^{et même} ^{barbare} ^{l'autre} *connaissance est infiniment préférable aux deux autres* is much ^{infaisible} more ^{concluant} infallible and conclusive | he is ^{soumis} as ^{résigné} dependent and resigned to your will, as if he had ^{volonté} not a farthing but what must come from your ^{un sou} immediate bounty | can you be unmoved while you ^{qu'il ne tint directement de votre} see your ^{bonté} ^{pouvoir} ^{insensible} ^{en voyant} Sophy in this dreadful situation | ^{Sophie} ^{effrayant situation} ^{pouvoir} can the

^a See p. 150. sect. 1.

^b See p. 182. sect. 3.

^c This adjective must remain before its substantive.

^d See p. 65. sect. 3.

best of fathers break my heart? will he kill me
m'affliger si cruellement vouloir me faire périr
 by : the most painful, cruel, and lingering death?
de douloureux cruel lent mort

OF NOUNS of NUMBER.

R U L E. I.

1. In speaking of sovereigns, cardinal numbers must be used instead of the ordinal, except these two, *the first, the second*; which in this case have no article before them in French; thus we say, *Henri premier*, Henry the first; *Henri second*, Henry the second; *Henri trois*, Henry the third; but we say *Charles quint*, speaking of that Emperor who lived in the time of Francis the first; we likewise say, *Sixte quint*, speaking of that Pope who lived in the time of Henry the fourth of France.

2. Speaking of the days of the month, we say, *le premier, le deux, le trois de Janvier*, the first, the 2d, the 3d of January. These constructions, *June the first, June the second*, must also be rendered thus, *le premier de Juin, le deux de Juin*.

The preposition *de* may also be suppressed; as, *le deux Fevrier, le trois Mars*, the second of February, the third of March.

3. The preposition *on*, which is put before nouns of number, is not expressed in French.

4. The ordinal numbers are placed after their substantives in French as well as in English, at the title of performances, and in quotations; the article is then left out in French; as, *volume the first, tome premier; chapter the second, chapitre second*.

But in quotations when the ordinal adjective comes before its substantive in English, you may indifferently put it before or after in French, and then it retains

retains the article ; as, you will find it in the third chapter, vous le trouverez au troisieme chapitre, or, au chapitre troisieme.

E X E R C I S E .

At the same time a powerful rival, Francis I the
en même tems *puissant rival François*
 first, entered the lists against him | the conquests,
entrer & dans la lice contre lui *conquête, f.*
 the abilities, and the ambition of Sultan Selim
habileté *ambition* *Sultan Selim*
 the second, had spread over all Europe a general
jetter dans tout Europe *général*
 and well founded alarm | Leo I the tenth found the
fondé alarme, f. Leon *trouver*
 revenues of the church exhausted by the vast projects
trésor *église épuisé par vaste projet*
 of his two predecessors Alexander I the sixth and
prédécesseur Alexandre
 Julius I the second | he set out for Seville in order
Jules *partir & pour Seville afin de*
 to solemnize his marriage with Isabella, the
célébrer *mariage* *Isabelle*
 daughter of Emanuel, the late King of Portugal
Emanuel *dernier* *Portugal*
 and the sister of John I the third | England and
Jean *Angleterre*
 Scotland, situated in the north of France, were
Ecosse *situé à* *nord* *France*
 united under the reign of James I the first | the
réuni sous *reigne, m. Jacques*

^a This word must be singular. ^b See p. 139. sect. 1.

^c See p. 134. sect. 1. ^d p. 165. sect. 1.

^e p. 144. rule x. ^f p. 136. sect. 2.

Archduke did homage to Lewis the twelfth, and
*Archiduc rendre * homage Louis*
 as ^a a Peer of the realm took his seat in the
*Pair royaume siéger **
 parliament of Paris | this rapid succession of events
parlement Paris rapide succession événement
 brought on a slight fever, which occasioned his
*lui donna - léger fièvre être * cause de*
 death ³ on the 2 second of December | Charles having
mort Décembre
 had the satisfaction of seeing hostilities begun between
satisfaction de voir commencer les hostilités entre
^b France and ^b England, took leave of Henry, and
*prendre * congé*
 arrived in ^c Spain ³ on the 2 seventeenth of June |
*arriver * Espagne dix-sept Juin*
 the chief ^d objects of this alliance concluded at Cognac
principal objet alliance conclu Coignac
³ on the twenty 2 second of May, were to oblige
May de obliger
 the Emperor to set at liberty the French King's sons.
à mettre en liberté les fils du Roi de France.

R U L E II.

1. *Cent* in the plural, and *quatre-vingt* take an *s* when they are followed by a substantive; as, *deux cents hommes*, two hundred men; *quatre-vingts écoliers*, eighty scholars.

But they are spelled without an *s* when they come before another noun of number; as, *deux cent*

^a See p. 146. sect. 2.

^c p. 136. sect. 1.

^b See p. 134. sect. 1.

^d This word must be singular
 ninety

quatre-vingt dix hommes, two hundred and ninety men.

2. In writing the date of the year, *mille*, a thousand, is spelled *mil*; as, *l'an mil sept cent quatre-vingt trois*, in the year one thousand seven hundred and eighty-three; otherwise we spell *mille*, which does not take the mark of the plural; as, *deux mille*, two thousand.

3. *One* or *a* before *thousand*, and the conjunction *and*, which sometimes joins the different numbers in English, are not expressed in French. We likewise seldom express the preposition *in*; as, *in the year one thousand seven hundred and eighty four*, *l'an mil sept cent quatre-vingt quatre*; but *et* may be put before *un*; as, *twenty one*, *vingt-un*, or, *vingt & un*.

4. *Half* when it comes before a substantive, with the articles *a*, *an* is expressed by *demi*, which always remains masculine, and is put after the article; as, *half an hour*, *une demi-heure*.

But if it comes after a substantive, it must be made feminine, if the substantive is of that gender in French; as, *an hour and a half*, *une heure & demie*.

5. If it comes before a pronoun, or substantive not preceded by the article indefinite, it is then expressed by *la moitié*, and governs *de* before the next noun; as, *half the world*, *la moitié du monde*.

EXERCISE.

At last ^a on the ^b fifteenth of June, 3 one 2 thousand five 1 hundred 3 and twenty, the bull so fatal
enfin Juin sortit la bulle si fatale

^a See p. 189. sect. 3.

^b See p. 189. sect. 2.

to the church of Rome was issued | the association
à la Réglice de Rome association
 had been formed in the city of Valentia, 3 in the
formé en la ville Valence
 year 3 one 2 thousand four hundred 3 and thirty | it
ce
 was on the first of April, 3 one 2 thousand seven
fut
 hundred 3 and fifteen, I came into Mr. ^b Sealand's
que j'entrai à
 service | forty one propositions extracted out of
service, m. proposition tiré de
^b Luther's works, were condemned as heretical and
ouvrage & condamné hérétique
 scandalous | by the word infinite it is usual to express
scandaleux par mot infini on entend ordinairement
 the distance of 4 half a yard, and by the word eternal,
longueur verge, f. éternel
 a duration of five minutes | if 5 half what that
l'espace minutes, f. f. ce que
 gentleman has said be true, Mr. Jones has the most
cavalier non à dire vrai
 deceitful countenance I ever saw | you have not
trompeur mine, f. que j'aie jamais vue
 mentioned 5 half her virtues, her beauty is the least
nommer vertu beauté
 of her excellencies.
perfection.

OF PRONOUNS PERSONAL.

R U L E I.

The pronouns *I, thou, he, &c.* have hitherto been
 expressed by *je, tu, il, &c.* but *moi, toi, lui, eux,*

^a See p. 189. sect. 3.

^b See p. 153. sect. I.

must be used instead of *je, tu, il, ils*, in the following occasions ; *we, you*, are still expressed by *nous, vous*.

1. When a noun and a pronoun, or many nouns and pronouns of different persons are together the nominatives of a verb, it is then usual to resume all the nominatives of the verb, if they are of different persons, in one of the pronouns plural *nous, vous* ; the former is used if one of the pronouns is of the first person ; as, *my brother and I have read*, *mon frere & moi nous avons lu*. If the pronoun *I* is not among the different nominatives, *vous* must be used ; as, *your brother and you have done*, *votre frere & vous vous avez fini*.

It would be still better to begin the sentence by the resuming pronoun, and put the nominatives to the verb after it ; as, *nous avons lu mon frere & moi ; vous avez fini votre frere & vous*.

2. After the impersonal *it is* ; as, *it is I*, *c'est moi*.

3. When they are joined to the adjectives, *alone, only* ; as, *I alone*, *moi seul* ; or, followed by one of the relatives *who, that, which* ; as, *I who knew the fellow*, *moi qui connoissois le drôle*.

Observe, that as *moi, toi*, cannot be nominatives, the pronouns *je, tu*, must be put before the verb as such ; as, *I alone had the courage to stop him*, *moi seul j'ai eu le courage de l'arrêter* ; and it is generally better to repeat the pronouns *nous, vous* ; as, *you who were present, should have told him of it*, *vous qui étiez présent, vous auriez du le lui dire*. The pronouns of the third person, *lui, eux*, are generally used as nominatives ; as, *he alone knew it*, *lui seul le savoit*.

4. When they are used as by opposition, expressing the different actions or passions of several nominatives ; as, *I play on the violin and he on the flute*, *je joue du violon & lui de la flûte*. If they are then followed by a verb, the preceding observation must be attended to.

E X E R C I S E.

My wife and I never speak of her but with
femme elle que les
 tears in our eyes | the gentleman, lady, and I
larmes aux yeux cavalier dame
 sat down to supper | I he, Master Blifil and Jones,
se mettre à table Monsieur
 had^a mounted their horses after church to take the
monter à cheval après l'office pour prendre
 air, and had ridden about a quarter of a^b mile |
faire environ quart mille
 their offer^c being accepted, I he, the squire and the
offre, f. accepté chevalier
 parson ascended together^d Mrs. Water's chamber |
cure monterent ensemble à chambre, f.
 I he and his colleagues had not^a come into power
collegue, m. parvenir au ministère
 because they enjoyed the confidence of the people |
parce que jouir de confiance peuple, m.
 some lovers would think themselves very unhappy ;
que. que amant se croire malheureux
 but 3 I^e who know the sex, am never frightened at
mais connaître beau sexe effrayé de
 the frowns of a mistress, nor ravished with her
dédain maîtresse enchanté de
 smiles | mention not my brother, 3 I alone am the
sourire parler de
 object of your pity | 3 you^e who are so great a
objet pitié
 politician can be at no great loss | what hast thou
politique, m. ne devez point être embarrassé qu'as tu de

^a This participle is declined.^b See p. 149. sect. 3.^c This word is not expressed.^d p. 153. sect. 1.^e See p. 69. rule v.

to do with honour, 3 thou that ^a canst admit a
commun avec l'honneur ^{oses admettre la}
 plurality of lovers? but 3 we ^a who search into the
pluralité des amans ^{fouiller dans}
 most retired recesses, are in a most dangerous
secret replis ^{dangereux}
 situation | but 3 I ^a who began to recollect the
situation ^{commencer, * à se rappeler}
 features of my father, was now confirmed in my
trait ^{* alors confirmé dans}
 suspicion | you have ever acted like a good and
doute, m. ^{Je conduire comme}
 generous father, and 4 he like an obedient and generous
généreux ^{obéissant} ^{bonnête}
 son | he loved the country, 4 I the town; 4 he hawks
*aimer * compagne, f.* ^{ville} ^{oiseau}
 and hounds, 4 I coaches and equipage; 4 he the
chien de chasse ^{voiture} ^{équipage}
 sound of a horn, 4 I the squeak of a fiddle | if the
bruit ^{trompe, f.} ^{son} ^{violon}
 sufferer be an Indian, there is during the whole
patient ^{Indien} ^{pendant tout le}
 time of the execution a contest which shall exceed,
tems ^{exécution} ^{combat à qui l'emportera}
 4 they in inflicting the most horrid pains, or 4 he
en lui infligeant ^{cruel torture}
 in enduring them | my father was pleased to hint
en les supportant ^{il plut à mon pere de avertir}
 to Mr. Lovelace that he wished he would discontinue
*desirer * qu'il discontinuât*
 his visits; and 4 I, by his command, spoke a
visite, f. ^{d'après ses ordres s'expliquer *}
 great deal plainer | I pity your country ignorance,
beaucoup plus clairement avoir pitié de campagnard ignorance

^a See p. 69. rule v.

^b This word must be plural.

^{*} p. 145. sect. 1.

cried the lady, and I pity your town learning,
s'écria la dame *je pitié votre ville savoir*
 said Western.

✱

RULE II.

1. *Me, thee, him, her, us, you, them*, when they are accusatives, are expressed by *me, te, le, la, nous, vous, les*, and are placed before the verb; as, *he sees me*, *il me voit*; *he struck him*, *il le frappa*.

2. When they are datives, whether the preposition *to* is expressed or not, or when they are joined to verbs or adjectives which require the preposition *à* in French, *me, thee, us, you*, are rendered in the same manner; but *him, and her*, are expressed by *lui*, and *them* by *leur*; they also come before the verb; and it is to be observed, that this *leur* being not an adjective, never takes the mark of the plural; as, *he gives me a book*, *il me donne un livre*; *I owe them a crown*, *je leur dois un écu*.

3. If the verb is in the second person singular, the first and second plural of the imperative, and not attended by a negative, the personal pronouns come after it, and *me, thee*, are expressed by *moi, toi*; as, *give me his book*, *donnez moi son livre*; *teach him*, *enseignez le*.

4. But if two imperatives in the above mentioned persons are joined by the conjunctions *and, or*, the latter is generally preceded by its pronoun, and *me, thee*, are expressed by *me, te*; as, *take it and sell it*, *prenez le & le vendez*.

^a See p. 155. sect. 1.

E X E R C I S E.

She assembled the nobles at Lions, and animated
*assembler * noble Lyon animer **
 them by her example ^a no less than by her
par exemple, m. pas moins
 words | soon after ^b Charles's arrival at Barcelona,
parole, f. bientôt après arrivée à Barcelone
 he received the account of an event which interested
** nouvelle événement intéresser **
 him much more than the murmurs of the Castilians,
murmure Castilian
 or the scruples of the cortes of ^c Catalonia | after
scrupule, m. état Catalogne après
 many bitter remonstrances, he paid ² him his wages
*plusieurs severe remonstrance payer * gage*
 and dismissed ¹ him | Tom kept this horse ^d above
*renvoyer * garder **
 half a year, and then rode him to a neighbouring
six mois, il le mena ensuite voisin
 fair and told ¹ him | a declaration so bold and haughty
*faire, f. venard * déclaration fier hardi*
 silenced ² them and astonished their associates |
*imposer * silence a étonner * associé*
 her ^e follies are so natural and so artful that they
follie naturel adroit
 become ² her; and those ^e affectations which in
avoir a affectation
 another woman would be odious, serve ^f but to
une autre in, supportable servir

^a This negative governs *ne* before the preceding verb.

^b See p. 153. sect. 1.

^c See p. 136. sect. 2.

^d p. 176. sect. 3.

^e This word must be singular
make

^f p. 126. sect. 2.

make 1 her more agreeable | you don't know how
rendre *agréable* *savoir*
 many ^a china cups and ^b glasses my passion for you
combien tasse de porcelaine *verre, m. passion pour*
 has made 1 me break | Mr. Allworthy endeavoured
faire *casser* *tâcher* *
 to comfort 1 her, and promised 2 her a much finer
consoler *promettre* * *beau*
 bird | many will blame this backwardness to so
oiseau *plusieurs personnes blâmer* *indifference pour*
 fine a girl, who seemed ready to fly into his arms
fille *sembler* * *pret à voler dans*
 if he would open 1 them to receive 1 her | she sent
s'il eut voulu ouvrir *pour* *envoyer* *
 for the game-keeper, and ordered 2 him to bring his
chercher garde-chasse *ordonner* * *à de amener*
 daughter to 2 her | the concern which you felt at
chagrin que *avoir* * *de*
 the loss of your little bird will always appear to
perte, f. *paraître*
 2 me the highest circumstance^c in that adventure |
important circonstance *événement*
 at last she recovered ^d strength enough to desire
enfin *reprandre* * *force, f.* *pour prier*
 1 him to leave 1 her | O my Sophia, it is hard to
de quitter *O Sophie il est cruel de*
 leave 1 you | it is harder still to desire 1 you to
il l'est encor d'avantage de *de*
 leave 1 me | do not look so sternly on 1 me, but
regarder d'un air si sévère
 believe 3 me, Felix | guide 3 me to the same place,
croire *guider* *endroit*
 and I will give 2 thee a guinea or two if one is
guinée

^a See p. 156. sect. 1.^b See p. 151. sect. 2.^c p. 183. sect. 3.^d p. 156. sect. 1.

not sufficient | he assured | her that the gentleman
suffisant assurer cavalier
 who spoke to her was one of the greatest squires.
*qui lui avoit parlé * riche seigneur*
 in the country.
pays.

R U L E III.

1. The above pronouns are expressed by *moi, toi, lui, elle, nous, vous, eux, elles*, and follow the same order as in English, after the verbs ; *boire*, to drink ; *penfer, songer*, to think ; *vifer*, to aim ; *courir*, to run ; *accourir*, to run to ; *aller*, to go ; *venir*, to come ; (when it is not used impersonally ; as, *il me vient une pensée*, a thought occurs to me) as likewise after reflected verbs ; as, *he thinks of you*, *il pense à vous* ; *I have applied to him*, *je m'en suis adressé à lui*.

2. When they are in the dative and used as by opposition ; as, *he gives it to him and not to her*, *il le donne à lui & non à elle*. Though in the last instance, when the verb is not in the imperative, it would be better to turn the sentence thus ; *it is to him that I give it and not to you*, *c'est à lui que je le donne & non à vous*.

3. After prepositions ; as, *against me*, *contre moi* ; except the preposition *of*, with which they sometimes make idiomatical expressions which cannot be subjected to any grammatical rules.

4. After *but* when it signifies *only* ; as, *he loves but me*, *il n'aime que moi* ; likewise after the comparatives *as, than* ; as, *he is more learned than I*, *il est plus savant que moi*.

5. When two pronouns personal, joined by the conjunctions *and, as well as, more than*, are either in

^a See p. 183. sect. 3.

the dative or accusative, one of them must come before the verb in French; as, *I shall punish as well them as you*, je les punirai aussi bien que vous; *I forgive both to him and to you*, je lui pardonne ainsi qu'à vous. Tho' when they are in the dative, as in the last sentence, they might both be placed after the verb; as, *je pardonne à lui & à vous*.

If a pronoun personal joined to a substantive by the above conjunctions, is in the accusative, it must be put before the verb; but if it is in the dative, or the French verb governs the preposition *à*, it may indifferently come before or after; as, *I shall give money both to yourself and your brother*, je vous donnerai de l'argent ainsi qu'à votre frere, or, *je donnerai de l'argent à vous & à votre frere*.

6. In admirative sentences, or, in answer to interrogations; as, *whom did he reward? me*, qui récompensa-t-il? moi.

EXERCISE.

He had called ^a them in order to concert with ³ them
assembler *afin* *de concerter avec*
 the most proper measures to check the progress of
propre *mesure* *à arrêter les progrès*
 these new and dangerous opinions | this indecent
nouveau *opinion* *indécent*
 boldness instead of shocking his contemporaries, was
hardiesse au lieu de déplaire à *contemporain* ✱
 considered by ³ them as a new proof of his undaunted
regardé par *comme* *preuve, f.* *intrépide*
 spirit | Lannoy employed all ^b his address to confirm
courage *employer* ✱ *adresse pour confirmer*
^a him in these sentiments, and concerted with ³ him
concerter ✱

in secret the manner of executing their resolution
en secret *exécuter* *résolution*
 | he found ^a her in a condition which ^b must
trouver *dans* *situation* *affliger*
 grieve both ^c me and my reader, was it to be
griever *lecteur* *si l'on en trouvait*
 described here | he ^e presently ran to ⁱ her, and with
ici le détail *sur le champ courir* *d'une*
 a voice full at once of tenderness and terror,
voix *qui exprimait à la fois sa tendresse & ses craintes*
 cried, O my Sophia | his sister came to ⁱ him soon
il s'écria *Sophie* *bientôt*
 after Mr. Jones had left the room in the manner
après que *il quitta* *chambre, f. de*
 above-mentioned | ^d I presently ran to ⁱ him, raised
ci-dessus *relevé*
^a him in my arms, and kissed his ^e cold lips with
dans *baiser* *froid levre, f.*
 the utmost eagerness | the guide came up to ⁱ him,
la plus grande vivacité *guide, m.*
 and told ^f him ^g his master had got the better of
dire *avoir le dessus* *sur*
 the highwayman | the women were of such an
voleur de grand chemin *d'une taille*
 enormous size, that we appeared as grasshoppers
si gigantesque *avoir* *l'air de* *cigale, f.*
 before ³ them | this is the only instance in which
auprès de *c'est* *seul circonstance où*
 I ^h must disobey both ⁵ yourself and my father |
devoir désobéir à
 I thought that virtue, letters and philosophy had
pensé *vertu* *lettre, f.* *philosophie*

^a See p. 197. sect. 1.

^b This verb must be in the

^c p. 120. sect. 1.

conditional

^d This pron. must be repeated before every verb it governs.

^e See p. 161. sect. 1.

^f See p. 197. sect. 2.

^g p. 126. sect. 3.

^h This verb must be in the present of the subjunctive.

only ^a charms for ³ him | Jones was a little startled at
seul charme, f. pour [†] *un peu surpris de*
 this sudden declaration? ⁶ I your enemy, Sir!
soudain déclaration *ennemi, monsieur*
 says he, with much ^b amazement | besides shall a
étonnement *d'ailleurs*
 man ^c value himself upon a thing that another may
tirer vanité de *chose, f.* *pouvoir*
 buy for his money as well as ⁴ he | but I hope ^d you
acheter à prix d'argent *comme* *espérer*
 will convince ⁵ them as well as me to the contrary. |
convaincre *de contraire, m.*
 hold your blasphemous tongue, cries Sophia!
arrêter blasphématoire langue, f. *s'écria Sophie*
 how dare you mention his name with disrespect?
comment oser prononcer nom mépris
⁶ he use me ill! | I may the more unreservedly say
traiter mal *je puis vous le dire avec d'autant*
 this to you, as we have often joined in the same
moins de réserve *être lié des mêmes*
 concern; ^e I for a father and ^f uncle, you for a
intérêts
 mother.

R U L E IV.

I. The pronouns personal, being nominatives, are generally repeated before each verb, when the tenses are different, or when one affirms and the other is attended by a negative; *I think and will always think, je pense & je penserai toujours.*

^a See p. 140. sect. 1.

^b See p. 156. sect. 1.

^c p. 65. sect. 3.

^d p. 126. sect. 3.

^e p. 194. sect. 4.

^f p. 150. sect. 1.

2. It is generally better to repeat the pronouns of the first and second persons; but if the tenses are the same, the pronouns of the third person need not be repeated; except however, when there is a kind of intermediate sentence between the two verbs; as, *he advanced a few steps, and after having surveyed me from head to foot, begged the favour of my name*; *il avança quelques pas & après m'avoir examiné depuis la tête jusqu'aux piés, il me pria de vouloir bien lui dire mon nom.*

3. They must be repeated after conjunctions; except, *and, nor*; as, *he owes him money, but will not acknowledge it*; *il lui doit de l'argent, mais il ne veut pas en convenir.*

4. The pronouns governed must always be repeated; as, *I desire and intreat you*, *je vous prie & je vous conjure*; except when the second verb is composed of the first; as, *he has invited and disinvented us*, *il nous a priés & dépriés.*

E X E R C I S E.

1 I really pity the poor fellow, and no
réellement avoir pitié de pauvre diable pas
 longer ago than yesterday, I sent a small matter to
plus tard qu'hier *envoyer & quelques bagatelles*
 his wife | 2 you are a thinking of something else
penfer à quelque autre chose
 now, and play too negligently | the clearness of
à présent jouer trop négligemment *clarté*
 your judgment and the justness of your remarks,
jugement *justesse* *remarques*
 astonish as much as charm 4 me | 2 she soon after
étonner *charmer* *elle revint*

recovered her spirits, assured ^a him ^b she was safe
*bientôt à elle assurer * en sûreté*

and thanked ^a him for the care he had taken of

*remercier * de soin prendre*

^c her | by ^d conferring an obligation ³ they do not

rendre service, m.

always procure a friend, but are certain of creating

toujours gagner certain se faire

many enemies | ³ I hear nothing of ^c Antonio's

je n'entends point parler

death; and therefore, resolve to venture to thy

mort c'est pourquoi être résolu de se hasarder à aller

house, this evening | my father valued and loved

*chez toi ce soir estimer * aimer **

⁴ him, and I am sure where he alive, I should

** sûr que s'il étoit en vie,*

have his consent | such a marriage is worse

obtenir consentement un mariage comme celui-là pire

than death | I hate and detest ⁴ you | ² they still

hàir détester encor

retained their attachment to the imperial interest,

*conserver * attachement aux intérêts de l'empire*

and by ^d placing themselves under the protection of

se mettre sous protection

the Emperor, secured the quiet possession of their

*Empereur s'assurer * paisible jouissance*

privileges | ² I was conscious ^f of my guilt, and

*privilege, m. sentir * faute, f.*

resolved to leave Oxford the next morning | ³ I

** quitter le lendemain matin*

^a See p. 197, sect. 1.

^b See p. 126, sect. 3.

^c p. 200, sect. 3.

^d p. 115, sect. 4.

^e p. 153, sect. 1.

^f This prep. is not expressed

am^a but a^b poor man, and therefore don't desire to
 have^c all | 3 she was under a necessity of persisting
 in her denial, yet^{*} gave him reason to think
 she did not dislike his address | she says, that in
 the great correspondence by letters which he holds,
 3 he is as secret and careful as if it were of a
 treasonable nature; yet troubles not his head
 with politics, tho' nobody knows the interests of
 princes and courts g better.

R U L E V.

1. The pronouns personal of the third person being used in a general indeterminate sense, and followed by the relatives, *who, whom, that*, are thus expressed; *he, him; celui, she, her; celle, they, them; ceux*, for the masculine; *celles*, for the feminine.

2. The personal and relative are sometimes elegantly separated in English; as, *he is happy who knows the value of money*; if you wish to preserve this construction in French, the adverb *là* must be joined to the pronouns *celui, celle, &c.* as, *celui là est heureux qui connoît le prix de l'argent*; but it is more usual

^a See p. 126, sect. 2.

^b See p. 164.

^c This word may come before the verb. ^d p. 126, sect. 3.

^e p. 187, sect. 1.

^f This word governs *ne* before the next verb.

^g See p. 120, sect. 1.

to make the two pronouns follow one another; as, *celui qui connoît le prix de l'argent est heureux.*

3. *He, who or that, they, who or that,* being separated in English, are also elegantly rendered by the impersonal *c'est*, with the infinitive, followed by *que de* before the second verb which is likewise to be in the infinitive; as, *they are mistaken who think that Kings are very happy, c'est se tromper que de croire que les Rois sont très heureux.*

E X E R C I S E.

1. They who formerly distributed the favours of the
*auparavant distribuer * faveur*
 prince, were then content to receive ^a them
se trouvoient heureux alors de
 from the hands of strangers | the difference is
de étrangers difference
 immaterial between 1 him who retires the soonest
legere se retirer premier
 and 1 him who stays the latest | there is a gentleman
rester dernier voilà cavalier
 at the window which I fancy to be 1 him who
fenetre, f. que croire qui
 brought Isabella hither | 2 he must have the estate
a amené Isabelle ici devoir fortune, f.
 of a duke and the strength of a Gondolier, who
duc force, f. Gondolier
 would lift himself into their service | 2 he is a
vouloir s'enrôler à service, m.
 wretch who is unmoved at hearing such a story |
malheureux entend sans être ému une pareille histoire
 if they who resolve to be merry, seldom are so;
ont résolu d'être gais le sont rarement

^a See p. 197, sect. 1. ^b This verb must be in the present.

it will be much more unlikely for us to
il est encore moins vraisemblable que nous puissions avoir
 be well pleased, if 2 they are admitted, who are
quelque satisfaction être reçu dans la société
 always complaining they are sad.
se plaindre sans cesse de ses chagrins.

R U L E VI.

1. The pronouns *he, she, they*, being nominatives to the verb *to be* and followed by a substantive are most generally expressed by *ce*; as, *he is a fine fellow*, *c'est un beau garçon*; *they are charming girls*, *ce sont des filles charmantes*.

2. But if the pronouns *he, she, they*, thus expressed by *ce*, are nominatives to two verbs, the second must have another nominative in French; as, *he is a good natured boy and does not want abilities*; *c'est un jeune homme d'un bon caractère & il ne manque pas de dispositions*.

3. The pronouns *il, elle, ils, elles*, must be used when the persons are speaking of themselves; as, *they say they are milliners*; *elles disent qu'elles sont marchandes de modes*.

E X E R C I S E.

1 He was indeed a lad of remarkable disposition,
** effectivement garçon heureux caractère*
 sober, discreet and pious beyond
il étoit d'une sagesse, d'une discrétion & d'une piété au
 his age | 1 he was one of those wise
*delà de son âge * sage*

men

men who regard beauty in the other sex as
homme regarder beauté sexe comme
 a very worthless and superficial qualification. | 2 they
inutile superficiel qualité
 are men of profound taciturnity and never disturb
profond taciturnité importuner
 a stranger with questions | 1 he is indeed the worthiest,
étranger de leurs questions digne
 bravest, noblest of all human beings | 2 she is a
brave noble tous les humains
 most accomplished young lady, sings admirably
remplie de talens demoiselle chanter admirablement
 well, and has a most delicate hand on the harpsichord |
toucher du clavecin avec la plus grande légèreté
 2 he was a religious, honest, good natured man and
 * *religieux honnête & d'un bon caractère*
 had behaved so well in his command, that he
se conduire dans commandement
 was highly esteemed and beloved, not only by the
 * *souverainement estimé aimé*
 soldiers of his own company, but by the whole
soldat compagnie tout le
 regiment | they answered & they were travellers who
régiment voyageurs
 had lost their way.
s'égarer.

R U L E VII.

1. The pronouns *myself, thyself, himself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves*, are expressed by *me, te, se, nous, vous, se*, with reflected verbs; as, *I torment myself*;

^a See p. 187, sect. 1.

^c p. 165, sect. 1.

^e This word needs not be expressed.

^b See p. 148, sect. 1.

^d p. 120, sect. 3.

^f p. 140, sect. 1.

je me tourmente ; otherwise they are generally expressed by *moi-même*, *toi-même*, *soi-même*, or, *lui-même*, *elle-même*, *nous-mêmes*, *vous-mêmes*, *eux-mêmes*, *elles-mêmes* ; but you are to observe, that *même*, which serves to give more energy to the sentence, is not so generally used in French, as *self* in English ; and instead of the compound pronouns *moi-même*, *toi-même*, &c. we often use the simple ones, *moi*, *toi*, &c. especially after prepositions or comparative adverbs.

2. *Himself* may be expressed, as we have just seen, by *soi-même*, or, *soi*, and *lui-même*, or *lui* ; but this distinction is to be made : *soi-même*, or *soi*, are only used with nouns taken in an universal sense ; as, *man loves but himself*, *l'homme n'aime que soi* ; or, with a pronoun indeterminate ; as, *every one acts for himself*, *chacun agit pour soi*.

3. These pronouns are sometimes emphatically added to the other pronouns, *I*, *thou*, *he*, &c. as, *I myself*, *thou thyself*, *he himself*, &c. but this elegance would be nonsense in French. They must be separated ; as, *you yourself wished for it*, *vous l'avez demandé vous même* ; and sometimes the compounds alone, *moi-même*, *toi-même*, &c. are expressed ; as, *it was you yourself who did it*, *c'est vous même qui l'avez fait*.

4. When they are preceded by the preposition *by*, they are rendered by the adjective *seul* ; as, *I have done it by myself*, *je l'ai fait seul*, or, *tout seul*.

EXERCISE.

It is natural to every one to think of 2 himself
il naturel chacun de penser à

| that man always speaks of 2 himself or of his horses
ou cheval

| I was satisfied that it was he 3 himself who appeared
** convaincu c'étoit paroître **

before

before ^a me | neither I ³ myself nor my friends ^b had
devant
 strength enough to ^c sit down to a meal with
force, f. pour se mettre à table, f. avec
^a them | Susan deposed that Sophia ¹ herself had
*Susanne déposer * Sophie*
 delivered the muff to ^d her, and had ordered ^d her
donner manchon ordonner à
 to convey it into the chamber where Mr. Jones
de le porter dans chambre, f.
 had found it | you ³ yourself will acknowledge that
l'avait trouvé convenir
 you consulted ^e but his interest | you ³ yourself, madam
*consulter * intérêt madame*
 shall tell ^d me what I shall bear from ^a them, and
dire ce que je dois souffrir
 I will bear it | she again determined to speak
je m'y résignerai de nouveau prendre la résolution
 to ^d him ¹ herself, and immovably to refuse joining
de absolument de refuser d'être
 the party to violet-bank | why! you do not really
de la partie de mais quoi! sérieusement
 mean to remain in town by ⁴ yourself | my mother
se proposer de rester à Londres
¹ herself does every thing for ^d him, and hardly
pourvoir à tout ce qui est nécessaire à souffrir
 suffers any body to go near him.
à peine que qui que ce soit l'approche.

^a See p. 200, sect. 3.

^b See p. 194, sect. 1.

^c p. 71, rule 1.

^d p. 197, sect. 2.

^e p. 126, sect. 2.

OF PRONOUNS POSSESSIVE.

R U L E I.

1. It has been said, page 22, that these pronouns agree in gender and number with the nouns they are joined or related to ; but the conjunctives *mon*, *ton*, *son*, though masculine, must be used instead of the feminine *ma*, *ta*, *sa*, before nouns beginning with a vowel ; as, *mon ame*, my soul ; *son honneur*, his honor.

2. They are also to be repeated before every substantive ; as, *my brother and sister*, *mon frere & ma soeur* ; likewise before adjectives which signify different qualities ; as, *our good and bad actions*, *nos bonnes & nos mauvaises actions* ; but they need not be repeated if the adjectives are synonymous.

3. When they are joined to the substantive *sake*, they are rendered by a pronoun personal with the preposition *of* ; as, *for my sake*, *pour l'amour de moi* ; *for thy sake*, *pour l'amour de toi*. They are rendered in the same manner when they are joined to the substantive *account* expressed in French by *à cause* ; as, *on my account*, *à cause de moi*.

4. They are often suppressed in English before nouns of relations and friends, when we call to, or speak of, them ; they must always be expressed in French ; as, *brother come here*, *mon frere venez ici*.

5. After the possessive pronouns *my*, *thy*, *his*, &c. the articles *le*, *la*, *les*, are not expressed before the superlative ; as, *my best friend*, *mon meilleur ami*.

E X E R C I S E.

We do not only consult ^a our own dignity and
consulter *dignité*
 ease, but ^b the good and advantage of the reader |
plaisir *bien* *avantage* *lecteur*
 he had the address to give ^c Henry favorable
adresse *de* *Henri* *favorable*
 d impressions ^e of 2 his character and intentions |
impressions *sur* *caractère, m.* *intention*
 while Luther was at the height ^e of 2 his reputation
tandis que ** au plus haut degré* *réputation*
 and authority, Tetzel began to publish d indulgences
autorité *commencer à publier* *indulgence*
 | well, 4 son, I have intelligence that you have writ
très bien *j'ai appris* *écrire*
 to your mistress; I should like to know the ^f contents
maîtresse *aimer à savoir* *contenu*
 of that letter | his adversaries exulted as if 2 his
lettre, f. *adversaire triompher* ** comme si*
 party and opinions had been 3 crushed at once by
parti *opinion* *écrasé* *à la fois par*
 such a decisive blow | they had acquired more liberal
un coup si décisif *acquérir* *noble*
 d ideas with respect to 2 their ^a own rights and
idée *relativement à* *droit*
 privileges | you know, 4 child, that it is in my
privilege, m. *savoir* *enfant* *il* *en mon*
 power as ^h a magistrate to punish you very
pouvoir *magistrat* *de punir*

- ^a This word needs not be expressed.

^b See p. 150, sect. 1.

^c See p. 154, sect. 4.

^d p. 140, sect. 1.

^e This prep. must be repeated.

^f This word must be singular. ^g p. 159, sect. 2. -

^h See p. 146, sect. 2.

rigorously

rigorously | you shan't want money neither, 4 mother,
rigoureusement manquer de argent non plus
 if you will hold your tongue and know when you
vouloir se taire sentir quand
 are well | for 3 his sake ^a I shall keep my learning to
garder savoir pour
 myself, and return to 1 my history | 4 sister, I have
moi seul revenir
 often warned ^b you not to talk the ^c court gibberish
avertir parler cour jargon
 to ^d me | I know all, I assure ^b you : 4 sister has told
tout assurer dire
^d me ^e all | I find, 4 old friend, you have not
tout voir ami
 forgot the sensations of your youth | there was a
oublier sensation y avoir
 publick disputation upon this important question,
public dispute, f. sur important question
 between Luther and Eccius, one of 2 his most learned
entre
 and formidable antagonists | by this transaction Francis
formidable antagoniste traité François
 had deprived the Emperor of 5 his most powerful
priver Empereur puissant
 allies, and at the same time had secured a passage
allié en: meme tems s'ouvrir passage
 through their territories | he had trusted to the
à travers territoire, m. se confier
 sincerity of the French king in opposition to the
sincérité malgré
 sentiments of 5 his wisest ministers | it is the constant
avis sage ministre constant

^a See p. 204, sect. 2.

^b See p. 197. sect. 1.

^c p. 155, sect. 1.

^d p. 197. sect. 2.

^e This word comes between the auxiliary and participle.

misfortune of many princes, that those who pretend
malheur plusieurs ceux prétendre
 to be & their best friends, are, in general, & their most
être en général
 dangerous enemies.

R U L E II.

1. In sentences where no ambiguity is to be feared, the article *the* only is used instead of the conjunctive, when that pronoun relates to the nominative of the verb; as, *Baron Goertz had his head cut off*, le Baron de Goertz eut la tête tranchée.

2. If the verb expresses an action done and received by the same person, it is generally reflected in French, the article definite not being then sufficient to make the sense complete; as, *Mr. A. broke his arm this morning*, literally, *Mr. A. broke the arm to himself this morning*, Mr. A. c'est cassé le bras ce matin.

3. If the pronoun possessive does not relate to the nominative of the verb, as in this sentence, *I shall break his arms*; or if it is joined to the nominative itself; as in this, *my head akes*, one of the pronouns personal, *me, te, lui, nous, vous, leur*; is to be put before the verb; literally, *I shall break the arms to him; the head akes to me*, je lui casserai les bras; la tête me fait mal.

4. Yet in speaking of habitual pains, we say, *my head ake continues*, mon mal de tête continue; *my leg is still swelled*, ma jambe est encor enflée.

E X E R C I S E.

Full of these ideas, all the electors turned & their
plein idée électeur tourner &

eyes

eyes towards Frederick, Duke of a Saxony, ^b a
 œil vers Frederic duc Saxe
 prince of eminent ^c virtue | the resentment of his
 prince éminent vertu ressentiment
 enemies was such that the very next day he was
 * tel * dès le lendemain *
 condemned to lose ¹ his head | he had a scar on
 condamné à perdre tête, f. * cicatrice, f. à
¹ his forehead | she stretched out ¹ her arms, opened
 front étendre * bras ouvrir *
¹ her eyes, and cried, oh heavens ! just as ^d her father,
 s'écrier * ô dieu au moment où
 aunt; and the parson came in | Jones immediately
 tante ministre entrer * sur le champ
 complied, threw off his coat, went down to the water,
 y consentir * ôter * son habit aller * à la pîete d'eau
 and washed ^e both ² his face and bosom | a ^f huge
 laver * visage poitrine, f. grand
 aquiline nose hung over ³ her mouth | he snatched
 aquilin nez pendre * sur bouche, f. saisir *
³ her hand and eagerly kissed it | if ¹ I have broke
 main la baisa avec transport casser
² my arm, I consider it as a trifle in comparison
 bras regarder cela comme bagatelle en comparaison
 of what I feared on your account | why did you
 ce que craindre * pour vous pourquoi
 save ³ my life ? my death would have been happier
 sauver vie mort un bonheur
 for us both | when Jones had taken leave of his
 pour tous deux lorsque † prendre congé
 friend the lieutenant, he endeavoured to close ¹ his
 lieutenant tâcher * de fermer

^a See p. 136, sect. 2.^b See p. 144, rule x.^c p. 148, sect. 1.^d p. 212, sect. 2.^e This word is not expressed.^f p. 166, sect. 3.

eyes | having had ^{quelque tems} his eyes for some time stedfastly ^{fixés}
on ^{me}, he threw ^{sur} himself back in his chair, and ^{se renverser} ^{fruteuil}
fainted away | I ^{s'évanouir} had infinitely rather pass my life ^{gimer infiniment mieux passer vie}
with the hottentots, ^{bottentot} than set my foot in Paris ^{remettre pié dans Paris}
again | my brother met ^{rencontrer} ^à me at the door, and gave
^{me} ^à his hand when I stepped out of the chariot ^{au sortir de la voiture}
| in about half an hour my mother returned; she ^{environ une demi-heure après} ^{revenir}
found ^d me in tears; she took ^{trouver} ^{en larmes} ^{prendre} my hand.

R U L E III.

1. The conjunctives *my*, *thy*, &c. being followed by the adjective *own*, without any substantive, are expressed in the same manner as the relatives *mine*, *thine*, &c. as, *I have your own*, *j'ai le vôtre*.

2. If a possessive relative is preceded by the verb *to be*, signifying *to belong*, we use in French the pronoun personal with the preposition *à* instead of the possessive; as, *this book is mine*, *ce livre est à moi*.

^a See p. 200, sect. 3.

^c p. 170, sect. 1.

^d p. 197, sect. 1.

^b This verb must be in the conditional.

^e See p. 197, sect. 2.

U

EXERCISE

E X E R C I S E.

What reproaches from Delville can be so bitter
reproche de la part de pouvoir amer
 as I my own? | you have planted a dagger in the
enfoncez poignard
 heart of Mortimer; you have infused poison into
cœur verser poison dans
 your own | if you think it worth while to
croire que je sois
 sacrifice that to the possession of me, I am 2 yours |
digne de ce sacrifice
 if the twentieth part of the things were 2 mine,
vingtieme partie
 I should think myself a very rich woman | Lovelace
se croire
 is resolved & you shall be 2 his, let who will say to
a décidé dise le contraire qui
 the contrary | I think & you must be either the one
voudra il faut que vous soyez
 man's or the other's.
à l'un ou à l'autre.

R U L E I V.

A possessive relative being preceded by a substantive, with the preposition *of*, is liable to so many constructions in French, that it is impossible to subject them to any rule. I shall, however, propose the following examples to give the scholar an idea of them,

^a See p. 174, sect. 2.
 • p. 126. sect. 3.

^b See p. 140. sect. 1.

and in the subsequent exercise refer each sentence to the similar example.

1. *A friend of mine came and told me, that is, one of my friends came and told me, un de mes amis est venu me dire.*

2. *You are no friend of mine, that is, you are not one of my friends, vous n'êtes point de mes amis, or, vous n'êtes point mon ami.*

3. *He had an estate of his own, that is, he had an estate belonging to him, il avoit une terre à lui.*

4. *He had no concern of his own, that is, he had no personal concern, il n'avoit point d'intérêt personnel.*

5. *Give me some paper of yours, that is, some of your paper, donnez moi un peu de votre papier, or, donnez moi de votre papier.*

6. But when the pronoun demonstrative *this* or *that* comes before any possessive, whether conjunctive or relative, one of them (generally the demonstrative) is lost in French, that language not admitting of such an emphasis; as, *what have you done with that book of mine?* can only be literally, *what have you done with my book? qu'avez vous fait de mon livre?*

EXERCISE.

I have lighted my pipe more than once with
allumer pipe, f. une fois
the writings of a prelate, and I know a friend of
écrivit prélat connoître
mine who for these several years has converted
depuis plusieurs années convertir
the essays of a man of quality into a kind of fringe
essai qualité en espee frange, f.

for his candlesticks | I had the good fortune to
pour chandelier j'ai eu le bonheur de
 escape in a most surprizing manner, and am now
se sauver de la suprenant maniere à présent
 going to London with this young lady, who is a
aller Londres une jeune personne, f.
 near relation of mine | we are equally surprized
proche parente également surpris
 at this unexpected meeting; your cousin is an
de inattendu rencontre, f. cousin
 acquaintance of mine | I will be obeyed or you are
connaissance vouloir obéi
 no child of mine | this conduct in the prince
enfant conduite de
 deserves approbation, and shews that he has an opinion
mériter des éloges faire voir opinion
 of his own | she knew better than any body who
connoître personne la*
 and who were together, a knowledge which she
liste des amans du jour connoissance que
 the more easily attained, as her pursuit of it
acquérir sa curiosité sur cet objet*
 was never diverted by any affairs of her own |
** distrait par aucun*
 if you will suffer me to apply some salve of mine |
vouloir souffrir que j'applique onguent
 I will answer for the success | I fancy this brother
répondre de succes s'imaginer
 of yours would have made a most excellent lawyer
homme de loi
 | is that tongue of yours resolved upon my
avoir langue, f. juré
 destruction? | his reputation was so fair in the
perte, f. il jouissoit d'une si belle réputation

^a See p. 203, sect. 1.

^b See p. 71, rule 1.

^c p. 144, rule x.

^d p. 180, sect. 1.

^e This word must be singular. ^f This word is not expressed.
 world

world, that sold Sealand, the great India merchant,
Indes négociant
 has offered me his only daughter and sole heiress to
unique *seul héritière*
 that vast estate of his.
grands biens

OF PRONOUNS DEMONSTRATIVE.

R U L E. I.

1. The pronouns *this* and *that* being joined to a substantive, are expressed by *ce, cet, cette*, as has been explained page 23. These pronouns must be repeated in French before every substantive; as, *bring me that grammar and dictionary which are in the next room, apportez moi cette grammaire & ce dictionnaire qui sont dans l'autre chambre.*

If they are by themselves, they are used either absolutely or distinctively.

2. They are used absolutely when they demonstrate one thing alone without any distinction from another, and are then expressed by *ceci* and *cela*; as, *give me this, donnez moi ceci; give me that, donnez moi cela.*

3. They are used distinctively when they serve to distinguish one thing from another, and are then expressed by *celui-ci, celle-ci, ceux-ci, celles-ci*; thus having been speaking of two different things, if I wish one in preference to the other, I say, *give me this, I don't like that, donnez moi celle-ci, je n'aime pas celle-là.*

^a See p. 181. rule xi.

^b See p. 155, sect. 1.

^c p. 197. sect. 2.

4. If they are followed by a relative or by the preposition *of*, they are expressed by *celui, celle, ceux, celles*; as, *I admire the writings of Bolingbroke and those of Hume*, *j'admire les écrits de Bolingbroke & ceux de Hume*.

5. That pronoun and the preposition *of*, are sometimes supplied by an *s* added to the noun; as, *the Emperor's influence in the college of cardinals was greatly superior to the French king's*, that is, *to that of the French king*, *l'influence de l'Empereur dans le college des cardinaux étoit beaucoup supérieure à celle du roi de France*.

EXERCISE.

^a I doubt not your good will, and desire ^b you
douter de *volonté* *prier*
 to accept ² this as a token of my gratitude | the
de accepter *gage* *reconnoissance*
 opposition Charles had to struggle with in the
opposition que Charles avoit à combattre
 courts of Aragon, was ^c more violent and obstinate
état Aragon ** violente opiniâtre*
 than ⁴ that which he had overcome in Castile | the
dont il avoit triomphé en Castille
 captain, like ^d a well bred man, had always given
capitaine en bien élevé *faire*
 up ^e his opinion to ⁴ that of his wife | but as grief
céder opinion *chagrin*
 operates variously on different minds, so the same
avoir differens effets sur *esprit aussi même*
 apprehension which depressed his voice elevated
*crainte, f. affoiblir * voix élever*

^a See p. 203. sect. 1.

^b See p. 197. sect. 1.

^c p. 187. sect. 1.

^d p. 147. sect. 2.

^e p. 212. sect. 1.

4 that of Mrs. Blifil | the opinion of 4 those who
 exalted the authority of a council above 4 that of
*élever * autorité du concile au dessus de*
 the Pope, spread wonderfully under their pontificates
Pape fit des progrès étonnans sous pontificat
 | the nobles forgetting ^a their jealousies and
noble oublier jalouse
 discontents, chose rather to see the supreme power
mécontentement aimer mieux voir suprême pouvoir
 in the hands of one of their countrymen whom
entre compatriote que
 they feared, than in 4 those of foreigners whom
*craindre * étranger*
 they despised | as he is ^b a member and prince of
*mépriser * comme membre, m.*
 the empire, as his dominions stretch along that
empire, m. état s'étendre le long de
 frontier which lies most exposed to the enemy, his
frontière être exposé
 claim is preferable in my opinion to 4 that of a
droit mieux fondé à mon avis que
 stranger | he waited only ^c for some decent pretext
*attendoit * un décent prétexte*
 to join his arms to the 5 emperor's | as the old
pour joindre arme, f. bon
 gentleman died before he was ordained, he chose
*vieillard mourir * recevoir † les ordres choisir **
 the church militant, and preferred the king's com-
*église militant préférer * com-*
 mission to the 5 bishop's | there are some minds
mission il est certains esprits
 whose affections like Mr. 5 Blifil's are solely placed
dont les affections comme n'ont pour objet

^a See p. 212. sect. 2. ^b See p. 145. sect. 1.

^c This proposition is not expressed.

on one single person. Thwackum was likewise
qu'une seule personne * *aussi*
 pretty assiduous in his visits; his file, however,
fort assidu dans visite, f. ton étoit
 was more severe than Mr. Allworthy's.
cependant severe

R U L E II.

1. *This* and *that*, being used absolutely, and their plurals *these* and *those*, are expressed by *ce* before the verb *to be*, when it is not followed by an adjective alone; as, *this is an imprudent step*, *c'est une démarche imprudente*; *this is my opinion*, *c'est mon opinion*.

2. When *this* and *these* relate to a noun expressed in the foregoing sentence, if they don't serve to distinguish it from another noun likewise expressed, they are rendered by the pronouns *il*, *elle*, *ils*, *elles* for the nominative, and *le*, *la*, *les* for the accusative, according to the gender and number of the noun to which they relate; as, *Mr. Allworthy certainly saw some imperfections in the captain, but these appeared to him no more than blemishes in a good character*, *Mr. Allworthy voyoit certainement des défauts dans le Capitaine, mais ils n'étoient à ses yeux que des imperfections légères qui se trouvoient dans un caractère excellent*.

3. *That* and *which* being separated in English, and not denoting any distinction, are expressed by *ce qui* for the nominative, and *ce que* for the accusative; they come immediately after one another, and keep the same place in the French, as *which* does in the English sentence; as, *I cannot call that justice which ruins a whole family*, *je ne saurois appeller justice ce qui ruine une famille entière*.

EXERCISE.

1 This was a satisfaction which ^a poor Sophia
 would have been incapable of tasting | he made use
 of the most powerful argument, and 1 this was the
 promise of half a crown | 1 this was truly the
 consequence, but 1 this was not all | I hope
 the world will be ^c so charitable as to think 1 these
 are not your real sentiments | many women envied
 her her fine clothes and would have been glad to
 have ^e purchased 2 these at the same rate | he
 reminded the gentleman of that excellent brandy
 which he had mentioned; 2 this was presently
 brought, and Partridge swallowed a large bumper |
 those books confirm men in the practice of virtue,
 and demonstrate plainly that 2 this must be our

^a See p. 181. sect. 1.^b See p. 126. sect. 3.^c p. 174. sect. 3.^d p. 197. sect. 2.^e This participle is declined.

guide, if we propose to arrive at the greatest
 guide, m. *avoir envie de arriver à*
 wordly happiness | his neighbours began to blame
*terrestre bonheur voisins * condamner*
 3 that as a rigour and severity which they before
*rigueur sévérité * auparavant*
 called justice | there can be no merit in having
*appeller * justice il ne peut y avoir de mérite à avoir*
 hazarded 3 that in your service, which I do not
basardé à service, m. point
 at all value.
du tout estimer.

R U L E III.

1. *What* may also be considered as a pronoun demonstrative, being sometimes used instead of *that which*; it is then rendered by *ce qui*, or *ce que*, according to the distinction given in the preceding rule, sect. 3: as, *what gratifies the senses softens the heart*, *ce qui flatte les sens amollit le cœur*; *I know what you love*, *je sais ce que vous aimez*.

2. With a preposition, it is expressed by *quoi*; as, *I know what he is fit for*, *je sais à quoi il est propre*.

3. *What* is sometimes used instead of *that which*, *those which*, and relates to a foregoing noun; in that case, *that* is expressed by *celui*, *celle*, and *those* by *ceux*, *celles*, according to the gender and number of the noun to which the pronoun relates; as, *the congratulations paid to her were not equal to what were conferred on Jones*; that is, *to those which were*, &c. *les compliments qu'elle reçut n'approcherent pas de ceux qu'on fit à Jones*.

^a See p. 146. sect. 2.

^b See p. 120 sect. 5.

E X E R C I S E.

That was ¹ what I wanted to debate with you |
 this is, ^a daughter, ¹ what I have resolved for myself;
 as for your brother, I think of a certain widow
 fer ^b him, and ^c you, my dear, shall marry our good
 neighbour, Mr. Spindle | it was, ² what I had
 resolved upon | that degree is scarce imaginable by
 those who have never felt any other emotions than
 what ^e have proceeded from appetite alone | the
 misfortunes of her friend had left her no appetite
 but ³ what Mrs. Fitzpatrick was to satisfy
 by her relation.

*voici résolu pour moi
 quant à penser à certain veuve
 voisin c'étoit se
 résoudre à degré à peine imaginable pour
 sentir d'autres émotions
 provenir seulement de l'appetit
 malheur amie ne lui avoient laissé d'autres
 goûts que devoir * satisfaire
 récit.*

R U L E IV.

1. When the pronoun *what*, with the next verb, is the nominative of the verb *to be*, the pronoun *ce* in French must be repeated before the verb *être*, and the

^a See p. 212, sect. 4. ^b See p. 200, sect. 3.

^c p. 194, sect. 4. ^d See p. 222, sect. 4.

^e This verb must be in the present.

preposition

preposition *de* put after it, if an infinitive comes next; as, *what I fear is to meet him*, *ce que crains c'est de le rencontrer*; *what I know is that they have been soundly beaten*, *ce que je sais c'est qu'ils ont été battus comme il faut*.

2. But *ce* must not be repeated if an adjective follows the verb *être*; as, *what I say is true*, *ce que je dis est vrai*.

3. If a substantive singular follows, it is indifferent to repeat *ce* or not; as, *what I say is truth*, *ce que je dis est la vérité*; or, *c'est la vérité*; but it should absolutely be repeated if the following noun was plural.

EXERCISE.

But ^a what charms ^{charmer} me above all expression ^{au-delà de toute expression} is, that my son has never valued himself upon that great estate which he has enjoyed ^{se prévaloir} ever since his ^{des} mother's death | all ^{biens dont} ^{jour} ^{toujours depuis} ^c what I can do is to quarter ^{tout} ^{pouvoir faire} ^{loger} you in my barn | ^{grange, f,} ^{rendre} ^{* situation encor} what made my case still more grievous, was, that my paramour, of whom I was ^{douloureux *} ^{bel.e} ^{dont} grown immoderately fond, shared the same distress | ^{devenir passionnément amoureux éprouver *} ^{même embarras} ⁱ what aggravated his concern, was, that Mrs. ^{augmenter *} ^{chagrin} ^{* Mde.}

^a See p. 197. sect. 1.

^b See p. 120. sect. 1.

^c A. 153. sect. 1.

Honour who had promised to enquire after Sophia,
promettre de s'informer de Sophie
 and to make her report to ^a him early the
de rendre réponse de bonne heure
 next morning, had disappointed ^a him | 1 what
le lendemain matin manquer de parole à
 I hope from this remonstrance, is only that we
attendre remontrance seulement nous
 plain people may not be served as if we were
*autres gens simples ne soyons pas traités **
^b idolaters | but 3 what Chievers chiefly wished
*idolâtre particulièrement désirer **
 to avoid was an interview between the King and
*de éviter * entrevue entre*
 Ximenes | 3 what was most necessary to ^a them,
** le plus nécessaire*
 was ^b money to pay their troops.
pour payer troupe, f.

OF PRONOUNS RELATIVE.

R U L E I.

1. It has been said before how the adjective and verb following *qui* agree with its antecedent; but if *qui* relates to antecedents of different persons, the verb and adjective must then be plural, and agree in person and gender with the most noble, that is, with the first person rather than with the second, and with the second rather than with the third; as, *you and I who were present, vous & moi qui étions présents.*

^a See p. 197. sect. 2.

^b See p. 140. sect. 1.
 X 2. Whom,

2. *Whom, that, which*, being accusatives, are rendered by *que*; as, *the book which you have bought*, le livre *que* vous avez acheté; *the man whom you know*, l'homme *que* vous connoissez.

3. *Who, whom*, are always rendered by *qui*, and *which* by *lequel*, when they are joined to any preposition but *of*; as, *for whom are you?* pour qui êtes vous? *here is the horse for which I have offered thirty guineas*, voici le cheval pour lequel j'ai offert trente guinées; *which* may likewise be expressed by *quoi* when it does not relate to animate things; as, *it is a remedy to which I am not used*, c'est un remède à quoi, or auquel je ne suis pas accoutumé.

E X E R C I S E.

Penelope, his wife, and ^a I, who am his son, ^b have
Penelope femme fils
lost the hope of seeing ^c him again | Narbal and ^a I
perdre espérance revoir Narbal
^a who were present ^b admired the power of the
** présent admirer * pouvoir*
gods | he felt those emotions of grief ² which men
*dieu éprouver * sentiment douleur*
generally feel on such ^d occasions | oh! where is
ordinairement éprouver dans pareil occasion oh où
the candour ² which I had a right to expect from
*candeur avoir * droit de attendre*
Cecilia | but Peter Angleria, an ^e Italian, who
Cecile Pierre Italien

^a See p. 194. sect. 3.

^c p. 197. sect. 1.

^e p. 144. rule x.

^b See p. 194. sect. 1.

^d p. 142. sect. 1.

resided at that time in the court of Spain was under
*vivre * alors à cour Espagne n'étoit point*
 no temptation to deceive the persons to 3 whom his
tenté de tromper personne, f.
 letters are addressed | the French ambassadors travelled
*lettre, f. adressé ambassadeur voyager **
 with a train of horses loaded ^a with gold and
suite, f. cheval chargé de or
 silver, an ^b equipage not very honorable for that
argent équipage qui faisoit peu d'honneur au
 prince by whom they were employed and infamous
prince qu'ils représentoient infame
 for those to 3 whom they were sent | it was visible
*pour ceux * envoyé il * visible*
 that he leaned towards the emperor from 3 whom
*pencher * pour*
 he had ^c both more to fear and more to hope | he
à craindre espérer
 had studied the history not only of his ^c own
étudier histoire, f. non seulement
 kingdoms, but of ^d those with 3 which they
royaume mais celle de
 were connected | but notwithstanding these
*avoir * des relations malgré*
 extravagancies to 3 which weak and enthusiastic
extravagance foible enthousiaste
 minds are generally prone, his understanding
esprit communément sujet esprit
 naturally penetrating and decisive retained its full
*naturellement pénétrant décisif conserver * toute sa*
 vigour.
force.

^a See p. 151. sect. 2.

^b See p. 144. rule x.

^c This word is not expressed ^d

R U L E II.

1. *Whose, of whom*, are rendered by *dont, de qui*, or *duquel, de laquelle, &c.* of *which* by *dont*, or *duquel*; but the following observations are to be made.

2. If the substantive which follows *whose* in English is nominative to the next verb, the sentence follows the same order in French as in English, and the article is put before the substantive following *dont*; as, *God, whose laws are eternal*, Dieu dont les lois sont éternelles.

If the substantive that precedes *of which* is nominative to the next verb, it comes after *dont* in French; as, *a disease the nature of which was unknown*, une maladie dont la nature étoit inconnue.

3. If the substantive which follows *whose*, or that which precedes *of which* are in the accusative, they must be put after their verb, and *dont* comes immediately before the nominative to that verb; as, *God, whose laws all men should reverence*, Dieu dont tous les hommes doivent respecter les lois; *he rejected an advice, the utility of which he did not know*, il rejetta un avis dont il ne sentoît pas l'utilité.

4. If that substantive is governed by a preposition, or a verb which governs one, *whose* must be rendered by *de qui*, or *duquel, de laquelle, &c.* and *of which*, by *duquel, &c.* which are put after the substantive; as, *God, whose laws all men should obey*, Dieu aux lois de qui tous les hommes doivent obéir; *it was a sentence, the rigour of which he could not submit to*; c'étoit une sentence à la rigueur de laquelle il ne pouvoit se soumettre.

E X E R -

E X E R C I S E.

He wrote to Charles with his usual boldness and
*écrire ** *ordinaire hardiesse*
 advised ^a him to dismiss all the strangers in his train
*conseiller ** *à de renvoyer* *étranger de suite, f.*
 whose ² number and ^b credit gave offence already to
nombre, m. *faveur porter ** *ombrage déjà*
 the Spaniards | his followers, whose ² reverence
Espagnol *sectateur* *respect*
 for the papal authority daily diminished, read
*l'autorité du pape tous les jours diminuer ** *lire **
^c Leo's anathemas with more ^d indignation than terror
Leon anathême *indignation* *terreur*
 | the other European princes could ^e not remain
*souverains de l'Europe pouvoir ** *demeurer*
 indifferent spectators of a contest, the ² decision
simple spectateur *différend* *décision*
 of which so nearly affected ^f them | the election of
*de si près toucher ** *élection*
 an emperor was a point more interesting to Leo
*empereur ** *point* *intéressant pour Leon*
 than a theological controversy which he did not
théologique dispute
 understand and ¹ of which he did not foresee the
*entendre ** *prévoir **
 consequences | he was impatient to wash away
conséquence *brûler ** *du desir de laver*
 the infamy of having lost Parma and Placentia, the
bonte, f. *perdre Parme* *Plaisance*

^a See p. 197. sect. 2.^b See p. 150. sect. 1.^c p. 153. sect. 1.^d p. 172. sect. 1.^e This negative is expressed by *ne* only.^f See p. 197. sect. 1.

2 acquisition of which had reflected so much a lustre
acquisition jeter lustre
 on the administration of his predecessor Julius |
sur administration prédécesseur Jules
 this surgeon, whose 3 name I have forgot,
chirurgien nom oublier
 had the first character in his profession | in
*jouer * de réputation profession dans*
 reality a footman is often a wit, as well as
le fait laquais souvent bel esprit
 a beau, at the expence of the lord whose
petit maître aux dépens seigneur
 3 livery he wears | his subjects trembled at the
*livrée porter sujet trembler **
 b thoughts of a rupture with France, the fatal 3 effects
pensée rupture funeste effet
 of which on their commerce they had often
sur commerce
 experienced | a man unknown to the persons who
éprouver inconnu personne
 gave their suffrages in his favour, and unacquainted
*donner * suffrage en faveur ignorant*
 c with the manners of the people, or the interests of
mœurs, f. peuple, m. intérêt
 the state, the 3 government of which they conferred
*état gouvernement confier **
 upon d him, was e unanimously raised to the papal
à d'une voix unanime élevé sur la chaire de
 throne | not only the emperor, but all the
St. Pierre non seulement
 princes through whose 4 territories he had to pass
*prince par état devoir * passer*

^a See p. 156. *sect. I.*

^b This word must be singular

c This preposition is not expressed.

^d See p. 197. sect. 2.

See p. 120. sect. 3.

granted

granted ^a him a safe conduct | Morone, whose
*accorder ** *sauf-conduit*
 vigilant ⁴ eye ^b nothing escaped, posted a body of
*vigilant œil rien échapper * à poster ** *corps*
 troops in their way | he had received a ^c learned
*troupes, f. sur chemin recevoir ** *savant*
 education during the 4 progress of which he gave
*éducation dans cours donner **
 many indications of ^d uncommon vigour and acuteness
plusieurs marque, f. extraordinaire force, f. pénétration
 of genius.
d'esprit.

R U L E III.

1. *Which*, being attended by the prepositions *to*, *in*, *into*, may be rendered by *auquel*, *dans lequel*, &c. as we have seen before, page 230; but *où* may be used instead of it, especially when it denotes *time*, *place*, *condition*, *design*, *end*; as, *the house in which he lives*, *la maison où il demeure*.

2. *From*, *out of which*, *through*, *by which*, are also rendered by *d'où* and *par où*, speaking of *place*, *condition*; as, *the trouble from which I have extricated them*, *l'embarras d'où je les ai tirés*.

E X E R C I S E.

He attacked the town ⁱ which Giron had only
attaquer ville seulement
 left a regiment of priests raised by the bishop of
laissé régiment prêtre levé évêque

^a See p. 197. sect. 2.

^c p. 162. sect. 6.

^d p. 159. sect. 4.

^b This word governs *ne* before the next verb.

Zamora] at last the day came in 1 which she
*enfin jour arriver ** *il*
 was allowed to return ^a to her former serenity |
lui fut permis de reprendre premier enjouement
 the little abatement which fruition had occasioned
refroidissement jouissance occasionner
 was highly over-balanced by the ^b considerations of
** fortement contre-balancé par considération*
 the affection which she visibly bore him, and of
attachement qu'il étoit visible qu'elle lui portoit
 the situation into 1 which he had ^c brought ^d her |
situation réduire
 his rout lay through a country cut ^e by rivers and
il devoit passer par pays coupé de riviere
 mountains, in 1 which the roads were almost im-
*montagne, f. route, f. * presque im-*
 practicable | the way through 2 which our hunters
praticable chemin par chasseur
 were to pass, was so beset with briars that it
*devoient passer * embarrassé de ronce, f. que cela*
 greatly obstructed their walk | she eagerly longed
*beaucoup retarder * marche, f. ardemment desirer **
 to see a place in 1 which she fancied ^f charms
*de voir lieu se figurer * charme, f.*
 short only of those which a raptured saint
qui ne le cédoient qu'à ceux que crée dans le ciel l'imagination
 imagines in heaven | Jones now related the
*exaltée d'un saint alors raconter **
 whole story, forgetting only a circumstance or
l'histoire entiere oublier seulement circonstance
 two, namely, every thing which passed on that day
savoir tout ce qui s'étoit passé le jour

^a This prep. is not expressed. ^b This word must be singular.

^c This participle is declined. ^d See p. 197. sect. 1.

^e See p. 151. sect. 2. ^f p. 140. sect. 1.

in I which he had fought with Thwaekum | my

cousin tells ^a me she has acquainted ^b you with
se battre
cousine dire à instruire de

the distress in I which she found ^b us.

embarras

*trouver **

R U L E IV.

1. The pronouns relative, *who, whom, that, which*, are sometimes left out in English; as, *the man you know, the book you have bought*, instead of, *the man whom you know, the book which you have bought*, they must always be expressed in French; as, *l'homme que vous connoissez, le livre que vous avez acheté.*

2. Sometimes the preposition which attends the relatives *who, whom, that, which*, is elegantly put after the verb; as, *the man whom you spoke for*; sometimes the relative is not expressed; as, *the man you spoke for*, instead of, *the man for whom you spoke*; but in French the preposition and the relative must always come before the verb; as, *l'homme pour qui vous avez parlé.*

3. *But* is sometimes used instead of the nominatives *who, that, and which*; it then governs its verb in the subjunctive, and *ne* before it; *there is no nation but has an idea of God*, *il n'y a point de nation qui n'ait une idée de Dieu.*

^a See p. 197. sect. 2.

^b See p. 197, sect. 1.

E X E R C I S E.

It is ^a that, and not the law I protect you | and
c'est non protéger
^b though Clement endeavoured to soothe his vindicative
s'efforcer d'appaïser vindicatif
nature by ^c granting ^d him a commission of legate,
caractère accorder commission légat
the injury I he had received intirely dissolved the
*injure entièrement rompre **
tie which had united ^e him to Charles | you are
lien unir
the person I I want | there was upon her cheek a
*personne, f. demander y avoir * sur joue*
modest blush I convinces me ^f she is honest | you
modeste rougeur persuader bonnête
will find ^f I have not exaggerated in the account
voir exagérer détail
I I have given you of the wretchedness of the
faire à misère, f.
family | I had a little specimen of this temper of
*famille * échantillon humeur*
& his upon the very occasion I I have mentioned |
dans cette occasion même parler de
may I beg to know the sum you have occasion
pouvoir demander à savoir somme, f. avoir besoin
2 for ? | my dear guineas are taken from the place
de cher guinée enlevé lieu
I had ^h put them 2 in, and I shall never see ^e them
mettre revoir

^a See p. 221. sect. 2.^c p. 115, sect. 3.^e p. 197, sect. 1.^g p. 219, sect. 6.^b See p. 128.^d p. 197. sect. 2.^f p. 126. sect. 3.^h This participle is declined.
again

again | ^a though the captain had effectually demolished
^{capitaine} ^{ruiner}
^b poor Partridge, yet he had not reaped the harvest
^{pendant} ^{recueillir} ^{fruit qu'il}
he hoped ² for | he acquainted ^c her ^d he had a
^{en étoit} ^{dire *} ^{*}
favour to ask of ^c her which he hoped ^d she would
^{faveur à demander à} ^{espérer}
comply ² with | I began seriously to reflect on the
^{accorder à} ^{commencer *} ^{sérieusement à réfléchir sur}
miscarriages of my former life ; on the errors I had
^{étourderie} ^{passé} ^{vie} ^{faute, f.}
been guilty ² of, and on the misfortunes which I
^{coupable} ^{malheur}
had ^e brought on myself | in the situation he then
^{s'attirer} ^{situation} ^{alors}
stood ² in, he could not do otherwise ^f than comply
^{se trouver *} ^{pouvoir *} ^{faire autrement} ^{se conformer}
with the wishes of his sovereign.
^à ^{desir} ^{souverain.}

R U L E V.

1. *Which*, though in the nominative or accusative, is expressed by *lequel* when it means comparison ; as, when speaking of two different objects, I say, *I don't know which is the best*, je ne sai lequel est le meilleur.

2. *Who*, *which*, and *that*, are also rendered by *lequel* when we wish to avoid some ambiguity ; as in this sentence : *Alexander, Philip's son, who reigned the first in Asia*, Alexandre fils de Philippe qui régna le premier

^a See p. 128.

^b See p. 181. sect. 1.

^c p. 197. sect. 2.

^d p. 126. sect. 3.

^e This participle is declined.

^f See p. 170. sect. 1.

en Asie; *qui* may relate both to Alexander and Philip; whereas by using *lequel* in this manner, *Alexandre fils de Philippe lequel régna le premier en Asie*, the ambiguity will be removed, because *lequel* always relates to the former substantive.

E X E R C I S E.

Then weighing both parts in opposite scales, we
ensuite mettre les deux parties dans la balance
 shall see 1 which is to preponderate, or rather
devoir l'emporter plutôt
 1 which does preponderate | you have used two
se servir de
 different grammars: 1 which do you prefer? | and to
différent grammaire, f. préférer pour
 say the truth, there is on all points ^a a great dif-
dire vérité à tous égards diffé-
 ference between the reasonable passion which women
férence entre raisonnable passion
 at this age conceive towards men, and the idle
de âge concevoir pour sot
 and childish liking of a girl to a boy, 2 which
enfantin inclination fille pour garçon
 is often fixed on the outside ^b only, and on ^c things
s'attacher à extérieur que chose, f.
 of little ^d value | at the same time he whispered
*valeur en même tems dire * à*
^e me in the ear to take notice of a tabby cat that
à l'oreille de faire attention à tacheté chat
 sat in the ^f chimney corner, 2 which, as the old
*être * cheminée coin à ce que le*

^a See p. 148. sect. 1.

^b See p. 126. sect. 2.

^c p. 140. sect. 1.

^d p. 156. sect. 1.

^e p. 197. sect. 2.

^f p. 155. sect. 1.

knight told me, lay under as bad a report
*bon chevalier me dit avoir * aussi mauvaise réputation*
 as Moll White herself.

R U L E VI.

1. The pronouns relative *qui* and *que* must be repeated before each verb ; as, *I know a lady who dances extremely well and plays tolerably on the harpsichord*, *je connois une dame qui danse très bien & qui joue passablement du clavecin*; except when the verbs are joined by the conjunction *nor* ; as, *he is a man who neither drinks nor smokes*, *c'est un homme qui ne boit ni ne fume*.

When the verbs are in the same tenses, or govern the same cases, they may indeed sometimes be left out before the second verb ; but as the scholar will never be wrong in repeating them, the safest way is to do it.

E X E R C I S E.

^a Very grave and good ^b women exclaimed against
*grave honnête déclamer * contre*
 men ^c who begot children and then disowned ^c them
*faire * ensuite désavouer **
 | the serjeant ^d who well knew ^d what had happened,
*sergent savoir * ce qui arriver*
 and had heard that Jones was in a very dangerous
*entendre dire * dangereux*
 condition, immediately concluded that he was light-
*état sur le champ conclure * avoir * la tête*
 headed | there is a degree of courage ^e which not
sélée degré courage non

^a See p. 187. sect. 1.

^c p. 197. sect. 1.

^b See p. 142. sect. 1.

^d p. 226. sect. 1.

only becomes a woman, but is often necessary to
seulement devenir à pour
 enable her to discharge her duty | a young woman
aider à remplir devoir
 who loves, who doats ^a on ^b you, who dies for you,
adorer mourir pour
 & who has placed the utmost confidence in your
mettre toute sa confiance dans
 promises, and to that confidence has sacrificed every
promesse confiance sacrifier tout
 thing which is dear to ^c her.
ce qui cher.

R U L E V I I.

The relatives *who, whose, that, which*, govern the next verb in the subjunctive.

1. When they are preceded by a superlative, or by those adjectives, *the only one*, *le seul* ; *the first*, *le premier* ; *the second*, *le second*, &c. as, *I am the only broker who has morals*, *je suis le seul fripier qui ait de la morale*.

2. When that verb expresses *wish, condition, doubt, and uncertainty* ; as, *marry a woman that is rich and handsome, and she will make you unhappy*, *épousez une femme qui soit riche & belle, & elle vous rendra malheureux*.

3. After those pronouns indeterminate, which, in French, govern the negative *ne*, such as *none*, *not any*, *no body*, &c. *pas un, aucun, personne*, &c. but observe, that if the verb governed in the subjunctive, is attended by a negative in English, that negative is ex-

^a This preposition is not expressed.

^b See p. 204, sect. 4.

^c See p. 197, sect. 2.

pressed by *ne* only ; as, *I don't know any body that is more capable of it*, *je ne connois personne qui en soit plus capable* ; *there is hardly a street in London which I do not know*, *il y a à peine une rue à Londres que je ne connoisse*.

E X E R C I S E.

Christophus Columbus, by an effort of genius and
Christophe Colomb par effort génie
 of intrepidity, ^a the boldest and most successful
intrépidité hardi heureux
 that is recorded in the annals of mankind,
dont il fait mention dans annales, f. genre humain
 added to all these kingdoms a new world, ^b the
ajouter † royaume monde, m.
 wealth of which was one considerable source of
richesses † une des sources capitales
 the power and grandeur of the Spanish monarchs
pouvoir grandeur des rois d'Espagne
 | this unwillingness to quit our friends is the most
répugnance à quitter
 amiable motive from ^c which we can derive the
aimable motif à pouvoir attribuer
 fear of death | you are the first of your name
crainte, f. mort nom
 I who has ever entertained so grovelling a thought |
jamais nourrir bas pensée
 Garrick was perhaps the greatest tragic ^d actor
** peut-être tragique acteur*
 the world has ever produced | you are the first
produire

^a See p. 187, sect. 1.

^b See p. 232, sect. 2.

^c p. 150, sect. 1.

^d p. 166, sect. 3.

^e p. 237, sect. 1.

woman ¹ that has ever despaired in a christian
country | the only supernatural agents ¹ which moderns
can use, are ghosts | ^a dear Sophy, be assured you
have not one thought ³ which I am not acquainted
with | I have not one acquaintance ³ who would
not rather be thought to dislike her husband than
to like ^c him | if you will take my advice, there
is not a man in the kingdom ^d can do your business
better than the barber who was with you last
night | there was scarce a wickedness ³ which I did
not meditate, in order for my relief | I have been
a great traveller, and there are few parts of Europe
with ³ which I am not acquainted.

R U L E VIII.

1. When the relative *which* has no antecedent expressed, but relates to the word *thing* then understood, it is expressed by *ce qui*, when it is nominative ;

^a See p. 212, sect. 4.

^c p. 197, sect. 1.

^e p. 120. sect. 2.

^b This prep. is not expressed.

^d See p. 237. sect. 1.

by *ce que*, when it is accusative; as, *he gets up very late, which is very unwholesome*; that is, *which thing is very unwholesome*, *il se leve très-tard, ce qui est fort mal-sain*.

2. After prepositions it may be expressed by *quoi* or *cela*; but the relative and preposition are sometimes supplied by an adverb, such as *ensuite*, *là-dessus*; as, *the gallery was cleared of all strangers, after which the debates began*, *on fit sortir tout le monde de la galerie, après quoi; or, ensuite les débats commencèrent*.

E X E R C I S E .

Jenny was now summoned to appear in person
 * *alors sommé de comparoître en personne*
 before Mrs. Deborah, ¹ which she immediately did [
devant *sur le champ faire* *
 but Jones begged the gentleman to proceed, ¹ which
prier * *cavalier de continuer*
 he did as follows: | they declared they would;
 * *de la maniere suivante* *déclarer* *
 not obey commands ^a which they considered as
obéir à ordre, m. *regarder* * *comme*
 illegal; upon ² which Francis turning toward the
injuste *François se tourner vers*
 Imperial ambassadors represented to ^b them the
ambassadeur de l'empire représenter
 impossibility of performing ^c what he had undertaken,
impossibilité accomplir *entreprendre*
 and offered, in lieu of Burgundy, to pay the
offrir * *au lieu de Bourgogne de payer*

^a See p. 230, sect. 2.

^b See p. 197. sect. 2.

^c p. 226, sect. 1.

^a Emperor two millions of crowns | fear rendered
*Empereur quatre millions d'écus crainte, f. rendre **
^b them deaf ^c to ^d his threats and intreaties; upon

sourd menace priere
 2 which resolving not to survive the disgrace of
résolu de survivre à honte, f.

the day, he rushed into the thickest of the
*cette journée se précipiter * au plus fort de la*
 enemy | unfortunately for ^e him the doctor was
mélée malheureusement pour docteur

master of almost every other science, but that by
*passéder * presque toutes les autres sciences excepté celle qui*
 which he was to get his bread; in consequence of
devoit lui donner du pain en conséquence

2 which, the doctor, at the age of forty, had
âge de quarante ans n'avoit
 no bread to eat.
pas de pain à.

R U L E IX.

1. Though it is said of animals, nay of a child, its chief use is to denote inanimate things, and it forms in English a kind of neuter gender, for want of which in French, we use the pronouns *il, elle*, for the nominative, and *le, la*, for the accusative; its plural *they, them*, is expressed by *ils, ils, les*.

2. When these pronouns *it, them*, come after verbs and adjectives which govern the preposition *de* in French, they are expressed by *en*, which comes immediately before the verb, except the second persons and first plural of the imperative, when they are not at-

^a See p. 154, sect. 4.

^c p. 151, sect. 2.

^e p. 200, sect. 3.

^b See p. 197, sect. 1.

^d p. 212, sect. 2.

tended by a negative; as, *I speak of it*, j'en parle; *speak of it*, parlez en; *do not speak of it*, n'en parlez point.

3. After the prepositions *to*, *in*, *into*, *at*, or after verbs and adjectives which in French govern the prepositions *à*, *dans*, they are expressed by *y*, which likewise precedes its verb, save the exception given for *en*; as, *I catch you at it*, je vous y prends; *catch them at it*, prenez les y.

4. These pronouns *en* and *y* are said of persons as well as things; as, *you like my sister*, vous aimez ma sœur, vous en parlez toujours; *as soon as a man is dead*, people do not think any more of him, aussitôt qu'un homme est mort, on n'y pense plus.

It must at the same time be observed to the scholar, that though in some few instances, like the last, *y* may be used, the safest way is to express the pronouns *him*, *her*, by *lui*, as in most occasions it would be ridiculous to do the contrary.

E X E R C I S E.

While the king was employed with one part
tandis que * *employé* *partie*
 of his army in the siege of that town, Villalva,
 armée à *siege* *ville*
 an ^a officer of ^b great ^c experience and courage,
 officier *expérience* *courage*
 attacked the other and cut it to pieces | Charles
attaquer * *autre* *mettre* * *en* *pieces*

^a See p. 144, rule x.

^b See p. 159, sect. 4.

^c p. 148, sect. 1.

received

received the account of this signal and unexpected
 * *nouvelle* *signalé* *inattendu*
 success that had crowned his arms with a mode-
succès *qui venait de couronner* *arme, f.* *modé-*
 ration, which, if ^a it had been real, would have
ration *réel*
 done ^a him more honour than the greatest victory |
faire *honneur* *victoire, f.*
 far from reproaching ^a you ^b with the splendid
loin de reprocher *brillant*
 condition in ^c which I find you, I thank heaven for
état *trouver* *remercier ciel - de*
 2 it | happily for France, the king sensible ^b of
heureusement pour *connaissant*
 the importance of this fortress and ^b of the danger
importance *forteresse* *danger*
 to which ^a it was exposed, committed the defence
 * *exposé* *confier ** *défense*
 of 2 it to the Chavalier Bayard, distinguished among
Chevalier *distingué* *parmi*
 his contemporaries by the appellation of the knight
contemporain *par* *nom* *chevalier*
 without fear and without reproach | Thwackum
peur *reproche*
 expressed some surprise at these emotions, and
*témoigner ** *quelque surprise de* *émotion*
 asked the reason of 2 them | ^d poor Sophia herself
*demander ** *raison, f.* *Sophie*
 never suspected 2 it, and her heart was irretrievably
*se douter ** *de* *cœur* *** *sa s retour*

^a See p. 197. sect. 2.

^c p. 235, sect. 1.

^d p. 181. sect. 1.

^b This preposition is not ex-
 pressed.

lost, ^a before she suspected ¹ it was in danger |
*perdu avant que pressentir * en danger*
 this vice was incurable in ^b him, ^a tho' he had
*vice * incurable chez*
 often smarted for ² it | the doors of the great are not
souvent souffrir de
 less easy to find, ^c than it is difficult to get
facile à trouver difficile
 entrance into ³ them | the nobles, intigated by ^a
pénétrer excité par
 mean jealousy of that spirit of independence,
bas jalousie esprit indépendance
 openly favoured the pretensions of the court, or
*ouvertement favoriser * prétention cour*
 at the utmost did not oppose ³ them | he seems
*au moins s'opposer * à paroître*
 to have been much ^d a stranger to controversies of
très étranger controverse, f.
 that kind, and to have been little interested in ³ them
genre, m. prendre peu d'intérêt à
 | the emperor's attempts upon Burgundy were not
*tentative, f. sur Bourgogne **
 more fortunate, ^a though in both those provinces,
heureux dans ces deux
 Francis was equally ill prepared to resist ³ them |
également mal préparé à résister à
 he not only maintained the tenets of the church
*non seulement défendre * dogme, m. église*
 because ¹ they were antient, but he adhered to
*parce que * ancien adhérer **
³ them with the zeal of a theologian and the
zele théologien

^a See p. 128.

^c p. 170, sect. 2.

^b See p. 200, sect. 3.

^d This article is not expressed.
 tenaciousness

tenaciousness of a disputant | she acquainted them
opiniâtreté *ergoteur* *apprendre* & à
 a with b what c had befallen Jones, and begged them to
arriver à *prier* & de
 take care of d him.
avoir soin

R U L E X.

1. When a verb governs one of the pronouns *le, la, les*, with one of the personal *me, te, nous, vous*, these come first; as, *he gives it me, il me le donne; he gives it thee, il te le donne; but, le, la, les come before lui, leur; as, he gives it him, il le lui donne.*

2. If the verb is in any of the second persons, or first plural of the imperative without a negation, *le, la, les* always comes first; as, *give it us, donnez le nous.*

3. The pronouns *y* and *en* are placed immediately after the pronouns personal; as, *I shall speak to you about it, je vous en parlerai; I shall follow you there, je vous y suivrai.*

4. But when the verb is in the imperative, instead of saying, *donnez moi en, give me some; donne toi en, give thyself some; we say, donnez m'en, donne t'en; nor do we say, transporte t'y, go thither; envoyez moi y, send me there; but, transportes y toi; envoyez y moi. Observe likewise, that in verbs of the first conjugation an s is added to the second person singular of the imperative, when it comes before y; as, portes y, carry there.*

^a This prep. is not expressed

^c See p. 83, sect. 1.

^b See p. 226, sect. 1.

^d p. 200, sect. 3.

E X E R C I S E.

I have bought new pamphlets, and I shall send
acheter brochure envoyer
 1 them to you to morrow morning | I have promised
demain matin promettre
 1 it to him, upon condition that he shall lend 1 it
à condition prêter
 you | send 2 them to me, if you are not sure to come
sûr de
 | I know the captain will well reward them for ^a it |
savoir capitaine récompenser de
 Mr. Jones having determined to go to the masquerade
résoudre de bal masqué
 that evening, Mr. Nightingale offered ^b him to
*sair là offrir * à de*
 conduct 3 him thither | when you carried 3 her
*conduire y quand mener **
 thither last year, it almost turned ^c her head |
*y l'année dernière cela presque tourner **
 his ^d own good sense, would not have suffered ^e him
sens permettre à
 to proceed so abruptly, if you had not compelled
se conduire brusquement forcer
 3 him to ^e it | having often received an invitation
ayant reçu plusieurs fois invitation
 from my friend, Sir Roger de Coverley, to
de la part de le chevalier Roger de Coverley d'aller
 pass away a month with him in the country, I
passer à campagne, f.

^a See p. 246, sect. 2.^b See p. 197, sect. 2.^c p. 215, sect. 3.^d This word is not expressed.^e p. 247, sect. 3.

last week accompanied 3 him thither | you and I,
la semaine dernière accompagner
 my dear, ^a have often taken notice ^b of his pride,
 remarquer *orgueil*
 and you have have rallied 3 him upon ^c it.
 railler *de*

R U L E X I.

1. The pronouns *it*, *them*, are not expressed after the following prepositions, which then become adverbs,

A côté, <i>afide, by</i>	Au deffous, <i>below</i>
En deçà, <i>on this fide</i>	Par deffous, <i>under</i>
Au-delà, <i>on that fide</i>	Au travers, } <i>across, through</i>
Auprès, <i>near, by</i>	à travers, }
Deffus, <i>upon</i>	Tout contre, <i>hard by</i>
Deffous, <i>underneath</i>	Tout auprès, <i>just by</i>
Au-deffus, <i>above, over</i>	Vis-a-vis, <i>over-againft</i>
Par deffus, <i>over and above</i>	Autour, }
	à l'entour, } <i>about</i>

As, you are upon it, vous êtes dessus; he lives just by it, il demeure tout auprès.

But, as some prepositions can never become adverbs, another turn must then be given to the French sentence; as, *Irus fears poverty, and Laertes the shame of it*; Irus craint la pauvreté, & Laertes la honte qui y est attachée.

2. Sometimes both the pronoun and preposition are left out; as, *this work has great merit in it*, cet ouvrage a beaucoup de mérite.

^a See p. 194, sect. I.

c p. 246, sect. 2.

^b This word is not expressed.

3. Yet when inanimate objects are personified in such a manner that actions are attributed to them, we use the pronouns *lui, leur, eux, elles*, as well as for persons; as, *this sword is good, I owe my life to it, cette épée est bonne, je lui dois la vie*.

They may also be used in answer to interrogations, and after the impersonal *c'est*, it is; as, in *Gilblas, voilà mon pourpoint, c'est lui-même*; this is my doublet, that is it. You may also, according to the gender and number of their antecedent, use the relatives *le, la, les*, which come before the verb; as, *est-ce là votre livre? Oui, ce l'est?* Is this your book? Yes, it is? *Sont-ce là vos boucles? Oui, ce les sont?* Are these your buckles? Yes, &c.

EXERCISE.

As for the window to that room, it was
Quant à fenètre, f. de chambre, f. il
 impossible for any creature larger than a cat to have
impossible à tout animal gros chat d'avoir
 made his escape through it | it is necessary that he
pu passer nécessaire
 should keep some arms for his own safety: for
soit muni de quelque arme, f. pour propre sûreté car
 his house has been beset more than once, and it
maison assiéger une fois il
 is not many nights ago that we thought we^b heard
*n'y a que quelques jours croire * entendre*
 thieves about it | ^c Sir Roger was proceeding in
*voleur chevalier continuer * à*

^a See p. 176, sect. 2.

^b This verb must be in the present of the infinitive.

^c See p. 139, sect. 1.

the character of him, when we saw him make
nous le dépeindre *lorsque* *†* *venir*
 up to ^a us with two or three hazle twigs in
coudrier baguette, f. à
^b his hand, that he had cut in Sir Roger's woods
couper dans *bois*
 as he came through them | at a little distance
en passant *à* *petite distance*
 from Sir Roger's house, among the ruins of an old
parmi *ruine, f.* *ancien*
 abbey, there is a long walk of aged elms, which are
abbaye est *allée* *vieux orme, m.*
 shot up so ^c very high that when one passes under
s'élever *baut* *lorsque on passer*
 them, the rooks and crows that rest upon the
grolle *corneille qui sont perchées à*
 tops of them, seem to be cawing in another
leur sommet paroître *crier dans*
 region | there was not a maid in the parish ^d that
région *** *fille* *paroisse*
 would take a pin of her, though she would
vouloir accepter épingle *quand même elle*
 offer a bag of money with it | his face, besides
l'accompagneroit d'un sac d'argent *physionomie outre*
 being the picture of health, had in ² it the
qu'elle étoit l'image de la santé *porter **
 most apparent marks of sweetness and good nature
certain marque, f. *douceur* *bonté*
 | I have been ^e the more particular in this account,
exact *détail*

^a See p. 200, sect. 1.

^b See p. 215, sect. 1.

^c This word is not expressed. ^d p. 242. sect. 3.

^e See p. 180, sect. 1.

^a because there is scarce ^a village in England ^b that
 has not a Moll White in ² it | the assiduities and
 veneration which you impute to him seem to carry
 an haughtiness in ² them, as if he thought
 his address has a merit in ² it, that is more than
 an equivalent to a woman's love | the association
 continued to subsist after the emperor's
 departure | the members of ² it upon pretext of
 defending the coasts against the descents of the
 corsairs of Barbary refused to lay down ^c their arms |
 Sophia had passed the last twenty-four hours
 in no very desirable manner; during a large
 part of ² them she had been entertained by her aunt
 with lectures of prudence | the pilgrims drink of the
 water of that well and attribute many virtues
 to ³ it.

^a See p. 180, sect. 2.

^b See p. 242. sect. 3.

^c p. 215, sect. 1.

R U L E XII.

The pronouns possessive *its* and *their*, being said of inanimate things, are also expressed by *son, sa, ses, leur*.

1. When their substantives belong to the same verb as the nouns of which they are said; as, *the town has its pleasures*, *la ville a ses plaifirs*.

2. When they are preceded by a preposition; as, *I hate the town with all its diversions*, *je hais la ville avec tous ses plaifirs*.

3. Otherwise they are rendered by *en*; as, *London is beautiful*, *j'admire en France*, *la ville de Londres est belle*, *j'en admire les rues*.

E X E R C I S E.

Jealousy is a capricious passion, which does not always square its conduct by the straight rule of reason | *Paris has its charms; but, to me they are like those of a coquette* | *charity does not adopt the vices of its objects* | *the finest skin wrinkles in a few years, and loses the strength of its*

Jalousie capricieuse passion
régler conduite, f. sur exact règle
raison Paris ils sont pour moi
comme coquette charité adapter
vice objet peau se rider en
peu année perdre force, f.

^a See p. 222. §. Et. 4.

^b This article is not expressed.

^a colourings

colourings so soon, that we have scarce time to
coloris en si peu de tems à peine tems de
 admire ^b it; he raised the suburbs of the city,
admirer relever fauxbourg ville
 strengthened its fortifications, and threw into it a
augmenter fortification jeter
 numerous garrison under the command of brave
nombreux garnison sous commandement brave
 and experienced officers.
expérimenté officier

OBSERVATIONS upon the PRONOUNS *le, en, y.*

1. These pronouns must often be expressed in French when they are not in English; they are useless in the latter language, and would only weaken the sentence by a tedious repetition; in the former they must be expressed to make the sense complete; thus, if I ask in English, *are you content?* *are you her daughter?* the answer is, *I am*, or *I am not*; these sentences are not complete in French; you must say, what you are, or are not; and instead of repeating the adjective *content*; or, the substantive and pronoun, *her daughter*; you make use of the pronoun relative *le, la, les*, and say, according to gender, *je le suis*, or *je la suis*; sometimes *so* is used in English instead of repeating the adjective, it is likewise expressed by *le*; as, *if I was so*, *si je l'étois*.

2. *Le*, when it relates to a substantive feminine makes *la*; and *les* when it relates to a substantive plural, otherwise it is indeclinable.

^a This word must be singular.

^b See p. 246. sect. 1.

^c See p. 247. sect. 3.

3. I ask again, *is your father in his room*; I am answered, *he is*, or *he is not*; in French you must say, where he is, or is not, and instead of repeating *in his room*, you use the relative *y*; and say, *il y est*, or *il n'y est pas*; *y* stands for, *in it*, *in them*, &c.

4. If I ask, *have you got books*; the answer is, *I have*, or *have not*, here the relative *en* must be used, *j'en ai*, or *je n'en ai pas*; *en*, stands for *some*, *any*, of him, of her, of it, of them, &c.

5. *En* is likewise used instead of *one*, and its plural *ones*, when they are joined to an adjective supposed to be in the accusative; but when the adjective is plural, it must be preceded by the preposition *de*; as, *I have a good one*, *j'en ai un bon*; *I have good ones*, *j'en ai de bons*.

6. *En* is also put before a verb that governs an adjective, or a noun of number and quantity without a substantive; as, *how many guineas have you?* *I have two*; *combien de guinées avez vous?* *J'en ai deux*.

EXERCISE.

Having at length finished his laboured harangue,
enfin finir pénible harangue, f.
 he proceeded to business, and was more expeditious
*se mettre * à l'ouvrage * prompt*
 in finishing ^a than he had ¹ been in beginning | she
à à commencer
 told her she was certainly in love with this young
** certainement amoureux de*
 fellow—^b I in love, madam! I assure you I ¹ am
homme
 not—why if you ¹ was, I assure you I see no
quand même seriez je ne vois

^a See p. 170 sect. 2.

^b See p. 201. sect. 6.

reason why you should be ashamed of ^a it, for ^b he
pas humilié de
 is certainly a very pretty fellow | Mr. Allworthy who
joli garçon
 had settled all his affairs in this world, and ^c was
arranger affaire, f. en
 as well prepared as it is possible for human nature
préparé possible à
 to be, received this information with the ^d utmost
nouvelle plus parfait
 calmness and unconcern | esteem and gratitude are
tranquillité indifférence estime, f. reconnoissance
 the proper motives to love, as youth and beauty
propre aiguillon amour comme jeunesse beauté
 are to desire | ^e he was by nature suspicious, and
*desir * naturellement soupçonneux*
 had been particularly ^f so since the loss of his
encor davantage depuis mort
 spouse | may I crave the favour to know if your
épouse oserois je prendre la liberté de demander
 name is not Jones ? to ^f which the other answered,

that it ¹ was | Flatterers repeat to us princes,
*ce * les flatteurs nous répètent à nous autres princes*
 that we are heaven's vice-gerents ; let us be ² so,
ciel vice-gerant
 and let the only thing out of our power be to do ill
que le seul pouvoir de faire du mal nous fait ôté
 | were I in your place ; why, what would you do
si j'étois à place eh bien que faire
 if you ³ were ? | my Aunt Hervey was there, and

^a See p. 246. sect. 2.

^c p. 241. sect. 1.

^e p. 203. sect. 1.

^b See p. 208. sect. 1.

^d p. 159. sect. 4.

^f p. 245. sect. 2.

was pleased to say, we should make the finest
elle eut la bonté de faire
 couple^a in England, if my sister had no objection
couple s'opposer à*
 | my father and both my uncles were there; so
*mes deux oncles * aussi*
 3 were^b my^c mother and sister: my brother happily
heureusement
 3 was not | he felt more delight in having saved
*ressentir * plaisir de sauver*
 Sophia,^d than she^e herself 4 received from being
*Sophie éprouver * de se voir*
 saved | from whence come you? that letter
bors de danger d'où venir lettre, f.
 will 4 inform you: I have 6 another which requires
informer de exiger
 haste | I have some serious business with Mr. Bel-
célérité quelque sérieux affaire, f.
 lamy, and you want sleep I 4 am sure | he had
avoir besoin de dormir
 already put up his whole stock of linen in f it,
déjà mettre tout son linge
 consisting of four shirts: to g which he now added
*consistant en chemise alors ajouter**
 6 eight for Mr. Jones | if the top of the hill be
sommet montagne, f.
 properest to produce melancholy thoughts, I suppose
propre à faire naître mélancolique réflexion supposer
 the bottom is the likeliest to produce merry
vallée doit selon toute apparence produire agréable
 5 ones | there was no article of his creed in
il n'y avoit pas un article de symbole

^a See p. 183. sect. 3.

^b See p. 212. sect. 2.

^c The two nominatives must come before their verb.

^d See p. 170. sect. 2.

^e See p. 210. sect. 3.

^f p. 247. sect. 1.

^g p. 245. sect. 2.

which

^a which he had, a stronger faith ^b than he ^c had in
 witchcraft | this young fellow among many other
 sorcellerie ^{plus de foi}
 bad qualities had, ^{homme parmi} one very diabolical | though
 mauvais qualité ^{diabolique}
 I took great ^e delight in books, there were other
 prendre plaisir à lire ^{*}
 pleasures in which I was capable of taking much
 jouissance ^{pouvoir * prendre}
 greater | if the voice of Sophia had really an
 voix Sophie ^{* réellement}
 effect on the horses, it had very little on the
 quelque pouvoir sur cheval ^{*}
 rider.
 cavalier.

OF PRONOUNS INTERROGATIVE.

1. *Who* and *whom* being used interrogatively, are al-
 ways expressed by *qui*; as, *who is there?* *qui est là?*
whom do you see? *qui voyez vous?* you may likewise
 say, *qui est ce qui est là?* and, *qui est ce que vous voyez.*

2. *Whose*, signifying to whom a thing belongs, is
 rendered by *à qui*, which must be immediately follow-
 ed by the verb; as, *whose book is this?* *à qui est ce*
livre? otherwise it is generally rendered by *de qui*; as,
whose part do you take? *de qui prenez vous le parti?*
 We should likewise say, *quel parti prenez vous?*

3. *Which* is still expressed by *lequel*; as, *which of*
the two will you have? *lequel des deux voulez vous?*

E X E R C I S E S

^a See p. 242. sect. 3.
^c p. 149. sect. 2,

^b See p. 170. sect. 2.
^d p. 142. sect. 1.

4. *What*, being joined or related to a substantive is expressed by *quel*, and agrees with that substantive in gender and number ; as, *what book have you bought ?* *quel livre avez vous acheté ?* *I have heard great news, what are they ?* *j'ai appris de grandes nouvelles, quelles sont elles ?* though it would be better to repeat the substantive and say, *quelles sont ces nouvelles ?*

5. The article indefinite, which is sometimes put in English between *what* and the next substantive, is not expressed in French ; as, *what a situation ?* *quelle situation ?* and if the verb *to be* follows, it is then generally supplied by the conjunction *que* ; as, *what an illustrious house is the house of Bourbon ?* *quelle illustre maison que la maison de Bourbon, or, l'illustre maison que la maison de Bourbon ?*

6. *What*, before a verb, is expressed by *que*, or, *qu'est-ce que* ; but if the latter is used, the nominative must come before the verb ; as, *what does your brother say ?* *que dit votre frere, or, qu'est-ce que votre frere dit ?* *que* and *qu'est-ce que* generally govern *de* before the next adjective or participle ; as, *what do you find extraordinary in that ?* *que trouvez vous dans cela d'extraordinaire ?* if the verb has no other nominative, *what* is then expressed by *qu'est-ce qui* ; as, *what makes you so melancholy, qu'est-ce qui vous rend si triste ?*

7. Otherwise it is expressed by *quoi*, which likewise governs *de* before the following adjective ; as, *what do you complain of ?* *de quoi vous plaignez vous ?* *what then ?* *quoi donc ?* *what more ridiculous ?* *quoi de plus ridicule ?*

E X E R C I S E.

- 1 Who can read the story of the celebrated Arria
histoire, f. célèbre Arria
 without

without conceiving as high an opinion ^a of ^b her
sans concevoir haut opinion
gentleness and tenderness, as of her fortitude |
douceur sensibilité courage
I who ever left a throne to learn to sit in ^c it
abandonner le trône pour à s'asseoir
with more grace | I whom have you instructed to
grace instruire à
represent your pretended uncle? | oh, madam,
représenter prétendu oncle
2 whose favour can I hope for, if I lose my
faveur pouvoir espérer perdre
d mama's | 4 what reader does not know that
maman ignorer
philosophy and religion in time moderated and at
philosophie religion avec le tems modérer
last extinguished this grief | 4 what must be the
enfin guérir le chagrin devoir
dreadful ^e consequence of my disobedience? | 4 what
affreux suite, f. désobéissance
motives have induced you to withdraw from the
motif déterminer à se retirer
society of mankind, and to betake yourself ^f to a
société genre humain à embrasser
course of life to ^g which it sufficiently appears you
genre, m. pour on voit bien
were not born | 5 what an unhappy situation is
né malheureux situation
that which obliges her, in her own defence, to
obliger pour sa propre défense à
expose their failings? | 5 what a low and tiresome
mettre au jour défaut bas ennuyeux

^a See p. 151. sect. 2.

^b See p. 212. sect. 2.

^c p. 247. sect. 3.

^d p. 222. sect. 5.

^e This word must be plural.

^f This prep. is not expressed.

^g See p. 230. sect. 3.

^h See p. 222. sect. 4.

life is ^a that which I lead in the forests with stupid
mener forêt stupide
 animals; ^b I who am the image of man | 5 what
animal image
 a delicious neck she has | 6 what are the terrors
beau cou terreur
 of friendship to what a wife feels
amitié en comparaison de ce que souffre une femme
 on those occasions? | 6 what demonstrates the beauty
dans prouver
 and excellence of any thing, but its reverse? |
excellence d'une chose si ce n'est son contraire
 7 what more laudable than the propagation of our
louable propagation
 species? | find her, replied Western; 7 what! have
espèce trouver répondre
 you been fighting for a wench?
se battre coquine?

OF PRONOUNS INDETERMINATE.

R U L E. I.

1. *One*, when it is not used as a noun of number, determining a certain quantity, may be considered as a pronoun indeterminate, which is rendered in French by *on*; as, *one says*, *on dit*; its corresponding possessive *one's* is expressed by *son*, *sa*, *ses*.

2. *One* is also sometimes rendered in French by *quelqu'un*, *une personne*; as, *you have to do with one who does not fear you*, *vous avez affaire à quelqu'un qui ne vous craint pas*.

^a See p. 222, sect. 4.

^b See p. 194, sect. 3.

3. The pronouns personal *we*, *they*, when they relate to no particular persons, and sometimes the substantives *people*, *man*, or *men*, are rendered by *on*. This pronoun being always singular, will have the verb, adjective, or pronoun relating to it, in the singular; as, *they say he will not be elected*, on dit qu'il ne sera pas élu.

Observe, that in narrations the pronouns *we*, *they*, tho' relating to persons named before, are sometimes emphatically rendered by *on*.

4. The pronoun *it*, when it is nominative to a passive verb, and relates to no particular thing, is also expressed by *on*, and the verb is changed from the passive into the active voice; as, *it is said*, on dit.

5. *On* must be repeated before all the different verbs of a sentence; as, *people often blame or approve at random*, on blâme ou l'on approuve souvent au hasard.

6. Instead of *on* it is better to use *l'on*; after *and*, *et*; *if*, *si*; *where*, *où*; *or*, *ou*; and after *que* before a word beginning with one of those syllables *con*, or *con*; as, *it is said and thought*, on dit & l'on croit; but *on* must always be preferred when it is followed by *le*, *la*, *les*, *lui*, *leur*; as, *if they say so*, si on le dit.

EXERCISE.

When I one parts with I one's cruelty, I one
quand *renoncer à* *crûauté*
 parts with I one's power, and when I one has parted
pouvoir
 with that, I fancy I one is old and ugly | I one
à l'un & à l'autre s'imaginer *vieille* *laide*
 makes lovers as fast as I one pleases, and they live as
faire *amant* *vite* *vouloir* *exister*
 long as I one pleases, and then if I one pleases, one
long-tems *puis*
 makes ^a more | this gentleman ^bwhom Mr. Jones now
davantage *cavalier* *en ce moment*

^a See p. 253, sect. 6.

^b See p. 230. sect. 2.

visited, was ^a what ³ they call a man of the world,
vifiter ^a *appeller*
 that is to say, a man who directs his conduct in this
c'est-à-dire *régler* *conduite*, i. dans
 world, as ² one who being fully persuaded there is
absolument persuadé qu'il n'y en
 no other, is resolved to make the most of
à point d'autre *résolu de tirer de celui-ci le meilleur parti*
 this | consider you are speaking to ² one of your
possible *songer*
 own sex, to an aunt, and I hope you are convinced
sex, m. *tante* *se flatter* *convaincu*
 you speak to a friend | is it possible that ² one ^c so
amie *est il possible*
 young and beautiful as you has no secrets? | but
beau *n'a point de secrets*
 a man is obliged to keep up a certain dignity in ^d his
obligé de avoir *certain dignité*
 countenance, while he is performing these operations |
maintien *pendant que* *faire* *opération*
 a man ^e who has been brought up among books, and
élevé *parmi* *livre*, m.
 is able to talk of nothing else, is a very indifferent
n'être capable de parler de rien autre chose *insipide*
 companion, and what ³ we call a pedant | immediately
compagnie *appeller* *pédant* *sur le champ*
 the whole house is in an uproar; ^f husband, ^f wife,
toute la maison *en* *allarme* *mari* *femme*
^f children, ^f maids and ^f men servants; ³ they run,
servante *valet* *courir*
³ they seek, and at last ⁵ find him | in some places
chercher *enfin* *trouver* *dans quelque endroit*
⁴ it was reported he had ^g murdered her, in others
^{*} *dire* *assassiner* *dans d'autres*

^a See p. 226, sect. 1.

^b This word is not expressed.

^c p. 187, sect. 1.

^d See p. 215, sect. 1.

^e p. 241, sect. 1.

^f p. 133, sect. 2.

^g This participle is declined.

that he had broke ^a her arms and legs | 4 it was soon
 found that they promised upon a moderation ^b too
 refined and disinterested for human nature | he was
 incapable of pretending affection for ^c one who had
 persecuted him so long | I will be hanged, if it
 was not the man of the hill, as ³ they call him | 4 it
 will be easily imagined that when once I despised
 my husband, I must consequently dislike
 his company | 4 it is well known they have advised the
 sovereign to join the lords, ^c which is the most per-
 nicious council ^d they could give to a British monarch.

R U L E II.

1. *All* may be considered as an adjective which is sometimes followed by the article and sometimes not; as, *all the esteem, all men*; in these cases it is expressed by *tout, toute, tous, toutes*, requires the article before its substantive, and if it relates to more substantives than one, must be repeated before each, when they are of different genders, or numbers; as, *all the esteem and respect, toute l'estime & tout le respect*.

^a See p. 215. sect. 3.

^c p. 244. sect. 1.

^b See p. 187. sect. 1.

^d p. 237. sect. 1. and

p. 242. sect. 1.

2. The preposition *in* coming after *all*, is often rendered by *de*; as, *all the riches in the world*, toutes les richesses du monde.

3. When *all* is joined to a substantive singular, it is generally rendered by *tout* without the article; as, *I abhor all flattery*, j'abhorre toute flatterie.

4. When *all* is followed by a relative, whether expressed or understood, it is rendered by *tous ceux*, *toutes celles*, when it signifies in English *all those who*, or, *that*; and by *tout ce qui*, or, *tout ce que*, when it means *all that which*; as, *I despise all who say so*, je méprise tous ceux que le disent; *I do all I can*, je fais tout ce que je puis.

5. When *all* comes after a pronoun, which is either nominative or accusative to a verb, it is transposed in French, and comes after the verb; as, *you all were present*, vous étiez tous présents; it is sometimes joined to the pronoun by the preposition *of*; as, *all of us*, *all of you*, *all of them*; which expressions are thus rendered, *tous tant que nous sommes*, *tous tant que vous êtes*, *tous tant qu'ils*, or, *qu'elles sont*.

6. *Whole*, when it is used adjectively, that is, when it is joined to a substantive, may also be rendered by *tout*; it then comes before the article or pronoun possessive; as, *his whole stock*, tout son fonds; *the whole story*, toute l'histoire.

EXERCISE.

1 All the grandeur, wealth, and power which
grandeur richesses pouvoir
the Cardinal possessed, did not satisfy his ambitious
*Cardinal posséder * satisfaire * ambitieux*
mind | he had assembled 1 all the professors and
esprit assembler professeur
students 2 in the university of Wittemberg | the
étudiant université Virtemberg
proposed

proposed to seize all ^a the rich and magnificent
proposer & de saisir riche magnifique
 ornaments ² in the cathedral of Toledo | the relation
ornement cathédrale Toledo rapport
 of the master and scholar is indelible, as indeed
ineffaçable comme en effet
 in all other relations ^b are ; for ^c they all derive their
rapport car tirer
 original from heaven | ^e little Benjamin, who had
origina, f.
 been ³ all attention, never once interrupted the
attention n'interrupte & pas une seule fois
 narrative | I am that Partridge, but I here absolve
le récit C'est moi qui suis ce en ce moment acquitter
 you from ³ all filial duty ; for I can assure you
filial devoir pouvoir
 you are no son of ^d mine | Tom raved like a
s'emporter & comme
 madman, beat ^e his breast, tore ^e his hair, stamped
sur sa poitrine, arracher & cheveu frapper &
 on the ground, and vowed the utmost vengeance
du pié jurer & de tirer la plus cruelle vengeance
 on ⁴ all who had been concerned, as if the success
de s'en étoient mêlés succès
 of that alone was sufficient to constitute the ⁶ whole
seul état suffi pour faire
 happiness of his life | but Mrs. Honour had been
bienheureux
 much more communicative, and had acquainted
communicatif mis sa
 her sister Abigail with the ⁶ whole story of Jones |
sœur Abigail au fait de histoire, f.
 he thanked her very heartily for the part which
remercier & cordialement de part

^a See p. 186. sect. 2.^b See p. 257. sect. 1.^c p. 181. sect. 1.^d p. 219. sect. 2.^e p. 215. sect. 3.^f This word must be plural.

she was pleased to take in the affair upon the
*vouloir * bien prendre à affaire, f. de*
 success of which his 6 whole future happiness
succès futur bonheur
 intirely depended | they advised him to assemble
*entièrement dépendre * conseiller * à de assembler*
 it without delay in one of the great cities of
sans délai ville
 Germany, ^a that 4 all who had right to be present
*Allemagne afin que * droit de être présent*
 might deliberate with freedom | ^b I am 3 all truth,
pouvoir délibérer liberté vérité
 3 all love, 3 all faith, and know no jealous fears.
amour foi les craintes de la jalousie.

R U L E III.

1. *Tout* serves also to express the adverb *quite*; as, *they were quite astonished*, ils furent tout étonnés; it also expresses *as*, when joined to an adjective without denoting comparison; as, *as learned as he is*, or, *learned as he is*, (for the first *as* is elegantly suppressed in English) tout savant qu'il est: *tout* is then declined only when it comes immediately before an adjective feminine singular, or an adjective feminine plural beginning with a consonant; as, *frightened as she was*, toute éperdue qu'elle étoit; *learned as they are*, toutes savantes qu'elles sont. If the nominative is not a pronoun personal, it is indifferent to put it either before or after the verb; as, *foolish as those girls look*, toutes simples que paroissent ces filles, or, *toutes simples que ces filles paroissent*; but it is a rule to put it after if a relative follows; as, *foolish as those girls look who were with us last night*, toutes simples que paroissent ces filles avec qui nous étions hier au soir.

^a See p. 128.^b See p. 203. sect. 1.

E X E R C I S E.

Nevertheless fired, ^{cependant irrité de} as he was with ^a what I had told him, he perceived that I drank that evening more ^{s'appercevoir * boire * ce soir là} water than usual | Tom Jones, who, bad ^{qu'à l'ordinaire méchant} as he is, must serve ^b for the hero of this history, had only ^{devoir être héros * que} one friend among all the servants of the family. | ^{ami domestique maison} imminent, ^c as the danger was which now surrounded ^{pressant danger * dont François étoit alors} Francis, he rejected ^{environné rejeter * indignation pensée} with indignation the thoughts of an action which would have afforded such matter ^{action été pour son sujet} of triumph to his traitorous subject. ^{rébelle un si grand sujet de triomphe.}

R U L E I V.

1. *Whosoever* and *whoever*, being nominatives to two verbs, are rendered by *quiconque*, *qui que ce soit* *qui*, or *qui que*, the two first may sometimes be indifferently used; the last means, *of whatever rank*, and is only used before a pronoun of the second person, as, *whoever you are*, *qui que vous soyez*. *Quiconque* is to be preferred in general propositions; as, *whoever is rich is every thing*, *quiconque est riche est tout*; this pronoun will have the verb next to it in the future,

^a See p. 226. sect. 1.

^b This prep. is not expressed.

^c This word must be singular.

tho' in the present in English, when the other verb is likewise in the future; as, *whoever does it shall be punished*, quiconque le fera sera puni; *qui que ce soit* qui governs the first verb in the subjunctive; and one of the pronouns *il, elle* must be put before the other; as, *qui que ce soit qui le fasse, il sera puni*.

2. If they are nominatives to one verb only, *qui que ce soit qui* must be used; as, *whoever has done it, punish him*, *qui que ce soit qui l'a fait, punissez le*. *Qui que ce fût*, and not, *qui que ce soit* should be used if the verb in French were either in the imperfect or pluperfect of the subjunctive; as, *whoever asked him for it, he would not give it*, *que que ce fût qui le lui demandât, il ne voulut pas le donner*.

3. *Whomsoever, whoever, whosoever*, depending upon verbs or adjectives which govern a preposition, are generally rendered by *qui que ce soit que*, or *qui que ce fût que*, according to the preceding distinction; as, *whosoever you apply to, à qui que ce soit que vous vous adressez*; but when they come after verbs which govern no preposition, they are indifferently expressed by *quiconque*, or *qui que ce soit*.

EXERCISE.

1. *Whoever* *s'efforce* *de* *obtenir* *son* *savoir* *or* *that of his master, found it necessary to soothe and gratify his passions* | *whoever* *se munir de* *maxim* *abroad with him into the grand market of* *maxime, &c.* *pour parcourir le vaste théâtre*

^a See p. 222, sect. 4.

^b This preposition must be repeated.

the world, and constantly applies it to honours,
constamment appliquer bonneur
 to riches, to pleasures, is a wise man | *richesses plaisir* whoever
 you are, & that with such insolence dare use my
cette insolence oser se servir de
 name, and give the neighbourhood pretence to
nom lieu au voisinage de
 reflect ^b on my conduct, I charge you instantly to
cenfurer conduite ordonner sur le champ
 to be gone | that fish was of so poisonous a
*de sortir poisson * venimeux*
 quality, that whoever eat ^c it was suddenly
*qualité manger * de éprouvoit*
 seized with the most acute pains | but give me leave
aussitôt les douleurs les plus aigues permettez moi
 to say that this does not come up to a promise that
de aller jusqu'à
 I will take ³ whomsoever he pleases | *prendre il lui plaira* whoever
 considers the small extent of Judea must be
faire attention à étendue Judée devoir
 sensible that nothing but its fertility could
*sentir sa fertilité seule pouvoir **
 enable it to maintain that great number of
mettre en état de nourrir
 inhabitants who resided in it in the time of ^d King
habitant qu'elle contenoit de
 David | whoever despised any of their decisions,
*mépriser * quelques unes décision*
 even concerning civil matters, immediately incurred
*même en civil matiere sur le champ encourir **

^a See p. 69, rule 5.

^b This preposition is not expressed.

^c See p. 246, sect. 2.

^d See p. 139, sect. 1.

this dreadful ^{terrible} ~~censure~~ ^{censure} ^{exclure} which not only excluded him from the privileges of a christian, but deprived him of his rights, ^{privilege} ^{chrétien} ^{priver} as ^b a man and a ^c citizen | 3 whoever he speaks to, he always says the same thing. ^{droit} ^{citoyen} ^{même chose, f.}

R U L E V.

1. *Howsoever* is rendered by *quelque que*, which admits of the same construction as in English, *quelque* being put in the place of *how*, and *que* of *soever*; as, *how great soever your actions are*, *quelques grandes que soient vos actions*. This pronoun governs the subjunctive, and as it is more elegant to put the verb following *que*, before its nominative, when that nominative is not a pronoun personal; as in the above example; but it is necessary to do it if a relative follows, as has been observed of *tout*, p. 270, sect. 1.

2. *However*, when it comes before an adjective or an adverb, is also rendered by *quelque que*; as, *however strange it may appear*, *quelque étrange que cela paroisse*.

3. The verb *to be*, is sometimes understood after the adjective preceded by *howsoever* and *however*; but it must always be expressed in French; as, *your actions, however great, or, how great soever, will be blamed*, *vos actions, quelque grandes qu'elles soient, seront blâmées*.

4. *Whatsoever* and *whatever*, are also expressed by *quelque que*, when they are joined to a substantive, which is not the nominative of the next verb; as,

^a See p. 241, sect. 1.

^b This conjunction must be repeated before citizen.

^c See p. 146, sect. 2.

whatever riches you have, quelques richesses que vous ayez; and by *quelque qui*, when that substantive is a nominative; as, *whatever events may happen*, quelques événemens qui puissent arriver; the pronoun *quelque* is declined in these instances, that is, when there happens to be a substantive between it and the following *que*.

5. But if *whatever*, being joined to a substantive, is governed by a preceding verb, *tout*, with the article definite, must be put before the substantive instead of *quelque*; as, *he used whatever arguments he could think of*, il se servit de toutes les raisons qu'il put imaginer.

6. If *whatsoever* and *whatever*, mean of whatever rank, nature, quality, disposition, &c. they are rendered by *quel que*, which make two separate words, and come immediately one after another; *quel* is declined; as, *whatever that lady may be, I do not fear her*, quelle que soit cette dame, je ne la crains point; *I shall not buy your works whatever they may be*, je n'achèterai pas vos ouvrages quels qu'ils soient.

7. Sometimes *whatever*, *whatsoever*, mean what thing soever; they are then expressed by *quoi que*, *quoi que ce soit que*, *quelque chose que*, which all govern the subjunctive; as, *whatever he does*, quoi qu'il fasse; if they are nominatives, *qui* should be used instead of *que*; as, *whatever may happen*, quelque chose qui puisse arriver.

8. But when they are either accusatives, or governed by a preposition, or nominatives to two verbs, they are then expressed by *tout ce qui*, or, *tout ce que*; as, *he admires whatever she does*, il admire tout ce qu'elle fait; *I shall consent to whatever you please*, je consentirai à tout ce que vous voudrez; *whatever is pleasing is not always useful*, tout ce qui est agréable n'est pas toujours utile.

E X E R C I S E.

He told me, that he envied the fate of my
 husband, 1 how deplorable soever it was in other
 respects | 1 how dishonourable soever the artifice
 might be, which was employed to defraud
 the pope of this sum, ^a it came very seasonably
 into the viceroy's hands, and put it in his power
 to extricate himself out of an imminent danger | that
 crime, 2 however lightly ^a it may be treated by
 debauched persons, is very heinous in itself and
 dreadful in its consequences | the appearance of
 such unsurmountable difficulties was sufficient to
 have inspired him with despair, 2 however ardent
 his wishes might be | philosophers are composed of
 flesh and blood as well as other human creatures, and
 2 however sublimated and refined the theory of these

^a See p. 246, sect. 1.

^b This substantive is not expressed.

may be, a little practical frailty is as incidental to
ils sont sujets à de petites fragilités dans la
 them, as to other mortals | she found in
pratique aussi bien que les autres mortels trouver *
 Mrs. Delville so many excellent qualities, that
excellente qualité
 2 however great was the respect ^ashe seemed to demand,
*respect sembler * exiger*
 b it was always inferior to ^cwhat she felt inclined
*inférieur se sentir * porté*
 to pay | she said it was a sufficient reason to
*à rendre * ce * suffisant raison pour*
 fortify our ^dminds against ^eall accidents 3 how
fortifier esprit accident
 sudden or terrible soever | he looked down ^fon
*soudain terrible regarder * avec mépris*
 3 whoever he deigned to look ^fat ^fall, and shewed
*daigner * montrer **
 that he thought his notice an honour,
qu'il pensoit honorer par son attention
 3 however imperious the manner in which it was
*impérieux maniere dont **
 accorded | this right, 3 how pernicious soever in
accordé droit pernicieux dans
 3 its effects, was the natural consequence of the
*effet * naturel*
 power which the popes ^barrogated | but 4 whatever
*pouvoir s'arroger **
 advantages Luther's cause derived either from the
avantages Luther cause, f. tirer soit
 mistakes of his adversaries, or, from his own conduct,
faute, f. adversaire propre conduite, f.

^a See p. 237, sect. 1.

^b See p. 246, sect. 1.

^c p. 226, sect. 3.

^d This word must be singular.

^e p. 267, sect. 1.

^f This word is not expressed.

^g See p. 272, sect. 3.

^h See p. 46, sect. 1.

the sudden progress and firm establishment of his
soudain progrès *ferme établissement*
 a doctrines must not be ascribed to these causes alone |
doctrines, f. devoir *attribué* *seul*
 he determined therefore to insist, b whatever the
c'est pourquoi il résolut de insister
 consequences c might be, on the strict execution of
sur stricte exécution
 the treaty | d whatever his motives were, he executed
traité *motif* *exécuter*
 his resolution with a rapidity equal to the boldness
résolution *rapidité égal* *hardiesse*
 with which he had formed it | e whatever mental
formé *don*
 accomplishments she had derived from nature, they
de l'esprit *recevoir* *nature ils*
 were somewhat improved and cultivated by art |
étaient encor polis & perfectionnés par l'art
 whatever a superfluities you may have, that piety
superflu *piété*
 which you so rigidly maintain, will instruct you
rigidement observer *apprendre*
 c how to dispose of d them | he knew that Wolsey
à disposer de *savoir*
 would approve e of f whatever terms should be offered
approuver *condition* *offrir*
 in his name | after having been accustomed to
en nom après *accoutumé à*
 consider themselves as judges of the most important
se regarder *comme juge* *important*

a This word must be singular.

b This verb must be preceded by en.

c This word is not expressed.

d See p. 246, sect. 2.

doctrines ^a in religion, they thought of rectifying
^{point} 5 whatever disorders and imperfections they
^{désordre, m.} perceived in government | 6 whatever were my
^{opprecevoir} thoughts of that poor unhappy young man; I
^{pensée} intended to have carried them with me to my grave |
^{sur} ^{malheureux} ^{je m'étois promis de les ensevelir avec moi dans le tombeau}
6 whatever your inclinations may be, my brother is
^{inclination} resolved: nay, since you talk of inclinations, I shall
^{décide} ^{Et puisque} ^{parler} advise him to hasten the treaty | 6 whatever he is
^{conseiller à} ^{accélérer} ^{traité} we know ^b he is not a man of rank, and 6 whatever
^{qualité} he may be, we know he cannot become
^{pouvoir être un jour} ^{qu'il ne sauroit devenir} a man of family | 7 whatever I may have thought,
^{naissance} ^{je n'ai rien dit} I have not said any thing | 7 whatever ^d the
^{gentleman} ^{monseigneur} ^{faire} ^{sur} ^{capitaine} ^{le} gentleman has done, I am sure the captain will make
him amends for ^e it | I will hear 8 whatsoever
^{dédommager} ^{de} ^{écouter} thou hast to say | they covet 8 whatever is new
^{à dire} ^{desirer} ^{nouveau} *because they have experienced the insufficiency of
^{éprouver} ^{vide, m.}

^a See p. 183, sect. 3.^b See p. 208, sect. 1.^c p. 145, sect. 1.^d This article is not expressed^e p. 246, sect. 2.

8 whatever is familiar ^{commun} many think that 8 whatever ^{plusieurs}
 is least complicated ^{compliqué} is most pleasing ^{agréable}.

R U L E VI.

1. Any, when it is joined to a substantive, is rendered by *quelque*, in simple interrogations, or in conditional sentences; as, *have you got any good book?* *Avez vous quelque bon livre?*

2. By *aucun* in negative sentences, in those which imply wonder and admiration, or denote exclusion. With this pronoun *pas* and *point* are suppressed; as, *I have not any inclination to it,* *je n'en ai aucune envie.*

3. Otherwise, by *tout*, or, *quelque que ce soit*; as, *I shall do it at any time,* *je le ferai en tout tems*; but if a relative is expressed or understood, the substantive is put in the plural, and preceded by the article; as, *I shall answer any objection you can propose,* *je répondrai à toutes les objections que vous pourrez faire.*

4. Any, when it is followed by the preposition *of*, or when it relates to a noun expressed before, is rendered by *quelqu'un* and *aucun*, according to the distinction given in the two first sections; as, *have you read any of your new books?* *Avez vous lu quelques uns de vos nouveaux livres?* *Is there any of those philosophers who dares maintain such an opinion?* *Y a-t-il aucun de ces philosophes qui ose soutenir une semblable opinion?*

5. When *quelqu'un* and *aucun* relate to a noun expressed before, they govern *en* before their verb; thus if the *books* and *philosophers* had already been mentioned, you should say, *en avez vous lu quelques uns?* *Y en a-t-il aucun qui ose,* &c.

6. Observe likewise, that *aucun* does not govern *en* when it is preceded by a preposition; as, *he sees many women without being in love with any,* *il voit plusieurs femmes sans en aimer aucune, or, sans être amoureux d'aucune.*

7. If

7. If *any* is joined to a substantive expressing the name of some commodity that is not divisible and cannot be reckoned, it is rendered by the partitive articles *du, de la, des*; as, *have you got any thread?* *avez vous du fil?* if there is a negative in the sentence, *any* is not expressed, and *pas, or, point* govern *de* before the substantive; as, *I have not any thread,* *je n'ai point de fil.* If the substantive has been expressed before, *any* is rendered by *en*; as, *give me some thread if you have any,* *donnez moi du fil si vous en avez.*

8. *Any thing* is rendered by *quelque chose, rien, or, quoi que ce soit*, (with the two last the negative *not* is expressed by *ne* only) and by *tout*, according to the distinctions given sect. 1, 2, and 3; as, *have you heard anything?* *avez vous appris quelque chose?* *I have not heard any thing,* *je n'ai rien appris;* *I shall do any thing to oblige you,* *je ferai tout pour vous obliger.*

9. *Any body, any man, any one*, are likewise expressed by *quelqu'un, personne, qui que ce soit, tout le monde.* (*not* is expressed by *ne* only with *personne*;) as, *do you know any body who can do it?* *connoissez vous quelqu'un qui puisse le faire?* *I don't know any body who is more capable of it,* *je ne connois personne qui en soit plus capable;* *any body will tell it you,* *qui que ce soit, or, tout le monde vous le dira.*

E X E R C I S E.

If I have ^{any} power on your heart, if the ^{tenderness} of a father be not quite extinct, hear ^{me} with patience and make me not the most unhappy wo-

pouvoir sur
cœur
tend-

desse
tout-a-fait éteint
écouter

patience
rendre
malheureux

man in the world | do not suspect me of ² any design
monde, m. soupçonner dessein
 to develop your sentiments; neither do I mean to
de pénétrer sentiment je ne s'ingé pas non plus à vous
 solicit ² any explanation | she had taught her son,
demandeur explication apprendre à fils
 who was too susceptible of ³ any impression which
** trop susceptible impression*
 she gave him, to view all the constable's actions with
** à regarder connétable action*
 a mean and unbecoming jealousy | the ⁴ territories of
bas indigne jalousie territoire
 the Venetians lay nearest at hand, but they had taken
*Venitien être * le plus à portée prendre*
 such precautions as secured them from ³ any insult
*des précautions qui mettre * à couvert insulte, f.*
 | he solemnly asserted at a drinking bout, that
*solemnellement déclarer * dans bachique partie qu'il*
 Tom should hunt a pack of hounds for a thousand
étoit prêt à parier mille livres sterling que Tom conduiroit une
 pounds of his money with ³ any huntsman in the
meute de chiens aussi bien que piqueur
 whole county | ^c I love a tender sensation and would
province, f. tendre sensation acheter
 pay a tear for it at ³ any time | he had neither
au prix d'une larme en
 heard ⁴ any of Luther's discourses, nor read ⁴ any of
entendre Luther discours lire
 his books | he received the herald with ^d great composure
** héraut calme*
 and dignity, and without abandoning ⁴ any of the
dignité sans abandonner
 schemes which he was forming against the emperor,
plan former contre empereur

^a This word must be singular. ^b See p. 268, sect. 6.

^c See p. 203, sect. 1.

^d p. 149, sect. 2.

he began vigorous ^a preparations for resisting this
 * *vigoureux préparatif pour résister à*
 new enemy | the principles of liberty seem to have
nouvel ennemi principe, m. liberté sembler
 been better understood at this period by the Castilians
entendre à époque, f. par Castillan
 than by ² any other people | ^b before his enemies were
autre peuple, m.
 ready to execute ⁴ any of their schemes, Francis had
prêt à exécuter plan François
 assembled a numerous army | he forbade ³ any public
*assembler nombreux armée défendre * public*
 rejoicings as indecent, in a war carried on
réjouissance comme indécort dans une guerre qui se
 among christians | ^c he had made several promises, but
faisoit entre chrétiens plusieurs promesse
 had not performed ⁵ any | he was determined not to
*remplir * déterminé à*
 accept ^d of ⁸ any thing which might be offered as an
accepter de ce qu'on pourroit offrir
 equivalent to the restitution of Burgundy | they would
équivalent restitution Bourgogne
 not have had ⁷ any bread to eat, if the charity of some
à charité quelque
 good christian had not provided them ^d with what
bon chrétien fournir à
 was just sufficient for their sustenance | who can see
 * *seulement suffire * à subsistance pouvoir trouver*
⁸ any thing beautiful in the presence of your lady
beau devant maitresse
 but herself | ^f it has been observed that fortune seldom
si ce n'est remarquer fortune rarement
 does ⁸ any thing by halves | that deceitful, vindictive
fais à demi trompeur vindicatif

^a See p. 142. sect. 1.

^b See p. 128.

^c p. 204. sect. 3.

^d This prep. is not expressed.

^e De must be put before this adjective.

^f See p. 265, sect. 4.

and ^a rapacious woman was capable of sacrificing ⁸ any
 thing to the gratification of her passions | if we look
 for ⁸ any thing, let it be ^b for a place under ground
 to screen ourselves from the frost | ^c whoever you
 are, cries the woman, you have no business here,
 and I shall not open the door to ⁹ any body at this time
 of the night | I scarce can think myself at liberty to
 refuse you ⁸ any thing after what has happened |
 Sophia had too much at stake to venture ⁸ any thing
 to chance | yet if we look round us in ³ any
 county of Great Britain, we shall see ^d many in this
 province, *f. Bretagne* voir plusieurs
 fatal error, if ^e that may be called by so soft a name,
 which proceeds from a false shame of appearing what
 one really is.

R U L E VII.

1. *Some*, when it is joined to a substantive and means *a little*, is expressed, as we have seen before by the partitive articles *du, de la, des*; if in that sense, it

^a This adjective must come before the two others.

^b This prep. is not expressed. ^c See p. 271, sect. 1.

^d See p. 258. sect. 6. ^e p. 224. sect. 3.

is followed by *of*, it is expressed by *un peu de*, or only *de*; as, *give me some of your bread*, *donnez moi un peu de votre pain*, or, *donnez moi de votre pain*.

2. When it does not mean *a little*, it is rendered by *quelque*; as, *some author has said*, *quelque auteur a dit*; *some women are sincere*, *quelques femmes sont sinceres*; but if it is followed by *of*, it is expressed by *quelques uns*, *quelques unes*, or only by *de*; as, *I have read some of your works*, *j'ai lu quelques uns de vos ouvrages*, or, *j'ai lu de vos ouvrages*.

3. If it refers to a noun singular, it is expressed by *en*; as, *if you have bread, give him some*, *si vous avez du pain, donnez lui en*; but if it refers to a noun plural, it is rendered by *quelques uns*, which governs *en* before its verb, or simply by *en*; as, *if you have books, lend him some*, *si vous avez des livres, prêtez lui en quelques uns*, or, *prêtez lui en*.

4. If *some* serves to connect the different parts of a sentence, it is expressed in the first part by *les uns*, and in the second by *les autres*; as, *some say yes, some say no*, *les uns disent oui, les autres disent non*.

EXERCISE.

This small matter was one of her gowns, & some
bagatelle * *robe, f.*
 small linen, and ten shillings in money | new con-
menu linge *en argent nouveau cir-*
 junctures call for new expedients | the imperial sceptre
constance *exiger* *expédient* *impérial sceptre*
 must be committed to some hand more powerful
devoir *confié* *puissant*
 than mine, or that of any other German Prince | the
Allemand

^a See p. 280, sect. 3.

English ashamed of having rendered their own country
Anglois honteux *faire de* *pays*
 a scene of discord and bloodshed were eager to display
*le théâtre discorde, f. carnage brûler** *du desir de signaler*
 their valour in 2 some foreign war, and to revive
valeur *étranger guerre, f. de faire revivre*
 the memory of the victories gained by their ancestors |
mémoire, f. victoire, f. gagnée *ancêtre, m.*
 the claims of the empire upon 2 some of the Italian
prétention *empire sur* *état*
 states were numerous, its jurisdiction over others
*d'Italie ** *nombreux* *jurisdiction sur d'autres*
 was extensive | she returned to the kitchen to regale
** étendu* *revenir à* *cuisine pour se régaler*
 with 2 some of those dainties which her mistress had
de *friandise* *maîtresse*
^a refused | the fact seemed ^b the more probable as she
refuser *fait sembler ** *probable*
 now recollected 2 some discomposure in her pockets
*alors se rappeler** *dérangement* *poches, f.*
 which had happened at that time | ^c nothing is so
avoir lieu *alors* *rien*
 fallacious as this outward sign of sorrow; and the
trompeur *extérieur signe* *chagrin*
 natural history of our bodies will teach us that this
natural histoire, f. *corps* *apprendre* *ce*
 flux of the eyes, this faculty of weeping is peculiar
flux de larmes *faculté* *pleurer* *particulier*
 only to 2 some constitutions | I will disclaim all
seulement *constitution* *renoncer à*
 knowledge of the world if it is not so; and I believe,
connaissance *cela n'est pas vrai*
^d brother, you will allow I have 3 some—why, ^d sister,
convenir *comment*

^a This participle is declined. ^b See p. 180. sect. 1.

^c This word governs *ne* before the following verb.

^d See p. 212. sect. 4.

I do believe you ^a have as much as any woman; and
autant

to be sure those are women's matters | I

certainement ces choses sont de la compétence des femmes | j'ai

sold the hilt to one of our fine gentlemen; for

vendu garde, f. petit maître

there are 3 some of them who don't mind the blade.

parmi faire peu de cas de. lame, f.

R U L E V I I I.

1. Every body, every one, are rendered by *tout le monde*, *chacun*; but the latter must be preferred when every body is followed by a pronoun that refers to it; as, every body has his own opinion, *chacun a son opinion*.

2. Every body, every one, any one, being followed by the relatives *who*, *whom*, *that*, *which*, are rendered by *quiconque*; as, he despised every one who was not as rich as himself, *il méprisoit quiconque n'étoit pas aussi riche que lui*.

3. Every, when together with the substantive to which it is joined, it means a person or thing taken separately, is expressed by *chaque* or *tout*; as, every country has its customs, *chaque pays a ses coutumes*. In general propositions, *tout* must be used; as, every man must die, *tout homme doit mourir*.

4. Otherwise it is expressed by *tous*, *toutes*: its substantive is made plural, and preceded by the article *les*; as, he goes to Paris every month, *il va tous les mois à Paris*.

5. Every thing is expressed by *tout*; as, he knows every thing, *il sait tout*; if a relative follows, whether expressed or understood, it is rendered by *tout ce qui*, or, *tout ce que*; as, he remembers every thing he has heard, *il se souvient de tout ce qu'il a entendu*.

^a See p. 258. sect. 6.

6. If it is immediately followed by an adjective, it is rendered by *tout ce que*, with the impersonal verb *y avoir*, and the preposition *de* is put before the adjective; as, *he had observed every thing curious*, *il avoit observé tout ce qu'il y a de curieux*.

E X E R C I S E.

1 Every body is not of your opinion | ^a whatever
trouble we take, we never please | ^{opinion} every one | 1 every
one has ^{peine} ^{plaire à} a right to give his vote in favour of the
candidate ^{droit de} ^{voix en faveur} he approves most | they attack ² every
one who seems to them worthy their notice | ³ every
word ^c you speak is a new conviction to me, that
you are what you have declared yourself; for there
is something in a generous education which it is
impossible for persons who want that happiness to
counterfeit, therefore I beg you to believe me
sincerely your friend | ³ every physician has his
favorite disease to which he ascribes all the victories

^a See p. 274. sect. 4.

^b This word is not expressed.

^c p. 237. sect. 1.

a he obtains over human nature | he proceeded
 transporter sur humain nature courir *
 hastily to the room, where he expected to find
 à s'attendre * à
 the lovers, and soared forth intentions of revenge
 amant en jurant mort & vengeance à
 3 every step he went | he rather chose to possess
 pas faire * aimer * mieux posséder
 4 every convenience of life with an ugly woman, than
 commodité vie laid femme
 a handsome one without any of those conveniencies |
 d'en être privé avec une belle
 Francis sensible of the great value of Wolsey's friendship
 qui sentoit importance amitié
 laboured to secure the continuance^b of it by 4 every
 travailler * à s'assurer continuation par
 possible expression of regard | he had been obliged
 possible témoignage estime, &c.
 to neglect 4 every precaution necessary for the security
 de négliger précaution nécessaire sûreté
 of the country | men who had the courage to
 pays des hommes * de
 overturn a system supported by 5 every thing which
 renverser système appuyé de
 can command respect or reverence, were not
 pouvoir inspirer respect vénération ne devoient
 to be over-awed by^c any authority, ^d how great or
 guère intimidé par autorité
 venerable soever | he took care to avoid 5 every thing
 respectable avoir * soin de éviter
 which had disgusted the Castilians during his former
 dégoûter Castillan pendant premier
 residence among them | why did he permit an
 séjour pourquoi permettre * à

^a See p. 237. sect. 1.

^c p. 280. sect. 2.

^b See p. 258. sect. 4.

^d p. 274. sect. 3.

incorrigible heretick, who during three years had
incorrigible hérétique pendant an
 been endeavouring to subvert every thing sacred and
sâcher de renverser sacré
 venerable, to remain within the bosom of the church.
vénérable de demeurer dans sein église.

R U L E IX.

1. *One another, each other*, when they do not relate to more than two, are expressed by *l'un l'autre*, and by *les uns, les autres*, when they relate to more than two; and the verb must be reflected in French; as, *they hate one another*, *ils se haïssent l'un l'autre*, or, *les uns les autres*; but *l'un l'autre, les uns, les autres*, may sometimes be left out; as, *ils s'aiment*, they love one another.

2. If they are preceded by a verb or substantive that governs a preposition, that preposition must be put after *l'un*, or *les uns*, in this manner: *they complain of one another*, *ils se plaignent l'un de l'autre*.

3. *Others*, when taken in a general sense, may be expressed by *autrui* after prepositions, or words that govern one in French; as, *an honest man is afraid to hurt others*, *un honnête homme craint de nuire à autrui*.

When the pronoun *others* is followed by the possessive *their*, the safest way is to use *les autres*, as grammarians do not agree about the manner in which *their* is to be expressed.

E X E R C I S E.

With whatever gaiety they may meet, they are
plaisir se rencontrer
 soon

soon tired with ^a one another | your father and I ^a have
ennuyé de

been ^b for ^b a long time enemies to ^a one another |
long-tems ennemi de

I advance towards the trap with as much nimbleness
s'avancer vers trappe, f. légèreté

as ^c joy ; but alas ! in the middle of the entry,
joie hélas à milieu allée

I met ^b with a cursed iron grate, the ^d bars of which
*trouver * maudit fer grille barreau*

were very close to ^a one another | there is in
** très près*

^c some human breasts a kind and benevolent disposition,
humain cœur bonnête bienveillant disposition

which is gratified by contributing to the happiness of
se satisfaire contribuer

³ others | he said that if the young people liked ^a each
*gens aimer **

other, he should be very desirous to complete the
aise de terminer

affair | it is an irreparable injustice ^f we are guilty of
ce irréparable injustice, f. coupable

towards ^a one another, when we are prejudiced by the
envers lorsque se laisser prévenir

^g looks and features of those whom we do not know,
air traits

I should not have erred so grossly in my choice if I
se tromper grossièrement choix

had relied on my own judgment ; but I trusted
s'en rapporter à je m'en suis

totally to the opinion of ³ others | if there are men
remis entièrement à opinion

^a See p. 194. sect. 1.

^b This word is not expressed.

^c p. 172. sect. 1.

^d See p. 232. sect. 2.

^e p. 285. sect. 2.

^f p. 237. sect. 2.

^g This word must be singular.

^a who ^b cannot feel the delight of giving happiness to
pouvoir goûter plaisir faire le bonheur de
 3 others, I sincerely pity them.
sincèrement plaindre.

R U L E X.

1. *Neither*, when it is a pronoun, is expressed by *ni l'un, ni l'autre*, which govern *ne* before their verb; either by *l'un ou l'autre*; they both govern their verb in the singular if they precede it, and in the plural if they come after it; as, *neither will do it, ni l'un ni l'autre ne le fera, or, ils ne le feront ni l'un ni l'autre.*

2. If *neither* and *either* are preceded by a preposition, it must be repeated before *l'un l'autre*; as, *I will speak to either, je parlerai à l'un ou à l'autre.*

3. If they are followed by a pronoun personal with the preposition *of*, that pronoun is not expressed; as, *neither of them will say it, ni l'un ni l'autre ne le dira.*

4. *Both* is expressed by *tous deux, tous les deux, l'un & l'autre*; and when it is nominative, it comes either before or after the verb; as, *both say it, tous deux, or, tous les deux le disent, or, ils le disent tous les deux, &c.*

Observe, that *l'un & l'autre* are sometimes undeclined when they relate to substantives of things; as *que ce soit avarice, ou ambition, ou peut-être l'un & l'autre*, let it be either avarice, or ambition, or perhaps both.

5. *Both* is not expressed when it comes before two words joined by the conjunction *and*; as, *both the master and servant say it, le maître & le domestique le disent.* You might also say, *le maître & le domestique le disent tous les deux.*

^a See p. 242. sect. 2.

^b The negative must be put with the next verb.

6. When it is joined to one substantive, it is expressed by *les deux* ; as, *both hands*, *les deux mains* ; but with a pronoun, the article must not be used ; as, *both your hands*, *vos deux mains* ; *you both*, *vous deux*.

E X E R C I S E.

* Neither his house nor his heart were shut against
maison *cœur* *fermé à tout*
any part of mankind, but they were ⁴ both more
ce qui tenoit à l'humanité
particularly open to men of merit | yet his courage
particulièrement ouvert gens mérite cependant courage
was ^b full as strong as his faith, and his body was
fort *foi* *corps*
no less strong than ¹ either | but ^c however well af-
fort *porté*
fected he might be ^d to James or Charles, he was
pour Jacques
still much more attached to ^e little Benjamin than to
attaché
² either | if we had a guide to advise which of
pour nous dire
these roads we should take, but you, which ^f of
nous devrions prendre
them would you recommend ?—³ neither of them,
recommander
answered Partridge | he foretold that the election of
prédire *élection*

^a See p. 126. sect. 6.

^c p. 274. sect. 2.

^e p. 181. sect. 1.

^b This word is not expressed.

^d This prep. must be repeated

^f This prep. and the next word are not expressed.

3 either of them would be fatal to the independence of
 the holy see, to the peace of Italy, and perhaps to
 the liberties of Europe | 3 neither of them, however,
 received great satisfaction when the door was opened
 for the gentleman who made his appearance was
 unknown to 4 both | by the wisdom of his government,
 by the sagacity with which he conducted his foreign
 operations, and by the high opinion which his subjects
 entertained of 4 both, he preserved tranquillity among
 them | I would rather have buried the sentiments of
 these two persons in eternal oblivion ^a than have done
 any injury to 2 either of these glorious causes |
 this unhappy state unavoidably ends in the destruction
 of 5 both body and soul | my brother should be glad
 to know which shall speak to you first ; for we have
 4 both an affair of consequence to mention to you,
 and ^c I have also an affair of consequence to mention

^a See p. 170. sect. 3.
^c p. 194. sect. 4.

^b See p. 280. sect. 2.

to you 6 both | ^a whom do you want? your coachman
 or your cook? for I am 5 both one and the other |

^{cuisinier car} 5 both you and he ^b shall find my gratitude | 5 both
 religion and virtue are called the bonds of civil society,

and are indeed the greatest of blessings | for this purpose
 he applied himself to the studies of architecture and

gardening, and read over many books on 6 both these
 subjects.

subjects.

sujet.

R U L E X I.

1. *None*, when it is a nominative, is expressed by *nul*, *nulle*, *aucun*, *aucune*, *pas un*, *pas une*, *personne*, they all govern the negative *ne* and the verb in the singular; but *nul* is never used with reference to any noun, and *aucun*, *pas un*, can only be used relatively to some noun; as, *none knows if he is just before God*, *nul*, or, *personne ne sait s'il est juste devant Dieu*; *he asked his friends whether they would follow him, but none answered*, *il demanda à ses amis s'ils vouloient le suivre, mais aucun, pas un, or, personne ne répondit*.

2. *Nul* may also be used before a genitive; as, *none of those ladies was admitted*, *nulle de ces dames ne fut admise*.

3. Though *personne*, when it is a pronoun, is always masculine, yet when it is followed by a genitive, and

^a See p. 261. sect. 1.

^b See p. 194. sect. 1.

^c This word must be singular.

relates to a noun feminine, the next adjective must be of that gender ; as, *none of you, ladies, will be bold enough*, *personne de vous, mes dames, ne sera assez hardie.*

4. *None*, is expressed by *aucun* or *personne* after prepositions, and when it is in the accusative, by *en*, which governs *ne* before the verb.

5. *No*, being joined to a substantive, is expressed by *nul*, *aucun*, or *point de* ; but this last cannot be used after a preposition, nor as a nominative. Observe also, that *nul* seldom relates to things ; as, *no man is sure to live*, *aucune homme, or, nul homme n'est sûr de vivre ; I have no bread, je n'ai point de pain.*

6. *No one*, is expressed by *nul* or *personne* ; *no body* by *personne*, and *nothing* by *rien* ; this last likewise governs *ne* before its verb ; but that negative is suppressed with the verb *compter*, to reckon ; as, *do you reckon that for nothing ?* *comptez vous cela pour rien ?*

7. *No body whatever, no body in the world*, are expressed by *qui que ce soit*, which likewise governs *ne* ; as, *trust no body whatever, ne vous fiez à qui que ce soit.*

8. *None*, is sometimes emphatically put before a noun preceded by the preposition *of* ; it is then left out in English ; as, *he is none of my friends*, *il n'est point de mes amis.*

EXERCISE.

6 No one can say that of you ; you prefer music to
pouvoir *préferer musique à*
 every thing | I have only seen him in public for 1 none
en *public car.*
 of the family visit here | 2 none of her neighbours were
famille venir *voisin*
 kind enough to feed her pride with the honour she
complaisant pour flatter *de*
 seemed.

seemed to demand | I will obey you; but first I will
*ssembler * exiger* *obéir* *auparavant*

fasten the door, ^a that i none may interrupt us |
fermer *afin* *que* *interrompre*

I have read that a good countenance is a letter of re-
intéressant figure, si *re-*

commendation; if so, i none ever can be more
commendation si cela est vrai *jamais sauroit être*

strongly recommended than yourself | but Sir Roger
fortement

who knows that i none of my extraordinary motions
extraordinaire mouvement

are insignificant, rode up to ^b me, and asked me
sans dessein *venir ** *demander **

if pulse was gone that way | I was inferior to ⁴ none
le lievre avoit pris ce chemin là *li céder **

in any acts of debauchery | if you have a fortune,
dans aucunes parties de débauche *de la fortune*

you are hereby rendered incapable of enjoying ^c it;
par là se rendre incapable *jouir de*

if you have ⁴ none, you are disabled from acquiring
se mettre hors d'état acquérir

^d any | it may be in the power of fortune to delay our
il peut être à *de différer*

happiness; but ⁵ no power on earth shall force me
puissance sur terre *forcer*

to destroy our ^e hopes by any other match | ^f he who
de détruire notre espoir *une* *alliance*

is rich, has ⁵ no vice; and ^f he who is poor has

⁵ no virtue | I gave them ⁵ no quarter ^g until they had
repos

^a See p. 128.

^b See p. 200. sect. 1.

^c p. 246. sect. 2.

^d p. 281. sect. 7.

^e This word must be sing.

^f p. 206. sect. 1.

^g See p. 129. sect. 3.

brought me a broker | there is perhaps ⁵ no surer
amener fripier certain
 mark of folly than an attempt to correct those we
marque, f. folie de chercher à corriger
 love | she has the greatest defect a woman can have;
défaut pouvoir
 she has ⁵ no fortune | as the captain was always
*bien capitaine **
 on the look out, ⁵ ^b no glance, gesture, or word
sur le qui vive coup d'œil geste
 escaped him | it is ⁸ none of his fault that his visit
*échapper * à fautive si visite, f.*
 proves unseasonable | among many other instances
se trouve faite à contre-tems entre exemple
 of the corruption of the age wherein we live, the
corruption siècle où vivons
 general want of sincerity is ⁸ none of the least.
défaut sincérité moindre

R U L E XII.

1. The following words, *personne, quelqu'un, aucun, nul, quoi, quelque chose, quoi que ce soit, ce que, rien, je ne sai quoi*, govern *de* before the next adjective, participle, and sometimes before an adverb of quantity in such instances as this: *nothing too much, rien de trop.*

E X E R C I S E.

The gothic stile of building could produce ¹ nothing
*gothique architecture pouvoir * produire rien*

^a See p. 242. sect. I.

^b This word must be repeated before the two following substantives.

which

nobler than Mr. Allworthy's house | : every thing
noble *tout ce*
 which the squire held most dear, to wit, his guns,
*que chevalier avoir * plus cher savoir fusil*
 his dogs and horses were now as much at the
*chien cheval * alors aux*
 command of Jones, as if they had been ^a his own |
ordres
 his Latin quotations, some of which were applied
*unes Latin citation quelques unes * appliqué*
 properly enough, seemed yet to indicate | something
*heureusement assez * encor annoncer quelque chose*
 superior to a common barber | I desire | nothing more
supérieur ordinaire barbier demander de plus
 than leave to attend you in this expedition |
la permission de accompagner expédition
 | something very extraordinary must have determined
extraordinaire devoir déterminer
 you to this course of life | was ever | any thing so
genre y a-t-il jamais du rien
 mean, Sophronia ?
bas Sophronie ?

OF VERBS.

R U L E I.

1. The singular may be used after several substantives singular, when they are not joined by the conjunction *and*, especially if they are almost synonymous; as, *a livid paleness, a mortal chillness had seized all his limbs, une paleur livide, une froideur mortelle avoit saisi tout son corps.*

^a See p. 217, sect. 2.

2. The

2. The adjective and relative common to several substantives may also in the same case agree with the last only; as, *these immortal beauties display an innocence, a modesty, a simplicity that is charming.*

3. Two nominatives singular, tho' joined by the conjunction *and* may sometimes have their verb in the singular; but these are instances which must be imitated with great caution.

E X E R C I S E

The beauty, the youth of Calypso I had not been
beauté jeunesse Calypso n'avoit
 able to get the ascendant over Minerva's arts |
pu triompher de Minerve artifice, m.
 what chance, what storm I has thrown you upon
hasard tempête, f. jeter sur
 this shore? | the friendship and gallantry of Tom
rivage amitié courage
 Jones 3 was celebrated by a all who were present |
** célébré par * présent*
 thus the beauty of day and that of summer 3 is set
été relevé
 off by the horrors of night and winter | not only your
horreur hiver non seulement
 poor Sophia's happiness, her very life, ^b her being
Sophie bonheur sa vie même existence
 I depends on your granting that request | you
dépendre de la grace qu'elle vous demande
 know, ^c dear Mentor, the vain pride and false glory
hauteur gloire
 in 2 which princes are brought up | a such I was the
*élève tel **

^a See p. 268. sect. 4.

^b See p. 212. sect. 1.

^c p. 212. sect. 4.

envy and hatred which the eldest sister bore
envie *haine, f.* *ainée* *sœur* *porter* *
 towards the other, that notwithstanding she had some
à *quelque*
 part of the booty, she would willingly have parted
part à *butin* *volontiers* *se priver*
 with it to ruin her sister? | what I will be your
de *pour* *sœur*
 mutual distrust, your zeal to destroy each other? |
mutuel défiance *ardeur à détruire*
 I can the most perfect admiration, the most ardent
parfait admiration *ardent*
 love, the most resigned submission to your will
amour *aveugle* *soumission* *volonté*
 make you amends for what you are to sacrifice to my
dédommager *à* *devoir sacrifier à*
 happiness | a gentle and penetrating vigour, a balsam
doux *pénétrant* *force, f.* *baume*
 of life I insinuated itself from vein to vein, to
s'insinuer *veine en*
 the utmost recesses of his heart.

jusqu'au fond

R U L E II.

1. With several nominatives singular of the same person and joined by *either* and *or*, *ou*; as well as, *aussi bien que*; *no more than*, *any more than*, *non plus que*, the verb remains singular; *either* may be left out before the first substantive; *either courage or despair saved them*, *le courage ou le désespoir les sauva*; *non plus que*, will have the negatives *ne pas*, or, *point*, joined to the verb; as, *the father, no more than the son, will consent to do it*, *le pere, non plus que le fils, ne consentira point à le faire*.

^a See p. 246. sect. 2.

^b See p. 290. sect. 1.

2. When several substantives are joined by *neither*, *nor*, *ni*, the verb must be plural, and *ni* repeated before all the substantives, unless they are joined by the conjunction *and*; the negative *ne* is put before the verb, as has been already explained, p. 126.

3. If several substantives are nominatives to the same verb, and the last be singular and preceded in French by *mais*, or attended by *tout* and *même*, or if all the nominatives are summed up together by *every thing* or *nothing*, the verb must be singular; as, *not only all his honours and riches, but his virtue vanished away*, *non seulement tous ses honneurs & toutes ses richesses, mais toute sa vertu s'évanouit*; *your accomplishments, your mode of expression, your very looks, every thing tells me you were born in a higher rank*, *vos talens, votre langage, votre air même, tout m'annonce que le sort vous avoit mieux placé*.

EXERCISE.

Good fortune, or the advice of others, I may
bonheur conseil pouvoir
 raise a man of very mean ^a capacity | to ^b whatever
élever médiocre capacité en
 part of the known world the stormy weather, or
endroit connue tempête
 the anger of gods I may have driven him, I will bring
colere dieu jeter ramener
 him back | her mind, any more than her person, I is
esprit -personne, f.
 never trimmed with gaudy ornaments | neither Achilles
se parer de vain ornement Achille
 nor Theseus, nor even the great Alcides, ever
Thésée même Alcide

^a See p. 148, sect. 1.

^b See p. 274, sect. 4.

2 shewed

2 shewed so much constancy and virtue, as you |
*montrer * constance vertu*
 neither her beauty and youth, nor the charms of
charme, m.
 her nymphs ^a could inflame Telemachus | neither
*nymphes pouvoir * enflammer Telemaque*
 jealousies nor vain desires ever ² approached from this
*jealousie vain approcher **
 blessed mansion | with ^a whatever superiority of forces
heureux séjour supériorité
^a general engages in battle, the smallest mistake,
général s'engager combat faute, f.
 a panick, fear, ^a nothing ³ snatches the victory
panique terreur rien arracher victoire, f.
 out of his hands | the candlestick, necklace and
de chandelier collier
 ear-rings, my ring and ruby, ^b every thing
pendant d'oreille bague, f. rubis
³ remained there | the heart as well as the mind
*rester * cœur esprit*
^a wants instruction | the lady, no more than
avoir besoin de instruction dame
 her lover, ^a was very remarkable for beauty | ^c love,
*se distinguer * par*
^c passion, ^c constitution, ^b every thing protests
tempérament protester
 against that resolution | but as neither he, nor my
contre résolution comme
 father ³ were fortunate enough to be at home, I did
** heureux à la maison*
 not resist the opportunity | thus the man, as well
résister à occasion ainsi
 as the player, ^a may condemn what he
comédien pouvoir condamner

^a See p. 274, sect. 4.^b See p. 287, sect. 5.^c p. 133, sect. 2.

himself acts | Jones, no more than Adam, I had
faire *Adam*
 any man to ^b whom he might resort for comfort or
personne *pouvoir demander consolation*
 assistance | Charles, as well as the King of England,
secours
 to whom the secret was communicated, I were ready
secret *communiqué* *prêt*
 to receive him with open arms, and spared neither
à bras ouverts *il n'épargna*
 promises nor allurements which might help to confirm
caresse *pouvoir servir à confirmer*
 him in his resolution.
résolution

R U L E III.

1. In quotations, the nominative, whether a noun or pronoun personal, comes after the six following verbs, *dire*, to say; *répondre*, to answer; *répliquer*, to reply; *continuer*, to continue; *poursuivre*, to pursue; *s'écrier*, to cry out; as, you see, *said he*, vous voyez, dit il.

2. The nominative, when it is a pronoun personal, comes after a verb preceded by the conjunctions, *ainsi*, *aussi*, therefore; *peut-être*, perhaps; *du moins*, *au moins*, at least; *en vain*, in vain; *à peine*, hardly; *encor*, yet; as, *I am the most unhappy of mankind*; perhaps, you have had a friend or a mistress, replied the other, *je suis le plus malheureux des hommes*; *peut-être avez vous eu un ami ou une maitresse*, replied the other.

3. If it is not a pronoun personal, the nominative is elegantly put after the verb which is preceded by the relatives, *whom*, *that*, *which*, or by *where*; as,

^a See p. 210, sect. 3.

^b See p. 242, sect. 3.

the lessons which his master gave him, les leçons que lui donnoit son maître.

4. It is also put after the verb in pieces of oratory, or in descriptions, to give more force and energy to the sentence, especially when it is followed by several words that depend upon it; as, *eternal youth flourishes in her face with simple and unaffected majesty*, sur son visage fleurit une jeunesse éternelle avec une majesté simple & négligée; *out of this cavern there issued forth a black smoke which made a sort of night at mid-day*, de cette caverne sortoit une fumée noire & épaisse qui fesoit une espee de nuit au milieu du jour.

5. When the nominative to the verb *to be* is attended by an adjective, it is sometimes elegant in English to begin the sentence by the adjective and put the verb between it and its nominative; as, *not easy, indeed, is such a task*. After several conjunctions and adverbs, the verb may likewise precede its nominative in English; as, *no sooner did his father arrive*; in these and such like occasions the nominative must follow its natural order in French; as, *en effet une pareille tâche n'est pas aisée; son pere ne fut pas plutôt arrivé*.

EXERCISE.

I generally live upon ^a broth and juicy ^a meat,
ordinairement se nourrir de bisque succulent viande, &c.

I replied the canon—broth and juicy meat, I cried
répliquer chanoine

the doctor, I don't wonder now if you are sick:
docteur je ne suis plus surpris malade

delicious victuals are poisoned pleasures | so
délicat mets empoisonné plaisir ainsi

⁴ ^b flourished Idomeneus's new city on the sea side |
fleurir Idoménée nouveau ville rivage

thus will all kings ⁴ fall that shall give themselves up
tomber se livrer

^a This word must be plural. ^b See p. 89,

to their own passions and the deceitful counsels of
passion *perfidie* *conseil*
 flatterers | but instead of shewing the trouble and
flatteur *témoigner* *confusion*
 sorrow which her crimes ³ required | do you still
repentir *crime, m.* *mériter* *
 remember the surprise which the first English words
se souvenir *étonnement*
³ excited in you? | she had ² on that celebrated girdle
causer *à* * *fameux* *ceinture*
 on which the graces ³ appear | she alighted on the
sur *grace* *paraître* *se reposer* *
 shore where the numberless army of the confederates
qu *nombreux* *armée* *allié*
³ was encamped | when he saw the golden urn, in
camper * *or* *urne, f.*
 which the ashes of his brother ³ were contained | you
cendre * *renfermé*
 have not done what those ⁴ do who love truth, and
vérité
 who deserve to know it | hard by this beautiful coast,
mériter *connoître* *tout près de* *côte*
 an island ⁴ rises in the sea, where the city of Tyre ³ is
île *s'élever* *mer* *Tyr*
 built | contiguous to Mr. Allworthby's house ⁴ was
bâti *tout près de* *
 the manor of one of these gentlemen who are called
terre, f. *messieurs* *qu'on appelle*
 preservers of the game | Bourbon with great solemnity
conservateur *gibier* *Bourbon* *solemnité*
 and the most imposing affectation of ingenuity and
imposant *affectation* *ingénuité*
 candour, asserted his ² own innocence; and as his
candeur *affirmer* * *innocence*
 health, he ¹ said, was now more confirmed, he
santé * *affermi*

* This word is not expressed.

promised

promised to join the army within ^a a very few
*promettre * de joindre* ^{sous}
 days | the squire was so delighted with this conduct
*chevalier * enchanté de la conduite, f.*
 of his daughter, that he scarce ² eat any dinner | he
*à peine diner **
 was as honest as ⁴ men who love money better than
** honnête*

any thing in the universe, generally ^b are | but, if
qu'il que ce soit au monde ordinairement
 you have depended upon the favour of ^c both your
compter sur faveur
 uncles, ⁵ vain will be that dependance | no sooner
vain *espérance* *plûtôt*
 then, did the spirit of revolt ⁵ break out in
esprit révolte éclater †

Thuringia, than it assumed a new and more dangerous
Thuringe *prendre*
 form | yet ⁵ could ^d not this ⁵ assurance lessen
forme, f. *pouvoir ** *assurance adoucir*
 his despair of obtaining the content of her
le désespoir où il étoit obtenir consentement
 father | never ⁵ was ^e a woman so well pleased with a
** enchantée de*
 letter, as my young lady ^b was with his, and this is
*maitresse ** *en voici*
 an answer to it | she recommended to her the example
la réponse *recommander ** *exemple*
 of the polite world, where love, so the good lady
beau
 I said, is intirely laughed at.
absolument tourné en ridicule.

^a This word is not expressed. ^b See p. 257, sect. 1.

^c See p. 293, sect. 6.

^d This negative is expressed by *ne* only.

^e This article is not expressed.

R U L E IV.

The verb which comes in English after any noun collective singular, is often put in the plural, and the pronouns and relatives depending on it are also plural; as, *all the family are well*, tout la famille se porte bien.

1. Collectives partitive alone, when they are followed by a noun in the genitive, will have the next verb, adjective or relative, agree with that noun; as, *while that multitude of fearful and troubled men regret the loss of their lives*, tandis que cette multitude d'hommes timides regrettent la vie.

Observe, that this rule is not general, and good authors in some instances make the verb, adjective, and relative, agree with the noun collective.

2. Adverbs of quantity followed by a genitive plural, or by two genitives singular, will also have the next noun and adjective in the plural; as, *so many soldiers had fallen in the attempt*, tant de soldats avoient péri dans l'entreprise.

3. *Most*, is expressed by *la plupart*, which governs the preposition *de* with the article before the next noun; as, *most men*, la plupart des hommes; *la plupart* is sometimes followed by a noun singular, and will then have its verb in the singular. If it happens to be followed by a relative; as, *most who say so*, it is rendered thus; *la plupart de ceux*, or *de celles* (if it relates to women) *qui le disent*.

4. *Many* signifies *plusieurs*, and is always plural, tho' it is joined in English to a singular; as, *many women*, plusieurs femmes; *many a man*, plusieurs hommes; but, if it is preceded by the article definite, or the pronoun *these*, it is expressed by *sans nombre*, and comes after the substantive; as, *the many favours I have received from you*, les favours sans nombre que j'ai reçues de vous.

E X E R C I S E.

A shoal of nymphs crowned with garlands I swim-
foule, f. nymphe couronné de guirlande, f. na-
 med behind the chariot of the goddess | a multitude
*ger * derriere char déesse multitude, f.*
 of little Zephyrs I hovered about a large sail of purple
Zéphyr voltiger autour de grand voile, f. pourpre*
 that floated in the air above the chariot | a company
*flatter * air au-dessus de char compagnie*
 of young Trojans I danced ^a for a long time the
*Troyen danser * long-tems*
 dances of their own country | at first he perceived
*danse pays d'abord appercevoir**
 a great number of men who I had lived in the meanest
nombre, m. vivre bas
 condition | he is beset with a croud of his enemies
condition assiégé par foule, f. ennemi
 that I endeavour to overcome him | so many blessings
tâcher opprimer bien
 which we enjoyed a few hours ago ² are snatched
jouir de il y a peu d'heures enlevé
 from us for ever | how many men ² languish in an
à pour jamais languir
 obscure indolence who would become great men if
obscur indolence devenir
 emulation or the hope of success ^b animated them to
*émulation espérance succès animer **
 business | so many misfortunes you have gone through
travail malheur essuyer
² have not yet taught you | if children early imbibe
instruire de bonne heure se nourrir
 these noble maxims, there ^c will be but few ^d who
de maxime, f. très peu

^a This prep. is not expressed. ^b See p. 301. sect. 1.

^c See p. 258. sect. 6.

^d p. 242. sect. 3.

are not inflamed with the love of glory | 3 most of these
s'enflammer de amour gloire, f.

kings had been neither good nor bad | so much
mauvais

openness and probity 2 are certain vouchers of your
franchise probité sûr garant

future conduct | why does not our East-India com-
conduite à l'avenir Oriental Indes com-

pany import a slave? they would certainly find their
pagnie faire venir

account in ^b them | can I sleep in my grave while a
compte, m. reposer tombeau tandis que

set of villainous lawyers I are dividing among them
troupe, f. infame praticien partager

the little money I have | I can't make any thing of ^b it,
déchiffrer

because ^c half the letters I are left out | faith, I am
parce que lettre, f. omis ma foi

not jealous; besides 3 most who are engaged are wo-
jaloux d'ailleurs invuë

men and relations, and as for the men, they are of a
parent quant à

kind too contemptible to give scandal | he advanced
*espece méprisable pour inquiéter faire **

many a step forward in order to conceal the trembling
pas en avant afin de cacher tremblant

hind, and if possible, to secure her retreat | he
biche s'il étoit possible de couvrir retraite, f.

set forth in a long speech the 4 many iniquities of
*exposer * barangue, f. iniquité*

which Jones had been guilty, particularly those which
coupable particulièrement

this day had brought to light | the world who I have
venoit de dévoiler

already censured the ^d regard I have shewn for you,
blâmer égard avoir pour

^a See p. 285. sect. 3.

^c p. 192. sect. 5.

^b See p. 247. sect. 3.

^d This word must be plural.
 may

may think, with some colour at least of justice, that
apparence au moins justice
 I connive at so base and barbarous an action |
fermer les yeux sur bas barbare
 here he fell into the most violent agonies, tearing his
s'abandonner à transporer s'arracher les
 hair ^a from his head, and using 3 most other actions
cheveux faire
 which generally accompany fits of madness | the
ordinairement accompagner accès folie
 laquies are the men of pleasure of the age, and 4 many
laquais siècle
 a laced coat have had their education in that party-
galonné habit recevoir éducation bi-
 coloured regiment | we must use the utmost caution in
garré troupe, f. il faut user de la plus grande précaution
 chusing the objects of our beneficence, ^b a consideration
choisir générosité réflexion
 which has greatly checked the liberality of 4 many a
souvent mettre des bornes à
 worthy and pious man.
honnête charitable personne.

USE and CONSTRUCTION of TENSES.

R U L E. I.

1. *The present*, in whatever manner expressed in English, is always rendered by the *present* in French, except after the conjunctions *when, as soon as, while*, and the verb in the other part of the sentence is either in the future, or expresses a thing to happen, or to be done; the present is then rendered by the future; as, *I shall go and see you as soon as he comes, j'irai vous voir*

^a From his head is not expressed. ^b See p. 144. rule x.
 aussitot

aussitôt qu'il viendra ; *when I betray thee, may I share thy fate,* quand je te trahirai, puisse-je partager ton sort.

2. The gerund of a verb with the preterite of the verb *to be*, is always the imperfect in French ; as, *I was thinking*, je pensois.

EXERCISE.

Your sentiments ^{sentiment} are so agreeable to mine that we ^{conforme} appear to have but one soul | right habits as well ^{paroître} as wrong, ^{ame} are got by ^{les} affecting them, ^{bonnes} ^{comme} *les mauvaises habitudes se contracter affecter* and ^b she who could be thrifty a whole fortnight, ^{a pu} gives great hopes that she will be ^{ménager} so as long as ^{quinze jours de suite} she ^{beaucoup à espérer} lives | while she was ^{tant que} endeavouring to ruin ¹ the little infant in order to ingratiate herself with ^{tandis que} the captain, she was more and more commending ^{s'efforcer} it before Mr. Allworthy, whose fondness for it ^{de perdre} every day ^{de jour en jour croître} increased | this will be always the ^{il} case while they ^{en} remain among their former ^{sera} acquaintance | when the reader ^{il en sera toujours de} hears the brother's ^{même tant que} ^{s'en} ^{tenir à} ^{ancien} ^{d'} acquaintance | when the reader ^{connoissance} ^{lecteur connoître} hears the brother's

^a See p. 115. sect. 4.

^b See p. 206. sect. 1.

^c p. 257. sect. 1.

^d This word must be plural.
qualifications

qualifications, he will not blame the confidence which
talent *confiance* *avec*
 he entertained of his success | when you reflect on
laquelle il se flattoit du succès *réfléchir sur*
 the situation in which I write, I am sure your
situation où je me trouve en vous écrivant *sûr*
 good nature will pardon ^a any inconsistency or absur-
bonté *excuser* *contradiction* *absur-*
 dity which my letter contains.
dité dont ma lettre est remplie.

R U L E II.

Both the preterite simple of an English verb, or its infinitive, with the auxiliary *did*, may be rendered in French by the imperfect, the perfect definite, the perfect indefinite, the first and second pluperfect, and the conditional. The following observations well understood, will be a great help to the scholar to direct him how to make a proper distinction of them.

1. We use the imperfect when we speak of actions which were habitual ; as, *I got up earlier when I was in the country*, *je me levois plus matin quand j'étois à la campagne*. Likewise in descriptions ; as, *that grotto was on the declivity of the hill*, *cette grotte étoit sur le penchant de la colline*.

2. When we mention the character of persons that are dead ; as, *Cesar was a great man*, *Cesar étoit un grand homme*.

3. When we speak of persons that are now living, and a certain period of time is expressed or understood ; one may also use the perfect indefinite ; as, *that lady was very handsome in her time*, *cette dame étoit, or, a été bien belle dans son tems*.

^a See p. 280. sect. 3.

4. We use the imperfect after *if*, when it denotes the condition upon which a certain thing might be done ; as, *I should go to the play if I had money*, j'irois à la comédie si j'avois de l'argent.

5. When the verb represents the action as present at a certain time ; as, *I have lost the purse I had yesterday*, j'ai perdu la bourse que j'avois hier.

6. We use the perfect definite, which by some is called the historical tense on account of its frequent use in history, when we acquaint our readers or hearers with what happened at a certain time expressed or understood, and it is for that reason it is called perfect definite ; as, *we supped at your brother's last night*, nous soupâmes hier au soir chez votre frere.

7. If the thing spoken of happened in a time which is not quite past, such as, *this morning, this week, this month, &c.* we use the perfect indefinite ; as, *I saw him this morning*, je l'ai vu ce matin.

8. When we speak of a thing quite past, without specifying the time, we generally use the perfect indefinite ; as, *I saw him once at your house*, je l'ai vu une fois chez vous ; *I never saw him*, je ne l'ai jamais vu. In some occasions it is indifferent to use either the perfect definite or the indefinite ; as, *Rome was built by Romulus*, Rome fut, or, a été bâtie par Romulus.

9. Though the time is specified, the definite or indefinite are promiscuously used in speaking of common events ; as, *I supped with him last night*, je soupai, or, j'ai soupé hier au soir avec lui ; *I saw him yesterday*, je le vis, or, je l'ai vu hier.

10. The single preterité is put in the first pluperfect, when it is preceded by another verb, which in French is either in the imperfect, perfect definite, or pluperfect, and we wish to express a thing which happened but once ; as, *he told me he learnt French formerly*, il me dit qu'il avoit autrefois appris le François.

11. It is also put in the first pluperfect after *since*, when the first verb is in that tense ; as, *he had hardly shut his eyes since he left the inn*, il avoit à peine fermé les yeux depuis qu'il avoit quitté l'auberge.

12. The

12. The simple preterite is put in the second pluperfect in French after the conjunctions *after, no sooner but*, when the verb in the other part of the sentence is rendered in French by the perfect definite; as, *I went to the park after I left you*, j'allai au parc après que je vous eus quitté.

13. The simple preterite or pluperfect are sometimes used conditionally; they are then rendered by the conditional present or conditional past; as, *I had been a great fool if I had done it*, j'aurois été un grand sot si je l'avois fait.

E X E R C I S E.

As soon as he was dressed ^a I ⁶ retired, but
aussitôt que ^{babillé} ^{se retirer}
⁶ overheard him sigh in the most heavy manner; he
entendre ^{pousser de} ^{profonds soupirs}
⁶ walked to and fro in the room, then ⁶ went
se promener en long & en large chambre, f. ensuite se retirer
to his closet; when he ⁶ came out, he ⁶ gave me this
dans cabinet en sortant
for his mistress, whose ^b maid you know | I have told
maîtresse connoître dire à
my reader that Mr. Allworthy had inherited a large
hérité de g ands
fortune, that he ² had a good heart and ^c no family;
biens enfans
hence ^d it will be concluded that he ² lived like ² an
de là conclure vivre en
honest man and ² kept a good house | on her arrival
Et qu'il tenir à arrivée
in this place the ⁶ went immediately to the habitation
endroit se rendre sur le champ chez
of an elderly matron, ^f to whom, as this matron ² had
vieux matrone comme

^a See p. 204. sect. 3.

^b See p. 232. sect. 3.

^c p. 296. sect. 5.

^d p. 265. sect. 4.

^e p. 147. sect. 2.

^f To and whom are no expressed.

the good fortune 1 to resemble herself in the comeliness
bonheur de ressembler à par graces
 of her person as well as in her age, she had
par elle avoit
 generally been more favourable than to any other
toujours eu plus de prédilection pour elle que pour qui
 person, after she had imparted to her what had
que ce fût après que † communiqué
 happened, they 6 began both of them to scrutinize
toutes deux à examiner
 the characters of the 4 several young girls who 5 lived
mœurs toutes les jeunes filles vivre
 in any of the neighbouring houses, and at last
le voisinage enfin
 6 fixed their strongest suspicions on one Jenny
leurs plus violens soupçons s'arrêterent sur
 Jones, who 6 seemed to them the likeliest person
paroître être la personne qui
 to have committed this fact | Jenny 6 was now
vraisemblablement avoit commis le crime alors
 summoned to appear before Mr. Allworthy, a which
sommé de comparoître devant
 she immediately 6 did | that venerable man 6 took
faire digne respectable faire
 her into his study and 6 spoke to her as follows |
entrer dans cabinet de la maniere suivante
 this gentleman 2 was about thirty-five years of ^b age;
cavalier avoir environ
 he 2 was of a middle size, and what is called well
moyen taille ce qu'on appelle
 built; he 2 had a scar on ^c his forehead, which
bâti cicatrice, f. à front
 2 denoted his valour | I 9 went to bed very late last
*annoncer * valeur se coucher très tard hier*

^a See p. 244. sect. 1.

^b Of age is not expressed.

^c p. 215. sect. 1.

night | your cousin 3 was not fond of dancing last
au soir *aimer* *danse l'année*
 year | he was preparing to step into bed, when he
passée *aller se mettre au lit*
 he 6 beheld an infant wrapt up in some coarse linen;
appercevoir *enfant enveloppé* *gros linge*
 he 6 ordered an elderly servant to rise immediately
ordonner à vieux domestique
 and come to him | there I was in that house an air
de venir le trouver *air*
 of grandeur that I struck with awe, and I it was as
grandeur *imprimer le respect*
 commodious within as venerable without | Mr.
commode intérieurement qu'elle étoit imposante au dehors
 Allworthy 6 answered to ^a all the captain had urged
avancer
 on this subject, that ^b however guilty the parents
fur *sujet* *coupable* *parent*
 might be, the children 5 were certainly innocent |
enfant *innocent*
 he 6 said he 5 knew many held the same principles
savoir plusieurs personne avoir *principe, m.*
 with the captain on this head, but he 5 was him-
que *point mais qu'il*
 self firmly convinced to the contrary | among his
fortement convaincu de contraire entre
 other treasures the Pedagogue 5 had a wife whom he
trésor *Pédagogue*
 had ^c married out of Mr. Allworthy's kitchen for her
prendre dans *cuisine à cause de*
 fortune, viz. twenty pounds which she had there
fortune, qui étoit de livre sterling *y*
^c amassed | this woman 2 was not very amiable in her
amasser *n'avoir rien de fort amiable dans*

^a See p. 268. sect. 4.

^b See p. 274. sect. 2.

^c This participle is declined.

person | she exactly 2 resembled the young wo-
*personne, f. exactement ressembler **

man who is pouring out her mistress's tea in one of
verser le thé à sa maitresse dans

Mr. Hogarth's pictures: ^a she 2 was besides a profest
tableau en outre déclaré

follower of that noble sect founded by Xantippe of
sectatrice secte, f. fondé par l'ancienne

old, by means of which she 10 became more for-
Xantippe au moyen de quoi se rendre for-

midable in the school than her husband | for which
midable école mari c'étoit la raison

reason the ancients 1 used on such occasions to sa-
pour laquelle ancien avoir coutume dans ces occasions de sa-

cristee to the goddess Nemesis, ^b a deity who 1 was
crifier déesse Nemesis divinité

thought to look with an invidious eye ^c on human
passer pour regarder de envieux œil humain

felicity | the christian religion 8 was instituted for
félicité chrétien religion institué

much nobler purposes than to enforce a lesson
une fin bien plus noble que celle de confirmer

which heathen philosophers had taught us long before |
payen philosophe donner long-tems auparavant

I 13 were weak indeed not to embrace real happiness
bien faible en vérité de saisir vrai bonheur

because the world does not think it so | it is cer-
parce que croire tel cer-

tain that his wife 6 repented heartily of the evidence
tain se repentir tout de bon de déposition

she had ^d given against him, especially when she 6 found
faire contre sur tout voir

Mrs. Deborah had ^d deceived her, and refused to
tromper qu'elle refusoit de

^a See p. 145. sect. I

^b See p. 144. rule x.

^c This prep. is not expressed. ^d This participle is de-
 clined.

make any application to Mr. Allworthy on her
démarche auprès de *en*
 behalf | the chief articles in that treaty ⁵ were
faveur *principal article de* *traité*
 that Charles should pay one hundred thousand
payer *deux cent mille*
 crowns ^a a year to the French king, and the half
écus *an* *que la moitié*
 of that sum annually, as long as the Princess
de cette somme seroit payée annuellement tant que *Princesse*
 13 had ^b no children | the Pope ⁵ had the same reason
Pape *raison*
 to dread the two rivals, and ⁵ saw that ^c he who
de craindre *rival* *il voyoit*
 13 prevailed would become absolute master in Italy | they
trionpher *devenir* *absolu* *maître de*
⁵ considered Ximenes rather as a rival who ⁵ aimed
regarder *plutôt comme rival* *chercher*
 at circumscribing their power, than as a minister who
à mettre des bornes à *pouvoir* *ministre*
 by his prudence and vigour was adding to the grandeur
prudence *fermeté* *ajouter* *grandeur*
 and authority of their master | the interposition of
autorité *maître* *entremise*
 heaven in favour of the christian religion ⁸ was
ciel *faveur* *se*
 manifested by miracles and prophecies | a few days
manifestes *miracle* *prophétie* *peu de jours*
 after he 12 left the city, he ⁶ was by a severe
après que quitter *ville* *par* *severe*
 edict, published in the Emperor's name, deprived of
édit *publié* *à* *nom* *privé*
 all the privileges which he ⁵ enjoyed as ^d a subject
jouir de *sujet*

^a See p. 143. sect. 2.
^c p. 206. sect. 1.

^b See p. 296. sect. 5.
^d p. 146. sect. 2.

of the empire | while the christian princes were thus
tandis que *prince*
 wasting each other's strength, Solyman the magni-
épuiser réciproquement ses forces *Soliman* *magni-*
 ficent 6 entered Hungary with a numerous army,
fique entrer dans Hongrie
 and investing Belgrade, which 5 was deemed the
après avoir investi Belgrade *passer pour*
 chief barrier of that kingdom against the Turkish
principal barriere *royaume contre* *Turc*
 arms, soon forced it to surrender | he 6 declared
armée il força bientôt cette ville de se rendre *déclarer*
 that whoever 13 took a single florin, should be
prendre seul florin
 dismissed next morning from his service | he no
renvoyé le lendemain matin *service, m.*
 sooner 12 began to advance towards Marseilles than
se mettre en marche vers Marseille
 the Imperial troops, exhausted by the fatigue of a
Impérial troupe, f. épuisé par fatigue
 siege which had lasted forty days, weakened by
duré *affoibli*
 diseases, and almost destitute of provisions, 6 retired
maladie presque destitué provision se retirer
 with precipitation towards Italy | Francis 6 agreed
précipitation vers convenir
 that at the same instant he a himself 13 was re-
au même instant où *re-*
 leased, he would deliver as hostages to the emperor,
lâché donner pour hôtege
 his eldest son, the Dauphin; his second son, the Duke
ainé Dauphin Duc
 of Orleans | Charles no sooner 12 received an account
la nouvelle
 of this confederacy than 6 he exclaimed in the most
confédération s'emporter

^a This word is not expressed.

public manner, and in the harshest terms against
publiquement dans dur terme contre
 Francis, as a prince void of faith and honour |

le traitant de prince sans foi & sans honneur
 she 6 said she might, possibly place the girl about
pourroit vraisemblablement placer la jeune fille
 her own person, when her ^a own maid who 5 was
auprès d'elle servante

now going away, 13 had left her | he 6 said he
sur le point de s'en aller quitter

5 was assured, that when he 13 had alledged
sûr alléguer
 what he 5 had to say in her favour, the girl would
à en faveur

be discharged | Square no sooner 12 made his appear-
renvoyé se montrer
 ance, than Molly 6 flung herself back in her bed,

se jeter à la renverse sur lit
 6 cried out she 5 was undone, and 6 abandoned herself
s'écrier perdu s'abandonner

to despair | I believe, brother, you are convinced I
désespérer convaincu
 know the world, and I 8 was never more deceived
connoître trompé

in my life, if my niece be not most desperately in
de niece éperdument

love | a lame fellow in rags 6 asked them
amoureux misérable boiteux couvert de haillons demander à
^b for ^c alms; upon ^d which Partridge 6 gave him

aumône sur rebuter
 a severe rebuke, saying that ^e every parish ought to
séverement en disant paroisse devoit

keep their ^a own poor | this 6 was accorded with
nourrir pauvre accordé de

^a This word is not expressed. ^b This prep. is not expressed.

^c This word must be sing. ^d See p. 245. sect. 2.

^e See p. 287. sect. 3.

more good will ^a than it 6 was accepted | for Par-
meilleure grace *accepté* *car*
 tridge would rather have submitted to the utmost
se soumettre aux plus grandes
 inclemency of the weather, than have trusted to
inclémences de l'air se fier
 the clemency of those whom he 5 took for hobgoblins ;
générosité prendre phantôme
 and the poor postboy 5 was likewise infected with the
postillon aussi saisi de
 same apprehensions ; but they 6 were ^b both obliged
crainte, f. obligé
 to follow the example of Jones, the one because
de suivre exemple
 he 5 durst not leave his horses, and the other because
oser quitter
 he 5 feared nothing so much as being left by ^c him-
ne craindre rien tant que de laissé
 self | ^d this is the ^e first robbery I ever 8 attempted,
vol essayer de faire
 and I have been driven by distress to this | upon
entraîné par misere y comme
 my enquiry who he 5 was, Sir Roger 6 told me ^f he
je m'informois
 was a young gentleman of a considerable estate
gentilhomme extrêmement riche
 who had been educated by a tender mother that
qui élevé
 5 lived not many miles from the place where we
à quelques milles endroit
 5 were ; ^g she is a very good lady, says my friend,

^a See p. 170. sect. 2.^c p. 210. sect. 4.^e p. 242. sect. 1.^g p. 208. sect. 2.^b See p. 292. sect. 4.^d p. 224. sect. 1.^f p. 208. sect. 1.

but 8 took so much care of her son's health that

prendre *soin* *santé*
she has made him good for nothing | she quickly
rendre *bien à rien* *bien vite*

6 found that reading 5 was bad for his eyes, and

s'apercevoir *lecture ne valoir rien*

that writing 5 made ^a his head-ache | he 6 was let

écriture *faire mal à la tête*

loose among the woods, as soon as he 6 was able to

lâché dans *bois* *en état de*

ride on horseback, or to carry a gun on ^b his

monter à cheval *de porter* *fusil sur*

shoulder.

épaule.

R U L E III.

1. The English perfect formed with the auxiliary verb *to have*, is always expressed by the perfect indefinite; as, *I have been reading*, or, *I have read this morning*, *j'ai lu ce matin*; the same exception mentioned in the use of the present, page 311, must be attended to; as, *I shall go and see you when I have done it*, *j'irai vous voir quand je l'aurai fait*.

2. The English pluperfect is generally rendered by the first pluperfect in French, except when it is preceded by the following words, *when*, *as soon as*, *before*, *hardly*, *scarce*, *no sooner but*, and the verb in the other part of the sentence is put in the perfect definite; as, *I got up as soon as he had spoken*, *je me levai aussitôt qu'il eut parlé*.

3. But the first pluperfect should be used, if the verb, in the other part of the sentence, was to be rendered by the imperfect; as, *I used to get up as soon as he had spoken*, *j'avois coutume de me lever aussitôt qu'il avoit parlé*.

^a See p. 215. sect. 3.

^b See p. 215. sect. 1.

4. The future and conditional are generally rendered by the future and conditional, and their compounds by the corresponding tenses in French; as, *I shall go if you come along with me, j'irai si vous venez avec moi; I should do it if I could, je le ferois si je le pouvois; I shall have dined when you come, j'aurai diné quand vous viendrez.* Some exceptions will be found in the observations upon the auxiliary verbs.

E X E R C I S E.

When we 2 had gone about two hundred paces,
 we entered into a stable | after the captain of the
 thieves 2 had made the apology of his profession, he
 continued thus | I'll have a word with you after you
 i have done | I remembered him before 2 he had
 done speaking, and we embraced with transport |
 when I 2 had thus bewailed my misfortune, I
 considered that instead of giving way to sorrow, I
 ought to animate myself against mischance |
 Square said he i had been endeavouring to reconcile
 the behaviour of Tom with his idea of perfect virtue
 | nothing would have been more agreeable to him
 than to see them waste each other's strength
 in

in endless quarrels | when the good man
sans fin querelle *cet homme respectable*
 2 had ended his speech, Jones was last who deserted
finir discours *dernier* *quitter*
 his room | when our young ladies 2 had
chambre, f. *dame* *se*
 determined to remain all that evening in the inn,
décider *à passer le reste de la soirée dans auberge, f.*
 they were attended by the landlady | Partridge 2 had
l'hôtesse vint leur demander leurs ordres
 no sooner recovered his legs than he appealed to his
se remettre sur ses jambes *en appeller à*
 fall as conclusive ^a evidence of ^b all he had asserted |
chûte, f. concluant *preuve, f.* *avancé*
 as soon as you ^c arrive in town and I have got yourself
arriver *s'habiller*
 into a decent dress, for indeed, brother, you have
décemment *car en vérité* *n'avez*
 none at present fit to appear in, you must
point d'habit dans lequel vous puissiez vous montrer *devez*
 send your compliments to lady Bellafton, and desire
compliment *lady* *lui demander*
 leave to wait on her: when ^d you ^e are admitted
la permission d'aller la voir *admis*
 in her presence, as you certainly will ^e be, and
en *présence comme* *Et que*
 I have told her your story, and ^f have made a
raconter *histoire, f.* *fait*
 proper use of my name, I am confident she will
convenable usage *sûr*
 withdraw her protection from my niece, who has
cesser de protéger
 certainly ^g imposed upon her.
trompé

^a See p. 148. sect. 1.^b See p. 268. sect. 4.^c p. 311. sect. 1.^d p. 204. sect. 2.^e p. 257. sect. 1.^f This verb is not expressed.^g This participle is declined.

R U L E IV.

1. The negative *not* may be rendered by *ne* only with the following verbs, *pouvoir*, to be able ; *oser*, to dare ; *cesser*, to cease ; as, *I dare not do it*, *je n'ose le faire* ; likewise after *savoir*, when it is followed by one of these words, *si*, if ; *où*, where ; *comment*, how ; *combien*, how much ; *quand*, when ; *quel*, *que*, what ; *qui*, who ; as, *I don't know whether he will come*, *je ne fais s'il viendra* ; *he does not know what to do*, *il ne sait que faire*.

2. When the preterite or pluperfect are followed by their nominatives in a sentence which is not interrogative, the nominative must come before in French, and be preceded by *si*, if ; as, *were I sure of it, I should grant your request*, *si j'en étois sûr, je vous accorderois votre demande*, and sometimes by *quand même* ; as, *I should venture it, were I to perish in the attempt*, that is, *tho' I were to perish in the attempt*, *je le tenterois, quand même j'y devrois périr*.

3. When the verbs, *to go*, *to come*, are joined to another by the conjunction *and*, the latter is put in the present of the infinitive, and the conjunction suppressed ; as, *they came and presented themselves one after another*, *ils venoient se présenter l'un après l'autre*.

4. The pluperfect of the subjunctive is often used for, and in the same tense, as the compound of the conditional ; as, *I should have been sorry not to have seen you*, *j'eusse été fâché de ne pas vous avoir vu* ; the same tense is also used instead of the first pluperfect of the indicative ; as, *if I had known you were to come*, *si j'eusse su que vous deviez venir*.

E X E R C I S E.

2 Had I taken your advice, I ^a had been happy ;
suivre avis
 but, you I cannot blame me ^b whatever has happened |
 he I could not expect that a prince so prudent and
s'attendre aussi
 cautious as Frederick, would set at defiance the
circonspect défier
 thunders of the church and brave the papal
foudre, m. église braverait pouvoir
 power, which had crushed ^c some of the most
du pape écraser
 powerful emperors in Germany | but he had now
^d got one of his fingers into the infant's hand, which,
 by its gentle pressure, seeming to implore his
par ses doux serremens sembloit
 assistance, ^a had certainly out-pleaded the eloquence
& il triomphé de
 of Mrs. Deborah, ² had it been ten times greater
fois
 than it was | the constable who would have surrendered
huissier relâcher
 his prisoner, ² had Tom demanded her, very
prisonniere réclamer
 readily consented to this request | when they
promptement
 came to the tree from whence he had formerly
arriver arbre d'où autrefois

^a See p. 315. sect. 13.^b See p. 275, sect. 7.^c p. 285. sect. 2.^d This word is not expressed.

tumbled in the canal, Sophia could not help reminding
 tomber canal s'empêcher de lui
 him of that accident | we I cannot here—avoid
 rappeler
 remarking that this conjecture would have been better
 d'observer conjecture
 founded, 2 had Sophia lived ten years in the air of
 fondé respiré pendant dix ans
 Grosvenor Square | I I know not what to say | Sophia
 place
 tormented with anxiety, I knew not what to believe,
 tourmenté d'inquiétudes
 nor what resolution to take | should I not be a
 blockhead to lend my money to I I don't know who,
 sot de
 because he will, perhaps, return it to me? I am sure
 rendre
 it is as safe in my bureau, and there I will keep it |
 en sûreté caisse c'est là que je le garderai
 he I could not find the way to those happy
 chemin de
 mansions, where fortune segregates from the vulgar
 demeure, f. séparer vulgaire, m.
 those magnanimous heroes a the descendants of ancient
 magnanime héros descendant
 Britons, Saxons, or Danes, whose ancestors, b being
 Bretons Saxons Danois ancêtre
 born in happier days, have entailed c riches and honours
 né transmettre
 on their posterity | Mrs. Miller herself expressed
 à postérité témoigner
 some doubt, and said, she I knew not what to think
 doute, m.
 | O! my Sophia, 2 did you know the thousand
 tourment

^a See p. 144. rule x.

^c p. 133. sect. 2.

^b This word is not expressed.
 torments

torments I have ^a suffered in this ^b long fruitless
sans nombre souffrir infructueux
 pursuit — pursuit of whom? said Sophia, a little
poursuite. f. Et qui poursuiviez vous revenant
 recollecting herself, and assuming a reserved air —
un peu à elle-même prendre réservé
 can you be ^c so cruel to ask that question? cries Jones;
faire
 need I say of you? — of me? answered Sophia;
faut il que je dise que c'étoit vous
 has Mr. Jones then any such important business
des affaires si importantes
 with me? I shew me my own daughter, and if I
 don't know how to come at her, I'll suffer you to
joindre je vous permets de
 call me a fool as long as I ^d live.
sot tant que

Of the SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

The subjunctive hardly deserves that name in English; indeed, if we except the auxiliary verbs *to be* and *to have*, there is no sensible distinction between the two moods, except in the third person singular of the present, *tho' he love*, instead of, *tho' he loves*; besides, except in poetry, the indicative may be, and is generally used in every instance. Not only there is a greater variety of terminations in the French subjunctive, as has been seen before, but its use is so great, that hardly any sentence can be of some length without it; yet no certain rules can be given to shew its use; the following observations may help the beginner, till the best master, practice, has taught him.

^a This participle is declined. ^b See p. 166, sect. 2.

^c See p. 174. sect. 3. ^d p. 311. sect. 1.

1. The subjunctive is used after all verbs expressing wish and doubt, and generally speaking, some passion or sentiment of the mind (the verb *to hope* is excepted) as, *I am glad he has succeeded*, je suis bien aise qu'il ait réussi; *I wonder you dare do it*, je suis étonné que vous osiez le faire.

2. When two verbs are joined by the conjunction *que*, and the first is either attended by a negative, used interrogatively, or preceded by *si*, if; that which follows the conjunction *que* is generally put in the subjunctive, especially if there is some doubt of the thing spoken of; as, *do you think he is come?* croyez vous qu'il soit venu? *do you perceive that he has improved?* vous appercevez vous qu'il ait profité? Yet, if we wish to speak more positively, we use the indicative; therefore this sentence, *do you think you can learn a language without studying it?* may be rendered these two ways; *croyez vous que vous puissiez*, or, *que vous pouvez apprendre une langue sans l'étudier*; but, when I use the indicative, I speak as if I was persuaded myself, that it is not possible to learn a language without studying it; whereas, when I use the subjunctive, I ask yourself, without any regard to my own opinion, whether you think the thing possible or not; thus, when Gilblas says, *Et croyez vous que ces remèdes lui sauveront la vie?* do you think these remedies will save his life, he himself is firmly persuaded that they will not. I must at the same time warn the scholar, that as the subjunctive is most generally used, the safest way is to prefer it.

3. The subjunctive is also used after impersonal verbs denoting necessity, fitness, possibility, &c. as, *it is possible I have done it*, il est possible que je l'aye fait; after all impersonals attended by a negative, used interrogatively, or conditionally; as, *is it true you have seen him?* Est il vrai que vous l'avez vu; after those impersonals formed with the verb *to be* and an adjective; as, *it is shameful you don't refuse him*, il est honteux que vous ne le refusiez pas; but the indicative is used

used when the adjective denotes the certainty or positiveness of a thing; such as, *plain, evident*; as, *it is certain he has not succeeded*, *il est certain qu'il n'a pas réussi*.

4. The following verbs, *craindre, appréhender*, to fear; *avoir peur*, to be afraid; and *empêcher*, to hinder; being followed by the subjunctive, govern *ne* before it, tho' there is no negative in English; but *ne* should not be used if the verbs *craindre, appréhender, avoir peur* were attended by one; as, *I am afraid you have done it*, *je crains que vous ne l'ayez fait*; *I am not afraid you have done it*, *je ne crains pas que vous l'ayez fait*.

5. When the verb *nier*, to deny, is attended by a negative, it is also elegant to put *ne* before the next verb; as, *I don't deny that I have spoken to him*, *je ne nie pas que je ne lui aie parlé*; but, the verb *douter*, to doubt, absolutely requires it; as, *I don't doubt he is your friend*, *je ne doute pas qu'il ne soit votre ami*.

6. The subjunctive is likewise used in exclamative sentences; as, *would to God you had it*, *plût à Dieu que vous l'eussiez*; *may you be happy*, *puissiez vous être heureux*.

7. There are some verbs in French which govern the next in the infinitive instead of the subjunctive, when they have both the same nominative; such as, *vouloir*, to be willing; *être fâché*, to be sorry; *être bien aise*, to be glad; *souhaiter*, to wish; *se repentir*, to repent; *être sûr*, or, *certain*, to be sure, or, certain; *être surpris*, to be surprised; *regretter*, to lament; *avoir honte*, to be ashamed; and sometimes, *s'imaginer*, to fancy; *croire*, to believe, &c. as, *I am sorry I have done it*, *je suis fâché de l'avoir fait*; *I am sure I have given it him*, *je suis sûr de le lui avoir donné*.

EXERCISE

E X E R C I S E.

He said he was persuaded that I should spend much
faire beaucoup de
 money in his house, and did not doubt that I 5 was
dépense chez lui & qu'il
 a gentleman of very independent fortune | 6 perish
gentilhomme fort à mon aise périr
 rather the nobility, clergy, and people | would to
plutôt noblesse clergé peuple, m. plutôt à
 heaven he 6 knew what my heart feels and suffers for
dieu que savoir sentir souffrir
 him | if you are happy, long 6 may you be so |
long-tems
 I am sorry I 7 have offended her, ^a and the ^b more be-
offenser
 cause I dont ^c know how | it seemed to her impossible
sembler impossible
 that any one who had the power to be encircled with
celle être la maitresse de se voir environné de
 company, 3 could by choice spend a second afternoon
monde, m. pouvoir par choix passer après-dinée
 alone | ^d whatever thy contrivance be, 6 prosper it
toute seule stratagème faire réussir
 heaven | ^e no man is wise at all hours, it is therefore
ciel il n'est donc
 no wonder that a boy 3 is not ^f so | the secular princes,
pas étonnant jeune homme séculier
 for the ecclesiasticks, although they gave no opposi-
ecclesiastique quoiqu'ils ne s'y opposassent point

^a This conjunction is not expressed.

^b See p. 180. sect. 1. and 2. ^c See p. 326, sect. 1.

^d p. 275. sect. 6.

^e p. 296. sect. 5.

^f p. 257. sect. 1.

tion, did not think it 2 was decent to join with
 them, drew up a list of one hundred grievances |
 notwithstanding the slow progress of the besiegers,
 and the glory which Leyva acquired by his gallant
 defence, ^a it was not doubted that the town 5 would
 at last be obliged to surrender | it was impossible
 that Henry 3 could expect that the emperor would
 listen to these extravagant demands | I shall never
 think 7 I have sufficiently rewarded you for what
 you have done | we are sorry that it 1 is not in
 our power to present it to our reader | I am con-
 vinced, my dear child, that my suspicions have wronged
 you ; and I am sorry that you 1 have been so severely
 punished on that account | she then recounted the
 story to her maid, and concluded with saying, don't
 you think he 2 is a boy of a noble spirit | I wish for
 the sake of his soul, your damnable doctrines 1 have
 not perverted his faith | you must not imagine,

^a See p. 265: sect. 4.

young man, that your age ² has totally taken away
entièrement dépouillé
 the authority of the master | I dont think you ² have
le maître de son autorité
 any thought ^a which you may be ashamed of : and
pouvoir avoir honte &
 yet, ^b child, you blushed just now, when I
sependant venez de rougir lorsque
 mentioned the word loving | is it possible that my
prononcer d'amour
 father and you ³ can see with my eyes | you shall
des mêmes yeux que moi
 never persuade me that you ² can lament yourself so
s'affliger ainsi
 for nothing | ^d he had amassed a pretty good sum
assez jolie somme, f.
 of money in Mr. Western's service, and was afraid
à
 that Jones ⁴ wanted to borrow some small ^e matters
avoir envie de emprunter quelque bagatelle
 of him | how can you deny that you ⁵ have considered
à balancer
 of contracting an alliance, when you so well know
à contracter alliance
 I am acquainted ^f with the party with whom you
connoître personne, f.
 desire to contract it | I desire my coach ¹ may be
avoir envie de s'engager vouloir voiture
 got ready immediately, for I am resolved to leave
prêt sur le champ car décidée à quitter
 your house this very morning | if I were sure ⁶ I
même

^a See p. 242. sect. 3.

^b See p. 212. sect. 4.

^c p. 314. sect. 7.

^d p. 203. sect. 1.

^e This word must be singular. ^f This prep. is not expressed.

7 should not be troublesome, I would accept your
être à charge, f. accepter
 offer | but ^a ere I reached the door, I saw, or fancied
offre, f. avant que gagner s'imaginer
 7 that I saw Lissardo, my brother's man | I admire
le laquais de mon frere s'étonner
 he ¹ comes not | I wish I never 7 had any thing
je voudrois rien
 to do with you | I am afraid you ⁴ think yourself
de commun
 better than you are | I should be glad that you
 I was as well as you ^b fancy yourself, for then
s'imaginer car alors
 you would be able to do yourself justice immedi-
en état se faire justice
 ately | do you think I ² am mad or I never ² saw a
fou
 sword in my life | I did not imagine you ² could
de
 attempt to impose upon me | I am surprised I
chercher à en imposer à
 7 did not know you sooner, for you are not in the
plutôt point du tout
 least altered | when he ^c had retired to his room, he
changé se retirer dans
 wished he ⁶ could procure himself a book | I am
fouhaiter se procurer
 really concerned that it ¹ is not in my power to
affligé hors de
 convince you of my gratitude | I think I ⁷ have
convaincre reconnoissance
 sufficiently warmed myself | perhaps you will ^d won-
assez se chauffer.

^a See p. 128.^c p. 323. sect. 2.^b See p. 257. sect. 1.^d p. 304. sect. 2.

der I 1 did not make this discovery long before ; but
découverte, f. long-tems auparavant
 women will suggest a thousand excules ^a to themselves
trouvent toujours excuse, f.
 for the folly of those they like | he lamented he
en faveur de la folie regretter
 7 had not known before how little the lady valued
savoir auparavant le peu de cas que la dame faisoit
 her money | when I do not ^b love and honour the
de lorsque cesser d'aimer
 man who dares venture every thing to preserve his
hasarder pour sauver
 wife and children from instant destruction, 6 may I have
certain ruine, f. pouvoir
 a friend capable of disowning me in adversity | he did
méconnoître adversité
 not deny that the affairs of this country 5 demanded
nier exiger
 a speedy inspection, and a thorough reform | Mr.
prompt examen une entiere réforme
 Powis did not know that ministers 2 had ^c any inten-
intention
 tion of dissolving parliament | I ought rather to be
tention dissoudre parlement je devrois avoir
 ashamed that I 7 do not accompany you | I have
bonte accompagner
 ordered a person to wait upon you, and to pay you
donner ordre à de aller chez vous de remettre
 twenty guineas, which I beg you will accept ^d till
je vous prie de vouloir bien accepter
 I have the pleasure of seeing you | I cannot think
 there 2 is any ^e thing easier than to cheat an old wo-
rien de tromper

^a To themselves is not expressed.

^b See p. 311. sect. 1.

^c See p. 280. sect. 2.

^d p. 128.

^e p. 289. rule xii.

man with a ^a profession of love when her complexion
 is amorous | ^b reserves were painful to free and open
^{avec protestation} ^{être de complexion}
^{amoureuse} ^{contrainte, f. pénible pour franc & généreux}
^b spirits like hers; and yet she must
^{cœur} ^{cependant elle ne pouvoit s'empêcher de}
 tell my aunt (to whom all this ^c was directed)
^{dire à} ^{s'adresser}
 that she should never forget what she owed to her
 sex and to herself, ^d were Mr. Lovelace as un-
^{ainsi qu'à} ^{ir-}
 exceptionable in his morals as in his figure | and
^{réprochable} ^{mœurs qu'il l'est} ^{personne}
 indeed ^d could I be as easy and happy here as I
^{en effet} ^{tranquille}
 used to ^e be, I would defy that man and all his
^{braver}
 sex, and never repent that I ⁷ have given the
^{je ne me repentirois jamais} ^{rendre mon}
 power of my fortune into my father's hand |
^{pere} ^{le maître} ^{de} ^{ma} ^{fortune}
 wonder not, my dear, that ^f I who ^g used to chide
^{de grander}
 you for these sorts of liberties with my relations,
^{de} ^{sorte, f.} ^{vis-à-vis de}
 now ⁱ am more undutiful than you ever was unkind |
^{désobéissant} ^{inhumain}
^h he is a vain man, capable of triumphing (secretly
^{triompher} ^{au moins}
 at least) over a person whose heart he thinks he ⁷ has
^{en secret} ^{de}
 engaged.
^{gagner.}

^a This word must be plural. ^b This word must be sing.

^c See p. 314. sect. 5.

^d See p. 326. sect. 2.

^e p. 257. sect. 1.

^f p. 194. sect. 3.

^g p. 313. sect. 1.

^h p. 208. sect. 1.

ⁱ p. 232. sect. 3.

Of the INFINITIVE MOOD.

The preposition *to* which generally precedes the infinitive in English, may be rendered by *de*, *à*, *pour*, and sometimes is not expressed. To determine before every infinite which of the above prepositions are to be used, would be an endless task, and could only be completed by inserting half the verbs, substantives, and adjectives of the French language, which most commonly govern a different preposition according to the different sense in which they are used. I shall only propose the three following observations, as they are not liable to any exceptions.

R U L E I.

1. The preposition *to*, is rendered by *à* after verbs, substantives, or adjectives, signifying inclination, aptness, fitness, or unfitness; as, *he is naturally inclined to do it*, *il est naturellement porté à le faire*.
2. It is rendered by *de*, when it may be turned into *of* and the gerund; as, *I am afraid to do it*, that is, *of doing it*, *je crains de le faire*.
3. It is rendered by *pour*, when it denotes the design, end, or reason for doing something, and can be turned by, *in order to*; as, *he works to live*, that is, *in order to live*, *il travaille pour vivre*.
4. Sometimes the verb *to be* has for its nominative another verb in the infinitive. In that case it is better to put the demonstrative *ce* before it; as, *to refer me to my friends is, effectually, to banish me for ever*, *me renvoyer à mes amis, c'est effectivement me bannir pour jamais*.

E X E R -

E X E R C I S E :

Lautrec, notwithstanding this cruel disappointment,
malgré *contrétemps*
 found ^a means ² to assemble a considerable army,
moyen *considérable*
 though far inferior in number to that of the con-
quoique fort inférieur en *con-*
 federates, | when they saw so many of their
fédéré *un si grand nombre*
 countrymen, ^b marching under hostile standards, and
compatriotes *ennemi drapeau*
 ready ¹ to destroy ^c each other, they became sensible of
détruire *commencer à sentir*
 the infamy to which they would be exposed | Fran-
s'exposer
 cis had reason ² to be surprised with this denunciation
raison *de* *déclaration*
 after having been at such pains ³ to soothe Henry
pris tant de peines *apaiser*
 and ³ to gain his minister | the nation sharing in
gagner *qui partagent*
 the glory of its monarch, and pleased with the
monarque *qui voyoit avec plaisir*
 confidence which the emperor ^d placed in the Eng-
mettre
 lish, discovered no less inclination ¹ to commence
montrer *ardeur*
 hostilities | they ^e elected new magistrates, ^e raised sol-
hostilité *élire nouveau magistrat lever*

^a This word must be singular.

^b This verb must be in the present of the infinitive.

^c See p. 290. sect. 1.

^d See p. 314. sect. 5.

^e p. 314. sect. 6.

diers, ^a appointed officers ³ to command them, and
nommer

^a guarded their walls with as much diligence as if
garder rempart vigilance

an enemy ^b had been ready ¹ to attack them | Francis
l'ennemi prêt

^a took ^c every possible precaution ³ to prevent the bad
précaution prévenir

effects of the irreparable error which he had committed |
irréparable faute, f.

to gain the confidence and esteem of the people and
gagner confiance estime, f. peuple, m.

at the same time to defend the rights of the crown,
en même tems défendre droit couronne, f.

⁴ was a task above his abilities.
tâche au-dessus de talent.

R U L E II.

I. When a noun or pronoun in the accusative is followed either by the present or perfect of the infinitive, that noun becomes in French the nominative of the next verb, which is put in the indicative, and the conjunction *que* is put before the noun; as, *he acknowledged the corruptions of the Roman court to be the source from which had flowed most of the evils the church now felt or dreaded, il reconnut que la corruption de la cour de Rome étoit la source d'où s'étoient répandus la plupart des maux que l'église éprouvoit ou redoutoit alors.*

E X E R C I S E.

Morone observing his ¹ resentment to be uniformly
voir ressentiment implacable

^a See p. 314. sect. 6.

^b See p. 326. sect. 4.

^c p. 287. sect. 4.

violent,

violent, artfully pointed out and aggravated
artificieusement faire remarquer aggraver
 every circumstance that could increase ^a its fury |
augmenter fureur
 I have indeed heard of that Partridge, and I have
en effet entendre parler
 always believed ⁱ myself to be his son | had my
quand
 father's pardon been as sure as I conceived his
même j'aurois été aussi sûr de l'indulgence de mon pere que je
 I resentment to be, I question whether
crayois l'être de son ressentiment douter que
 I could have submitted to live and converse with
j'eusse pu me soumettre à vivre & à converser
 those who knew ⁱ me to have been guilty of so base
savoir coupable
 an action | when a comic writer has made his principal
lorsque comique auteur rendre principal
 characters as happy as he can, or, when a tragic
caractère qu'il lui est possible tragique
 writer has brought them to the highest pitch of
conduire comble, m.
 human misery, they ^b both conclude their ⁱ business
penser tâche
 to be done, and that their work is come to a
rempli ouvrage arrivé fin
 period | I wonder that you ^c who are married and
s'étonner
 consequently should be discreet, will suffer your
conséquemment devriez être réservé souffriez
 wife to ^d be of such a party | though I allow ⁱ Lu-
partie convenir
 cinda to have sense, wit, beauty and virtue, I know
bon sens esprit

^a See p. 256. sect. 3.^b See p. 292. sect. 4.^c p. 241. sect. 1.^d p. 330. sect. 1.

^a another in whom these qualities appear to me more
un autre en *paroître*
 amiable | he had not anxiously solicited the high
aimable *avec empressement briguer* *élevé*
 office which he engaged; he was called to it by
poste, m. *remplir* *il y avoit été appelé par*
 his sovereign, and he had thought it his duty to
souverain *croire que c'étoit son devoir*
 obey | as he believed not one syllable of the appa-
d'obéir *mot* *appa-*
 rition, he imagined the whole to be an invention
rition *s'imaginer* *tout* *invention*
 formed only to impose upon him.
fait *à dessein de le tromper.*

R U L E III.

1. When the pronoun *it* being in the accusative, and attended by an adjective, is followed by a verb either in the infinitive mood, or preceded by the conjunction *that*, the sentence must be construed in French with the verb *être*, and the conjunction *que* put between the pronoun and the adjective; as, *I think it impossible to learn without taking pains, je crois qu'il est impossible d'apprendre sans se donner de la peine.*

E X E R C I S E.

He thought ^a it necessary to affect the greatest
croire *nécessaire de affecter*
 moderation while he ^b took proper measures to execute
modération *à l'exécution*
 the vast designs which he ^b meditated | this he did
des *il le fit*

^a See p. 258. sect. 6.^b See p. 314. sect. 5.

the most readily, as he imagined it utterly
volontiers s'imaginer absolument
 impossible that any one present should guess the
qu'aucun de ceux qui étoient présens devinât
 person ^b he ^c meant | he ^c did not concur with the
vouloir parler de être de
 opinion of those who think it as immaterial to con-
avis peu nécessaire de con-
 sult the inclination of their children in the affair of
fulter
 marriage, as to solicit the good pleasure of their
demande consentement
 servants when they intend to take a journey.
domestique se proposer de faire voyage.

Of PARTICIPLES and GERUNDS.

R U L E I.

1. The participle, as I have said before, is always declined in verbs passive, and in neuter verbs conjugated with *être*; it is also declined in reflected verbs, except when it is followed by a noun which it governs; as, *she has bought herself a gown*, *elle s'est achetée une robe.*

2. There is another instance in which the participle of a reflected verb is not declined, that is, when it is followed by another verb, and the pronoun personal which precedes it in a reflected sense, may, upon the verb being conjugated actively, come after it with the preposition *à*; as, *elle s'est proposé de le quitter*, which is the same thing as, *elle a proposé à elle même de le quitter.*

^a See p. 180. sect. 1.

^b See p. 237. sect. 1.

^c p. 314. sect. 5.

3. The participle is not declined when it is conjugated with *avoir*, and not preceded by one of the relatives *le, la, les, or que*; as, *they have done their duty, elles ont fait leur devoir*; but if it is preceded by one of the above relatives, it must agree with their antecedent; as, *the lady whom I have seen, la dame que j'ai vue.*

4. Neither is it declined when it is followed by an infinitive which governs the relative or pronoun personal coming before it; as, *the language I have resolved to learn; the resolution I have taken to go in the country*; now to know whether the relative *which*, understood in the above sentences, is governed by the participle, or by the next infinitive, you must put its antecedent after the participle and see whether it will make sense; if it does, the relative is then governed by the participle; if it does not make sense, it is governed by the infinitive; thus, in the first example, it is not governed by the participle *resolved*; for, I cannot say, *I have resolved the language to learn*; but it is governed by the participle in the other; because I can say, *I have taken the resolution to go in the country*; therefore these sentences are thus rendered in French, *la langue que j'ai résolu d'étudier; la résolution que j'ai prise d'aller à la campagne.*

5. It is by the same rule the following participles are not declined, *pu, du, voulu, fallu*; for a verb in the infinitive is always understood after the above participles; as in this sentence, *he urged all the reasons he would, that is, he would urge, il a donné toutes les raisons qu'il a voulu.*

6. The participle is also undeclined when it is followed by one of the relatives *que* or *qui*; as, *the reasons which he thought I approved of, les raisons qu'il a cru que j'approuvois.*

E X E R C I S E.

If this woman had lived in the reign of James the
vivre sous regne Jacques
 first, her appearance alone would have ⁴ hanged her
air faire pendre
 almost without ^b any evidence | upon our first going into
presque témoin à début dans
 a company of strangers, our benevolence, or aversion,
étranger nous sentons naturellement de la
 awe, or contempt, rises naturally towards
bienveillance ou de l'aversion du respect ou du mépris pour
 several particular persons, ^c before we have ⁴ heard
quelque avant de entendre
 them speak, or so much as know who they are |
même sans savoir
 this is a reflexion which I have ⁴ heard in
réflexion entendre faire en
 conversation from one of the greatest genius's this
à génie
 age has ³ produced | they had ¹ formed more bold
siècle produire se former hardi
 and generous sentiments concerning government |
noble idée sûr
 the laws which the ladies of his court had ¹ imposed on
loi dame cour s'imposer
 themselves were very rigorous | the figures which you
severe figure
 have ⁴ learnt to draw will certainly please | how
à tirer certainement plaire
 many men commit the same faults again which
retomber dans faute, f.

^a See p. 189. sect. 1.^b See p. 280. sect. 2.^c p. 128. observ. 1.^d p. 224. sect. 1.

they

they had 4 resolved to avoid | if she had 1 taken the
de éviter *se donner* la
 trouble to do it herself, her husband would not have

ine *mari*
 3 scolded her | we ought to spend a no day without
gronder *devrions* *passer*
 giving some time to the science which we have
tems *science*

2 determined to study | after having 1 dressed herself
se proposer *de étudier* *se parer*
 in her richest suits, she threw herself in the middle of
de *habit* *se jeter* *à* *milieu*
 the pile and was 1 consumed with the corpse of her
bucher *consumer* *corps*
 husband.

mari

R U L E II.

1. When a participle or an adjective coming immediately after a noun, either in the accusative or governed by a preposition, is followed by a dative, it must be preceded in French by the verb *to be*, and the pronoun relative *that* in this manner, *they knew they never would receive the money due to them*, ils savoient qu'ils ne recevroient jamais l'argent qui leur étoit dû.

E X E R C I S E.

But the frenzy reaching at last those countries in
frénésie *gagner* *enfin* *pays*
 which the reformation was established, derived new
réformation *établi* *tirer*
 strength from circumstances 1 peculiar to them |
force, f. *particulier*

^a See p. 296, sect. 5.

^b See p. 235, sect. 1.

^c This word must be plural.

he shewed his ^a soldiers the palaces and churches of
montrer palais
 that city, and promised them in reward of their
ville
 toils and valour the possession of all the treasures
fatigue pour
 accumulated there | I intend to marry my daughter
accumulé y se proposer de
 to Don Gusman, whom I expect from Holland where
attendre Hollande
 he ^b went to take possession of a large estate I left
aller considérable bien laisser
 him by his uncle | he is tormented with desires which
tourmenté de
 it is impossible for him to gratify, solicited by a
à de satisfaire aiguillonné par
 passion that has neither objects nor organs I adapted
objet organe, m. propre
 to ^c it | and I who never ^b intended to take advantage
avoir dessein de se prévaloir
 of the independency I bequeathed me, am to be as
fortune indépendante légué devoir
 dependent upon my father's will, as a ^d daughter ought
soumis à devoir
 to be who knows not what is good for herself |
convenir à
 whether we consider her behaviour as ^c a queen, as a
soit que considerer conduite, f. reine
 wife, or as a mother, she is justly entitled to the
avoir de justes droits
 high encomiums I bestowed on her by the Spanish
grand éloge, m. prodigué à par Espagnol
 historians.
historien

^a See p. 154. sect. 4.^b See p. 314. sect. 8.^c p. 253. sect. 3.^d p. 305. sect. 4.^e p. 146. sect. 2.

R U L E III.

1. When the English gerund, attended by one of the pronouns possessive *my, thy, &c.* is preceded by a preposition, that pronoun becomes in French a pronoun personal, and the verb is put either in the indicative or subjunctive, as either of these moods is governed by the conjunction into which the preposition must be changed; as, *the fear of his being elected had made a deep impression on the people,* la crainte qu'il ne fût élu avoit fait sur le peuple une impression profonde.

E X E R C I S E.

But, surely, this may be said without its
Mais certainement cela peut se dire sans que
 I being a necessary consequence that I must be in
s'ensuivre absolument je dois
 love with him | upon the whole, I have now no
l'aimer après tout il ne me reste
 a doubt of their persevering in favour of the
aucun doute persévérer
 despicable Solmes | the aerial voyagers perceiving the
miserable aérien voyageur s'apercevoir
 machine became very warm, were a afraid of its
s'échauffer considérablement craindre
 I taking fire, ^b and therefore descended not far
prendre feu c'est pourquoi ils descendirent près
 from the theatre where they had mounted | the cave
endroit d'où s'élever on montre
 is still shewn where Elijah is supposed to have resided
encor la cave où l'on suppose qu'Elie demeura
 previous to his I being taken up to heaven | the
avant que enlevé

^a See p. 330. §. Et. I.

^b This conj. is not expressed.
 superstitious

superstitious notions and absurd customs of the people
superstitieux idée absurde coutume, f.
 prevent their enjoying half of those blessings with
empêcher jouir de avantage de
 which providence has enriched their country | he
enrichir pays
 refused to retract his opinions unless he were con-
refuser de retracter opinions à moins que con-
 vinced of their falsehood, or to consent to their
vaincu fausseté de consentir
 being tried by any other rule than the word
jugé règle que par la parole
 of God.

Of VERBS PASSIVE.

R U L E I.

1. The prepositions *by, from, with*, after verbs passive, are rendered by *de*, or, *par*; but this distinction is to be made. When the verb expresses an action in which the body is not concerned, *de* is used; as, *virtue is esteemed by every body*, *la vertu est estimée de tout le monde*; the preposition *de* is also used with some verbs which denote no action; as, *incircled with company*, *entouré de monde*.

2. *Par* is used when the body, or, the soul and body are concerned in the action expressed by the verb; as, *He was beaten by his father*, *il fut battu par son pere*.

3. But a verb passive, when it is not followed by the above prepositions *by, from*, is commonly made active with the pronoun *on* for its nominative; as, *a pasquinade was published at Rome*, *on afficha une*

^a See p. 129. sect. 2.

^b See p. 280. sect. 2.

pasquinade à Rome. If the verb passive was followed by an infinitive, that infinitive should be put in the indicative mood, with the conjunction *que* before it; and the noun or pronoun put in English before the verb passive, would become its nominative; as, *Alexander is said to have cut the gordian knot*, on dit qu'Alexandre coupa le nœud gordien.

E X E R C I S E.

The horse 3 is reported to have been so charmed
 1 by Sophia's voice, that he made a full stop, and
 expressed an unwillingness to proceed any farther |
 to confess the truth, Jones was less pleased 1 with
 this last epistle, than he ^a had been with the
 former, as he was prevented by it from complying with
 the earnest intreaties of Mr. Nightingale | every
 body agrees that Hamlet is acted 2 by the best player
 who ever ^b was on the stage—^c he the best player,
 cries Partridge, with a contemptuous sneer; why, I
 could act as well as he myself—I am sure if I had

^a See p. 257. sect. 1.

^c p. 201. sect. 6.

^b See p. 314. sect. 8.

seen a ghost, I should have looked in the same manner |
esprit *faire la même figure*
 a Sir Roger and I must make a match, for we
chevalier *devoir se donner la main*
 are both despised ^a by those we loved | a dark vault
mépriser *obscur voute, f.*
 leads to an hexagonal building which forms a spacious
conduire *hexagone bâtiment* *vaste*
 theatre: the end opens to a terrace ^b which ³ is ascended
théâtre *bout donner sur terrasse* *monter à*
 by marble ^c steps: you then enter a square court
par marbre escalier *entrer* *quarré cour*
 surrounded by magnificent buildings: on each hand
entouré de magnifique bâtiment de côté
 are double rows of pillars which form galleries sixty
double rang colonne, f. *galerie*
 fathoms long ^d and eight broad | he knew what
toise *large* *savoir*
 veneration ³ was paid at that time to ecclesiastical
respect *avoir alors pour église*
 decisions; what terror ecclesiastical censures carried
décision *terreur ses censure porter*
 along with them, and how easily these might intimidate
combien il leur étoit aisé de intimider
 and shake a prince who was rather his protector from
ébranler *plutôt protecteur par*
 policy, than his disciple from conviction | such re-
politique *disciple conviction tel ré-*
 formations ³ are rather to be wished than hoped for |
forme, f. *devoir* *souhaiter* *espérer*
 Thwackum ³ was now sent for and presently
envoyer chercher
 appeared | within these few restrictions, I think
paraître *à ce peu de restrictions près*

^a See p. 139. sect. 1.

^b See p. 235. sect. 1.

^c This word must be singular.

^d See p. 168. sect. 4.

every author ³ may be permitted to deal as much in
pouvoir permettre de donner dans le
 the wonderful as he pleases; nay, the more he
merveilleux autant qu'il lui plaît &

^a can surprise the reader, the more he will engage
pouvoir étonner

his attention | the next morning as early as it was
attention le lendemain matin aussitôt que la décence

decent, Jones attended at Mrs. Fitzpatrick's door,
le permet se rendre à

where he ³ was answered that the lady was not at
répondre à chez

home, an answer which surprised him the more, as
elle réponse surprendre

he had walked backwards and forwards in the street
se promener d'un bout de la rue à l'autre

from break of day | the operation was at length
dès la pointe du jour opération enfin

performed ² by little Betsey, and the ^b contents were
faire contenu se

found to be a domino, a mask, and a masquerade
trouver domino masque, f. bal

ticket | but when Mr. Miller ³ was asked, he delivered
billet interroger donner

a very different opinion | ^c all I can conclude from it,
différent conclure

Sir, said he, is that you are a happy man | for I
mortel car je

make no doubt but these ^d were sent to you by some
ne doute point ces présents

lady whom you will have the happiness of meeting
bonheur trouver

at the masquerade | in less ^e than an hour another
bal

^a See p. 311. sect. 1.

^c p. 268. sect. 4.

^e p. 176. sect. 2.

^b This word must be sing.

^d See p. 314. sect. 8.

notè 3 was brought to him, which contained as
billet *contenir* ce
 follows : I have altered my mind since I ^a wrote ; a
qui suit *changer de idée*
 change, which, if you are no stranger to the tenderest
changement dont vous ne vous étonnerez point si vous
 of all passions, you will not wonder at | for besides
savez sentir la plus tendre des passions *autre*
 that, Moll 3 is said often to accompany her in the
que *dire* *accompagner* *sous*
 same shape, the cat 3 is reported to have spoken
forme, f. *chat* *rapporter*
 twice or thrice in her life, and to have played several
deux ou trois fois en *faire*
 pranks above the capacity of an ordinary cat | he has
tour *capacité* *ordinaire*
 done nothing ; he has said nothing, neither ; but he
non plus
 has contradicted ^b every thing that 3 has been said |
contredire
 cousin Harlowe, said my aunt Hervey, allow me to
permettre de
 say, that my cousin Clary's prudence 3 may be
pouvoir
 confided in | yet after all I cannot help
se fier à quoi qu'il en soit je ne saurois m'empêcher de
 thinking that she is the less to be pitied as she 3 may
à plaindre *pouvoir*
 be said to have long behaved unworthy of her
se comporter d'une maniere indigne
 birth and fine qualities | the next morning at day
naissance *dès la pointe*
 break we 3 were all called, and I who know my own
du jour *appeller*
 natural shyness dressed immediately.
naturel timidité s'habiller

^a See 314. sect. 8.^b See p. 287. sect. 5.

R U L E II.

1. Some verbs passive are followed by an accusative in English ; this construction can never take place in French ; the verb must be put in the active voice, and generally has *on* for its nominative ; as, *she was forbidden the use of paper, pen and ink*, *on lui défendit l'usage du papier & de l'encre.*

E X E R C I S E.

He is to be the ruin of us all, after his brother
destiné à nous ruiner tous
 I has been denied necessities for his sake | yet,
refuser nécessaire à cause de lui cependant
 is not ^a this right policy ; for people who allow
bon politique personne, f. passer
 nothing, I are granted nothing | desire to I be for-
accorder demander par-
 given a fault ^b you own, and yet resolve to
donner avouer être décidé à
 persevere ^c in, ^d is a boldness, no more to be equalled,
persévérer hardiesse qu'on ne doit ni imiter
 than passed over | the pilgrims I are shewn the field
ni excuser pèlerin montrer champ
 where the shepherds were watching their flocks, when
berger garder troupeau lorsque
 they received the glad ^e tidings of the birth of a
l'heureuse nouvelle naissance

^a See p. 305. sect. 5.

^b See p. 204. sect. 2:

^c p. 237. sect. 2.

^d p. 338. sect. 4.

^e This word must be singular.

bleſſed redeemer | ſhe was at leaſt happy to be
divin ſauveur ſe trouver au moins heureux
 ſpared the mortification of a diſcovery.
épargner déſagrément d'être découverte.

Of IMPERSONAL VERBS.

R U L E I.

1. *It is*, when followed by an adjective alone, is rendered by *il eſt*; as, *it is dangerous to walk by night*, *il eſt dangereux de marcher de nuit*; tho' when the ſenſe is complete, or the adjective is in the ſuperlative, we uſe *c'eſt*; as, *it is true*, *c'eſt vrai*; *it is the beſt*, *c'eſt le meilleur*.

2. The adjective depending upon the verb *it is*; cannot come before it in French; as, *true it is*, *il eſt vrai*.

3. It is rendered by *c'eſt* before a ſubſtantive whether attended by an adjective or not; as, *it is a falſehood*, *c'eſt une fauſſeté*; *it is a bad omen*, *c'eſt un mauvais préſage*.

4. Before one of the pronouns perſonal *I*, *thou*, &c. and the demonſtrative *what*; as, *it is what I had already told you*, *c'eſt ce que je vous avois déjà dit*; before prepoſitions, in which caſe the conjunction *que* is put before the ſecond verb; as, *it is to you I have reſourſe*, *c'eſt à vous que j'ai recours*; likewise before a gerund, which gerund is then put in the preſent of the infinitive; as, *it is acting contrary to the rules of prudence*, *c'eſt agir contre les règles de la prudence*.

5. *C'eſt* remains ſingular when it is followed by *nous*, *vous*; as, *we have done it*, *c'eſt nous qui l'avons fait*.

6. Before

6. Before nouns plural, or the personal pronouns *eux, elles*, it is better to put the verb in the plural; as, *it is they who have done it, ce sont elles qui l'ont fait.*

7. *It is*, being followed by *with*, is expressed by *il en est*, and *with*, by *de*; as, *it is with poetry as it is with music, il en est de la poésie comme de la musique.*

8. By *il y a* before a noun which denotes *space* or *time*, and the conjunction *since*, by *que*; as, *how long is it since you live here? combien y a-t-il que vous demeurez ici?* But, speaking of the time of the day, we make use of *il est*; as, *what o'clock is it? quelle heure est il? it is late, il est tard.*

9. By *il fait*, before an adjective which denotes the disposition of the air and weather; as, *it is fine weather, il fait beau tems*; likewise when it is construed with one of these adjectives, *good, bad, better*, and followed by a gerund; as, *it is good living in France, il fait bon vivre en France.*

EXERCISE.

I believe ³ it is a true observation that few secrets
véritable
^a are divulged to one person only | it is a more useful
découvrir *seul* *utile*
³ capacity to be able to foretell the actions of men from
talent de pouvoir prédire *d'après*
their characters, than to judge of their characters
caractère de
from their actions | it was dangerous to undertake
de entreprendre
^a difficult siege at so late a season; beside the
difficile dans avancé saison d'ailleurs les

^a See p. 349. sect. 3.

imperial generals had thrown into the town a gar-
généraux de l'empire *jetter dans* *gar-*
 rison composed of six thousand veterans under the
nison *hommes de vieilles troupes*

^a command of Antonio de Leyva, an officer of high
ordre, m. *marque*

rank, and of great experience | certain ² it is that
expérience

^b whatever was the truth of the case, there was
vérité *fait*

evidence more than sufficient to convict him
plus de témoins qu'il n'en falloit pour convaincre

before Allworthy | 3 it was Mr. Western's custom
devant *coutume, f.*

every afternoon, as soon as he was drunk, to hear
après-dinée *ivre de entendre*

his daughter play on the harpsichord | he declared
jouer de *clavecin* *déclarer*

with great concern that ¹ it was impossible to find
avec chagrin *de*

any other motive for doing good to such a wretch |
motif *bien un pareil misérable*

it will be believed that Mr. Allworthy failed not to
on s'imaginera bien *manquer de*

read Tom a very severe lecture on this account ; but
faire *sévère réprimande à* *sujet*

¹ it is unnecessary to insert it here | ² happy was it for
inutile de insérer *heureux*

Sophia that the same confusion which prevented her
confusion *empêcher*

other friends from serving her, ^c prevented them
servir

likewise from obstructing Jones | 8 it it now full
s'opposer à la fuite de Jones *quarante*

^a This word must be plural. ^b See p. 275. sect. 6.

^c See p. 330. sect. 3.

forty years since I first took thee to be about
bonnes années pour la première fois placer auprès de
 myself | I hope ^{moi} it won't be so cold next month as
le mois prochain
 it is now | 7 it is with a school as with a state ;
école, f. état
 it ^a cannot subsist without penal laws.
savoir subsister pénal loi.

R U L E II.

1. *There is*, is rendered by *il y a*, which has no plural ; therefore *there is*, *there are*, *there was*, *there were*, are equally expressed by *il y a*, *il y avoit*.

2. These idiomatical expressions, *how long have you been here?* *I have been waiting for you these two hours*, are also rendered by *il y a* ; as, *combien y a-t-il que vous êtes ici?* *il y a deux heures que je vous attends* ; in which sentences the negative *not* is rendered by *ne* only before the perfect indefinite ; as, *I have not seen him this fortnight*, *il y a quinze-jours que je ne l'ai vu*.

3. *Il est*, is also sometimes elegantly used instead of *il y a*, especially in pieces of oratory ; as, *there are generous minds*, *il est des cœurs nobles*.

4. *It seems*, *il semble*, when it is followed by a noun or pronoun, with the preposition *to*, governs the next verb in the indicative ; as, *it seems to me that you are in the wrong*, *il me semble que vous avez tort* ; otherwise it governs the subjunctive ; as, *it seems that you are afraid*, *il semble que vous ayez peur*.

5. The verb *must* is a personal verb in English, and is conjugated through all its persons, *I must*, *thou must*, &c. but the verb *il faut*, which answers to it in French, is only used in the third person singular. Therefore the nominative to that verb in English,

^a See p. 98.

must be placed after *il faut que*, and the verb following is to be in the subjunctive; as, *the scholar must be attentive*, *il faut que l'écolier soit attentif*.

6. This verb is very often followed by an infinitive in French; as, *it must be done*, *il faut le faire*; *a bad scholar must be corrected*, *il faut corriger un mauvais écolier*. Sometimes the nominative in English is put in the dative in French; as, *a master must have much patience*, *il faut beaucoup de patience à un maître*.

E X E R C I S E.

1. There was in the same house a lad near eighteen,
garçon d'environ dix-huit
 between whom and Jenny there had subsisted suf-
ans entre lequel *eu assez*
 ficient intimacy to found a reasonable ^a suspicion |
intime liaison fonder raisonnable soupçon
 the modern astronomers pretend | there are seas
moderne astronomie prétendre mer
 and rivers in the moon | I have been in England
riviere lune Angleterre
 2 these twenty years | besides has he not writ to
vingt an d'ailleurs écrire
 Bristol, and has he not advice that my father ^b has
ne lui a-t-on pas mandé
 not been heard of 2 these thirty years? | 3 there are
entendre parler de
 unhappy moments in life, wherein the most virtuous
malheureux moment où vertueux
 are the most feeble | 4 it seems that you know
foible savoir
 nothing, and that you have seen nobody | it seems
rien

^a This word must be plural. ^b See p. 349. sect. 3.

to me that your sister don't apply enough to the
s'appliquer
 language which she has ^a begun to learn | that fee-
langue, f. commencer à apprendre
 ble prince, deprived now of Morone's advice, and
privé avis
 unprovided with every thing necessary for defence,
dépourvu de tout ce qui étoit nécessaire à sa défense
 found ^b means to inform Clement and the Venetians
moyen de informer Vénitien
 that he ⁵ must soon surrender, if they did not come
bientôt se rendre
 to his relief | I ⁵ must begin by telling you that
secours par dire
^c you yourself have been the greatest enemy I ever
ennemi
 had.

R U L E III.

.I. Several neuter verbs in English must be used impersonally in French; as, *a difficulty arose concerning the baggage*, il s'éleva une difficulté à l'égard du bagage; *some compliments passed between our hero and his host*, il se passa quelques complimens entre notre héros & son hôte.

E X E R C I S E.

He imagined, therefore, that whatever quarrel
c'est pourquoi il s'imagina
 I was between them, it would be certainly made up
y avoir certainement accommodé

^a See p. 344. sect. 4.
^c p. 210. sect. 3.

^b This word must be sing.

at the return of Mr. Jones, an event from which
à retour événement
 he promised great advantages | his apprehensions had
se promettre avantage il étoit assez bien
 now pretty well left him, but some effects of his
revenu de ses craintes impression
 terrors remained | an accident happened which
 frayeur rester à lui accident arriver
 put a final end to my studies, and whence I may
mettre entièrement fin étude, f. d'où pouvoir
 truly date the rise of all which happened to me
vraiment dater cause, f.
 afterwards in life | our travellers had happened
dans le cours de ma vie voyageur
 to take up their residence at a house of exceeding
se loger dans une maison de très bon
 good repute | it differed very little from those liba-
renom elle différoit liba-
 tions of which so much is recorded in ancient
tion tant parlé ancien
 authors and their modern transcribers | and as ^b no-
auteur moderne copiste
 thing I passed at this visit either new or extraor-
se passer dans visite nouveau extraor-
 dinary, we shall put an end to this chapter | a very
dinaire finir chapitre, m. bien
 foolish, but a very perverse accident has happened
ridicule fâcheux
 since our last meeting, which makes it improper I
depuis entrevue qui est cause que je ne saurois
 should see you any more at the usual place | ^c I pity
plus vous voir décemment ordinaire endroit plaindre
 poor Nancy from my soul, and would very willingly
bien sincèrement volontiers

^a See p. 314. sect. 8.^b See p. 298. rule XII.^c p. 203. sect. 1.

give any thing in my power that no familiarities
tout ce qui depend de moi pour que familiarité
 I had ever passed between us | of all he had received
se passer entre
 from lady Bellaſton not ^b above five guineas I remained,
guinée *reſter*
 and that very morning he had been dunned by a
ce jour là même un marchand lui en avoit
 tradesman for twice that ſum | ſeveral ſevere Paſqui-
demandé deux fois autant ſevere Paſqui-
 nades I have lately appeared at Madrid againſt the
nade, ſ. dernièrement *contre*
 French, with ſome animated remarks againſt the
piquant remarque, ſe
 Spaniſh miniſters who ^c were ſeduced by their
ſéduit par
 counſels.
conſeil.

OBSERVATIONS upon the ENGLISH AUXILIARY VERBS.

1. The auxiliary verbs, *do, did, ſhall, will, &c.* be-
 ſides their denoting the tenſe of a verb, ſerve to avoid
 the repetition of it; as, *do you know him? yes, I do;*
instead of yes, I do know him. Will you be there? yes, I
will, instead of yes, I will be there. The principal
 verb muſt always be expreſſed in French; as, *le con-*
noissez vous? oui, je le connois; y ſerez vous? oui, j'y
ſerai. The auxiliary, after the verb *to think* preceded
 by *than*, is often expreſſed in French by the relative
le; as, he ſpeaks French better than I thought he did,
il parle mieux Francois que je ne le croyois.

^a See p. 268. ſect. 4.

^b See p. 176. ſect. 3.

^c p. 314. ſect. 8.

2. Sometimes the auxiliary alone is used, though the chief verb has not been expressed before; as, *if Antonio dies, Felix shall for England*, that is, *shall set out for England*, *si Antonio meurt, Felix partira pour l'Angleterre*.

3. *Shall* and *will*, *should* and *would*, as we have seen before, are signs of the future and conditional; but *will*, *wou'd*, and *shou'd*, are sometimes verbs by themselves, and are expressed, the two first by *vouloir*, and *shou'd* by the conditional of the verb *devoir*. The two first are expressed by *vouloir*, when they imply order, command, will and earnestness of desire, and *shou'd* by *devoir*, when it denotes the necessity and duty of doing a thing.

Will, when it is expressed by *vouloir*, answers to the present of that verb; but *wou'd* answers to any tense past. Therefore the rules given before upon the use and construction of tenses must be consulted again.

4. *Shall* and *shou'd* are not expressed after *if*; the verb is put in the present after *shall*, and in the imperfect after *shou'd*; as, *if he shou'd come, s'il venoit*.

5. *Will have* and *wou'd have*, governing a pronoun or substantive, followed by a participle, or a verb in the present of the infinitive, govern it in the subjunctive; as, *I will have you come, je veux que vous veniez*.

6. *Should*, being followed by its nominative in a sentence which is neither interrogative nor admirative, will have its nominative come before it in French, and preceded by one of the conjunctions, *quand*, *quand même*, *quand bien même*; as, *shou'd you be richer than Cæsar himself, you cannot be happy unless you are honest; quand même vous seriez plus riche que Cæsus même, vous ne sauriez être heureux à moins que vous ne soyez honnête*. It is sometimes rendered by the imperfect of the indicative, and is then preceded by *si*; as, *shou'd I know where to find him, I wou'd set out immediately, si je savois où le trouver, je partirois sur le champ*.

7. But the auxiliaries *will* and *would*, *shall* and *shou'd*, are generally left out in those occasions where we have

seen the subjunctive is required in French; as, *it is impossible he shou'd come*, il est impossible qu'il vienne; *it was impossible he shou'd come*, il étoit impossible qu'il vint. From these examples the scholar may easily see that the verb attended by the auxiliary *shou'd*, is sometimes put in one tense and sometimes in another, according to that which precedes.

8. *Will* and *wou'd* are generally rendered by the infinitive after the verb *to beg*, and their nominative is made the accusative of the verb *to beg*; as, *I beg you wou'd give it to me*, je vous prie de me le donner.

9. *May* and *might*, which denote the power of doing a thing by permission or chance; *can* and *cou'd*, which denote the ability of doing it, are likewise verbs by themselves, which are expressed by *pouvoir*; as, *she did not know where he might be*, elle ne savoit où il pouvoit être.

10. *Might*, *cou'd*, *wou'd*, *must*, *ought*, and *shou'd*, taken in the sense of *ought*, when they are followed by a verb in the perfect of the infinitive, govern it in the present, and are themselves put in the conditional past; as, *they might have attacked the enemy*, ils auroient pu attaquer l'ennemi; but if they are preceded by *if*, they are put in the first pluperfect of the indicative; as, *if I cou'd have seen him*, si j'avois, or, si j'eusse pu le voir. If they are preceded by a conjunction which governs the subjunctive, they are put in the pluperfect of that mood; as, *though I cou'd have done it*, quoique j'eusse pu le faire.

11. *Cou'd* before the verb *wish*, is always the sign of the conditional; as, *I cou'd wish you had done it*, je souhaiterois, or, je voudrois que vous l'eussiez fait.

12. Several verbs in a compound tense have often but one nominative; as, *he had walk'd, had danced*. The auxiliary must not be repeated in French; as, *il avoit marché, dansé*.

13. *Wou'd* is sometimes used emphatically, being neither an auxiliary verb, nor a verb by itself. In these instances it is not expressed in French, and the following

following infinitive is put in the imperfect of the indicative; as, *the preference of Sophia wou'd often appear so plainly*, l'inclination de Sophie se manifestoit souvent d'une maniere si claire.

14. Observe, that the verb *vouloir* does not, as in English, take any such verb as *have*, *get*, *take*, before its noun; as, *will you have a book?* voulez vous un livre? *will you take a crown for it?* en voulez vous six francs?

E X E R C I S E.

Then you don't like the colonel so well as I
Vous n'aimez donc pas autant
 thought you I did, or you would not take such a
croire - une pareille
 resolution | I have an Indian leaf which would
résolution une feuille des Indes
 cover one of your islands; yet, it is so little you
couvrir île cependant
 may fold it up in a snuff box | if the historic
mettre tabatiere muse de
 muse has entrusted me with any secrets, I will
l'histoire confier des secrets
 not discover them till she shall give me leave | we
révéler que le permettre
 are obliged to bring our hero on the stage in a much
d'introduire héros sur théâtre de bien
 more disadvantageous manner than we could wish,
moins avantageux souhaiter
 and to declare honestly that even at his first appearance
de déclarer dès début
 it was the universal opinion of all Mr. Allworthy's
général
 family that he was certainly born to be hanged |
famille né pour la corde

heaven forbid that such naughty words ⁷ shou'd ever
à dieu ne plaise d'aussi mauvaises paroles jamais
 come out of my mouth | dangerous ⁴ as the attempt
sortir de bouche, f. entreprise
 was, there were circumstances in his situation which
circonstance situation
 promised him ^b greater success than any king of Castile
succès Castille
 IO could have ^c expected | the alacrity and emulation
attendre ardeur émulation
 with ^d which ^e both factions obeyed his orders gave
faction obéir à ordre, m.
 him a degree of authority in his government which
autorité gouvernement
 none of his predecessors IO cou'd have safely assumed |
prédécesseur sans danger s'arroger
 my reader then is not to be surpris'd, if in the
ne sera donc point surpris
 course of this work, he ⁴ shall find some chapters
cours ouvrage chapitre
 very short, and others very long, ^f some that contain
& d'autres renfermer
 only the time of a single day, and others ^g that
espace seul des
 comprise years | I know some persons who, without
années entières connaître
 being ^h superstitious, are apt to apprehend, that
superstitieux sujet craindre
 unusual & tranquillity ⁷ will be attended by its opposite |
extraordinaire tranquillité suivi de contraire
 I beg ⁸ you will speak to me with freedom |
librement

^a See p. 270. rule III.

^c p. 258. sect. 4.

^e p. 293. sect. 6.

^g p. 148. sect. 1.

^b See p. 149. sect. 2.

^d p. 300. sect. 2.

^f p. 285. sect. 3.

as I know you are anxious the minority of Miss
comme savoir désirer ardemment minorité
 Beverley 7 should pass without reproach, I will not
se passer reproche
 make any enquiries till I have had some opportunity
information l'occasion
 of convincing her that I deserve they 7 should be
convaincre mériter
 answered | it will not perhaps be amiss that I
répondre à mal à propos
 7 should be consulted |^b lest study 7 should fatigue
consulté de peur que étude f. fatiguer
 me in my tender years, I was allowed to spend
premier année on me les laissa passer
 them in the most childish amusements | my father
puéril amusement
 observed children ought not to apply seriously
observer devoir s'appliquer sérieusement
 until time 7 should have ripened their understanding |
que mûri jugement
 lest the sight of this amiable object 7 should
de peur que vue objet
 render his remonstrances ineffectual, he turned her
remontrance inutile mettre
 out of doors | we might have remained there a
à la porte rester
 long time, had not Sig. Manuel heard of our mis-
long-tems si le Seig. Manuel n'eut entendu parler de
 fortune, and resolved to get Fabricius out of pri-
notre malheur résolu de tirer Fabrice de pri-
 son, which he cou'd not do without obtaining the
son pouvoir nous délivrer
 dismissal of us all | such is the fatality of my condition
tous avec lui fatalité destin

^a See p. . . . sect. . . .^b See p. 129. sect. 2.^c p. 129. sect. 3.^d p. 244. sect. 1.

that

that, what 3 should rouse resentment only calls up for
exciter ressentiment faire naître
 love | I was not without apprehension the news I
crainte, & nouvelle
 have to communicate to you 7 wou'd have been of
à communiquer altérer
 some prejudice to your ladyship's tranquility | I
un peu la tranquillité dont vous jouissez
 fear only you 7 will think he has done too much |
croire en avoir - trop fait
 suppose now that a worthy old gentleman 10 should
supposez vénérable vieillard
 have taken it in his head to leave him an estate, I
se mettre dans la tête de laisser du bien
 will take care he 7 shall soon be informed of it |
avoir soin bientôt informé de
 it is hard that you 7 shou'd be kept without it |
dur privé de
 she had not any doubt but her guardians 7 would
ne douter aucunement que tuteur
 permit her to take up whatever sum she should
permettre à de prendre tout l'argent avoir
 require for such a purpose | she begged they 8 wou'd
besoin de pour une pareille affaire
 excuse her | she 9 cou'd feel and enjoy what she
excuser sentir goûter
 9 could neither explain nor understand | you say
expliquer comprendre
 you carry nothing with you; but that's what I
emporter
 3 would see | there is one thing I am a little afraid
que je crains un peu
 of, that is, that she has not quite as much fortune
tout-à-fait bien
 as one 9 might expect | you 9 cou'd easily procure
le désirer me faire

* See p. 246. sect. 2.

my success, ^{réussir} had you the least friendship for me; ^{amitié}
 you could never assist me in a greater necessity | ^{secourir} ^{besoin}
 that was what I told her | do you think that this ^{dire} ^{croire}
 old rascal, my master's father, ^{coquin le pere de mon maître} will live for ever, ^{-vivre éternellement}
 and do you think my master will not remember his ^{se souvenir}
 old friends? | I don't question but I will put you ^{de vieux ami}
 in possession of it before to night | though it is ^{douter que} ^{mettre}
 necessary you should know it, I am afraid to ^{en possession} ^{avant qu'il soit nuit}
 tell it you | dost thou think I may place any con- ^{nécessaire} ^{savoir} ^{craindre de}
 fidence in what this woman says? | not that I ^{avoir} ^{con-}
 would insinuate to you that my daughter will ever ^{fiance} ^{je}
 run you into unnecessary expences | I think the lady has ^{veuille faire entendre}
 acted nobly in giving that back into your fa- ^{entraîner dans inutile dépense} ^{en}
 mily which she might have carried out of it. | ^{agir généreusement en remettre}
 I could have put up with his drunkenness and ^{emporter de}
 neglect of his business, if he had not broke one of the ^{excuser} ^{ivrognerie}
 sacred commandments | if I call'd him poor Partridge ^{sa négligence dans ses affaires} ^{violé}
 saint commandment ^{appeller}

^a See p. 326. sect. 2.

^b See p. 330. sect. 1.

^c p. 280. sect. 2.

^d p. 304. sect. 3.

^e p. 224. sect. 3.

^f p. 314. sect. 8.

in the last paragraph, I should have the reader
 impute that epithet to the compassion of my temper |
 attribuer épithète, s. ma compassion naturelle
 if he had possessed no other dominions than those
 posséder état
 which belonged to him in Germany, and no other
 appartenir en
 crown besides the imperial, he might have
 couronne que la couronne impériale
 favoured a man who asserted so boldly the privileges
 favoriser défendre hardiment privilège
 and immunities for which the empire had so long
 franchise
 struggled with the popes | the appearance of a national
 combattre pape apparence national
 confederacy would have rendered it no less respectable
 ligue respectabl
 among the people, than formidable to the crown, and
 parmi redoutable
 the emperor unable to resist such a combination
 hors d'état de résister à confédération
 he must have complied with any terms which the
 être obligé de souscrire à condition
 members of it^b thought fit to prescribe | men
 ses membres juger à propos de imposer des hommes
 trained up amidst the artifices and corruptions of
 élevés au milieu de artifice, m.
 the Papal Court, and accustomed to judge of actions
 Cour de Rome accoutumé à
 not by what was just, but by what was useful, were
 non par utile voir
 astonished at a pontiff, who departing from the wise
 avec étonnement pontife s'écarter

^a See p. 280. sect. 3.

^b See p. 315. sect. 13.

^c This word must be singular.

maxims of his predecessors, acknowledged disorders
maxime, f. prédécesseur reconnaître désordre, m.
 which he 10 ought to have concealed, and forgetting
devoir cacher & qui oubliant
 his own dignity, asked a advice of those to whom he
personnel dignité avis à
 was entitled to prescribe | as to the lady, she ^b had
avoir droit de commander à l'égard de la dame
 no sooner secured her lover, than she behaved to him
s'assurer de amant affecta de le
 before the company with the highest degree of
traiter devant le monde avec l'indifférence la plus
 indifference; so that Mr. Allworthy 10 must have
marquée falloir
 had the insight of the devil, (or perhaps some of his
pénétration diable peut-être
 worse qualities) ^c to have entertained the least
plus mauvais qualités en
 suspicion of what was going forward | Mr. Blifil had
soupçon se passer
 purchased this Bible, partly out of respect for the
acheter Bible, f. en partie par respect
 book, and partly out of friendship for Tom | I hate
amitié haïr
 the name of Mr. Blifil, as I 1 do ^d whatever is
 base and treacherous | I ^e question not but the reader
bas perfide douter que
 7 will be surprised at our long taciturnity as to this
surpris du long silence que nous avons gardé à
 matter, and at no less loss
ce sujet qu'il ne soit pas moins embarrassé de deviner
 who this woman was | if you 4 shall have hereafter
déformais

^a This word must be plural. ^b See p. 323. sect. 2.

^c See p. 338. sect. 3.

^d p. 275. sect. 8.

^e p. 331. sect. 5.

the goodnefs to forgive me, I hope I fhall deferve it |
bonté pardonner se rendre digne de
 as he hated Jones more, perhaps, than Thwackum
peut-être encore plus
 himfelf I did, fo ^a he contrived to do him more
auffi tâcher de
 mischief in the mind of Mr. Allworthy | I was
mal esprit
 provoked the other day when I gave you warning,
piqué lorsque congé
 but if you have a defire to ftay with me, you I fhall |
avoir envie de refter
 can ^b it be doubted but that the fineft woman in the
douter
 world ⁷ would lofe all the benefit of her charms in
perdre avantage charme, m.
 the eye of a man who ^c had never feen ^d one of
aux yeux
 another caft? | he found means by degrees to
efpece trouver moyen peu-à-peu de amener
 introduce a difcourfe on the fatal confequences which
la conversation sur funeste qu'auroit
 muft attend their amour, if Mr. Allworthy ⁴ fhould
certainement
 difcover that he ftill carried on this commerce |
s'appercevoir encore continuer intrigue
 then he retired to his own apartment to give vent
il se retira enfuite dans appartement pour
 to his concern, but the reftleffnefs of his
s'abandonner à son chagrin agitation
 mind ¹³ would not fuffer him to remain long there |
esprit permettre à de refter y

^a See p. 304. feét. 2.^c p. 315. feét. 13.^b See p. 265. feét. 4.^f p. 258. feét. 6.

I ^a must tell you plainly, said Thwackum, I am
dire franchement
 resolved to know the wicked wretch, and I must
décidé à connoître
 tell you plainly, returned Jones, I am resolved you
coquine
 I shall not | though I ^b could not govern my son,
répliquer *avoir décidé que*
 I will my daughter | you have more wit than I
gouverner
 thought you I had | if I knew who gave you that
esprit
penfer
 ring, I'd tear her eyes out, so I I would | so I
savoir
bague, f. arracher *œil* *oui* *ainsi*
 have no doubt but she will ^c both receive me and
recevoir
 protect me too, till my father ^d can be brought to
protéger aussi *jusqu'à ce que* *faire entendre*
 some reason | though you feel no want of strength
raison *ne point manquer de force*
 in your bed, you most probably I would after a
lit *probablement*
 thrust or two | I expect my master presently, and
botte, f. *attendre* *à l'instant*
 I ³ would not for double the money he ⁷ should
deux fois cette somme là.
 find you here | he told her he was highly pleased
enchanté
 with the extraordinary accident which had sent him
de *extraordinaire accident.*
 for her relief to a place where it was so improbable
à secours dans endroit *si peu vraisemblable*
 she ⁷ should find any | and yet, my dear Sophia,
cependant

^a See p. 358. sect. 5.^b See p. 326. sect. 1.^c p. 292. sect. 5.^d p. 349. sect. 3.

answered Harriet, ^a it was then a serious matter
Henriette *alors* *sérieux affaire, f.*
 with you : comfort yourself with thinking, that
pour *se consoler* *dans l'espérance*
 whatever you now lament, ⁹ may hereafter appear
à présent regretter *vous paroître un jour*
 as trifling and contemptible as a ball ¹ I would at
frivole *méprisable* *balle*
 this time | what added to my wretchedness, was
aujourd'hui *ajouter* *misère*
 the loss of my little infant ; not that I pretended
perte, f. *enfant non pas que prétendre*
 to have had for it that extravagant tenderness of
fou *tendresse*
 which I so might have been capable under other cir-
capable dans *de cir-*
 cumstances | I assure your, Sir, I am no relation of
constance *je ne suis point parent de*
 Mr. Allworthy, and if the ^b world who are incapable
incapable
 of setting a true value on his virtue, ⁴ should think in
apprécier *vertu* *de penser*
 his behaviour to me, he has dealt hardly by a
conduite, f. *agir cruellement vis-à-vis*
 relation, they do an injustice to the best of men |
d'un parent commettre injustice, f. envers
 is there a man who ⁷ will be afterwards more
avoir dans la suite plus de
 backward in giving you his sister or daughter, or,
répugnance à
 is there any sister or daughter who ⁷ would be
une
 more backward to receive you ? honour is not con-
n'être pour rien
 cerned in these engagements | but to abandon So-
engagement *abandonner*

^a See p. 355. sect. 3.

See p. 308. sect. 1.

phia, and marry another, that was impossible; he
ne pourroit épouser d'autre impossible
 could not think of it upon any account: yet why

ne pourroit-on pas penser à à aucuns égards
 I should he not, since ^a it was plain she could not
ne pourroit-on pas penser à *puisque* *clair*
 be his | in the company of those ladies ^a it is im-
ne pourroit-on pas penser à *dans* *compagnie* *dame* im-
 possible to say any thing handsome of another wo-
ne pourroit-on pas penser à *de faire* *aucun* *compliment* à
 man which they ⁷ will ^b not apply to themselves;
ne pourroit-on pas penser à *s'approprier*

nay, they often improve the praise they seize;
au contraire *encourager* *sur* *louange*, f. *usurper*
 as for instance, if her beauty, her wit, her gentility,
par exemple *sa* *beauté* *son* *esprit* *sa* *gentillesse* *ses* *graces*
 her good humour deserve so much commendation,
sa *bonne* *humeur* *meriter* *des* *éloges*

what do I deserve who possess those qualities in so
que ne mérité-je pas *posséder*
 much more eminent a degree | I wish you ⁷ would
un *si* *éminent* *degré* *je* *voudrois*
 give us your observations that we may know how
faire part de *afin que* *savoir*

to treat these rogues, or that we masters may enter
à agir avec *coquin* *nous* *autres* *maîtres* *prendre*
 into measures ^c to reform them | a virtuous woman
mesure *corriger*

I should reject the first offer of marriage as a good
rejeter *proposition* *mariage* *honnête*
 man I do that of a bishoprick; but I would advise
homme *évêché* *conseiller à*
 neither the one nor the other to persist in refusing
de persister à refuser

^a See p. 355. sect. 1.

^b See p. 242. sect. 3.

^c p. 338. sect. 3.

what they secretly approve | if he wanted ^a any
en secret approuver avoir besoin de
 thing, it must be given him by Tom | when I
lorsque
 let any thing fall through the grief I was under,
dans l'excès de mon chagrin je laissois tomber quelque chose
 he 13 would cry, do not beat the poor boy: give him
s'écrier frapper garçon
 some more julep for me, no body else shall give it
un peu plus de julep nul autre que lui
 me | rather than this 7 shall be, Laertes goes on
plutôt que continuer
 to bring well-born beggars into the world | for my
de mettre gueux de condition à pour ce
 own part I 11 could heartily wish that all honest
qui est de moi de bon cœur souhaiter
 men 7 would enter into an association for the sup-
gens se liguier pour se
 port of one another against the endeavours of those
protéger les uns les autres attaque, f.
 whom they ought to look upon as their common
devoir regarder comme
 enemies, ^c whatever side they may belong to |
parti être de
 come, thou 2 shalt to the Mall with us, and we'll
allons Mail
 be pretty severe | I am glad you ^d have found out
n'épargner personne bien aise
 a way to correspond with me; I approve it much:
moyen pour nous écrire approuver
 I 1 shall more, if this first trial ^e of it prove successful;
essai réussir

^a See p. 281. sect. 8.^b See p. 358. sect. 5.^c p. 274. sect. 4.^d p. 330. sect. 1.^e p. 252. sect. 2.

but I should it not, and should it fall into their hands,

Et que nos lettres tombassent entre leurs mains
it would not concern me but for your sake | I take
je n'en serois affligé que pour vous

it because I ^a would not have my mistress deluded by
maitresse trompé

^a one who gives no proof of his passion | if he
preuve, f. amour

⁴ shall know that it will have my consent, he ^b must
j'y consentirai

endeavour to resign to his destiny; but if it be
tâcher de se résigner à fort si l'on y

brought about by compulsion, he shall not be able
employe la force il ne lui sera pas possible de

to answer for the ^c consequence | hear what I have
de écouter

to tell you before you speak, ^d unless what you
à avant à moins que

have to say ⁷ will signify to me your compliance |
annoncer complaisance

neither he nor your brother, nor your uncles, shall
ni

enjoy your triumph: perdition seize my soul, if
jouir de triomphe, m. que l'enfer m'engloutisse

they ¹ shall.
jamais.

Of the UNDECLINED PARTS of SPEECH.

R U L E I.

1. These prepositions, *de*, of, from; *contre*, against;
sur, upon; *sous*, under; *sans*, without, must always
be repeated before each noun, or verb governed; as, *il a*
parlé contre vous & *contre votre frere*, he has spoken

^a See p. 264. sect. 2.

^b See p. 358. sect. 5.

^c This word must be plural.

^d p. 129. sect. 2.

against

against you and your brother ; *il n'est pas possible de vivre sans boire & sans manger*, it is not possible to live without eating and drinking.

2. The others are generally repeated before nouns and verbs signifying things that are different or opposite ; but they are not before those which have the same meaning ; as, *il s'est conduit avec prudence & avec courage*, he has acted with prudence and courage ; *vivre dans la mollesse & la volupté*, to live in effeminacy and voluptuousness.

EXERCISE.

In short he had not one penny in his pocket, *en un mot le sou poche, f.*
 situation in much greater credit among the ancient-
qui étoit beaucoup plus en honneur parmi

philosophers than among the modern wise men who
moderne sage
 live in Lombard street, or those who frequent
demeurer dans fréquenter

White's chocolate house | Mr. Fox begged leave
café pria qu'on lui permit

to call the attention of the house to the answer
de fixer chambre sur réponse

which they had received from his majesty, and the
majesté

alarming and perilous situation which the dignity
alarmant dangereux dignité

of parliament and the constitution of the country
parlement constitution royaume

were then in | they spend great sums of money
se trouver ils dépensent somme, f. pour

^a See p. 308. sect. 1.

^b See p. 304. sect. 3.

^c Of money is not expressed.

on fountains, and no country affords
l'enretien des fontaines il n'y a point de pays où l'on en trouve
 finer | these are not only in the towns, but
de plus belles il y en a
 2 in the country and other solitary places for the
les campagnes solitaire endroit
 refreshment of travellers and labourers | nothing re-
commodité bon voyageur ouvrier
 commends a man more to the female sex than
commander mieux auprès des femmes
 courage, whether it be that they are pleased to see one
soit que aimer à celui
 who is a terror to others fall like a slave at their feet,
terreur de se prosterner en esclave
 or that this quality supplies their own principal de-
qualité suppléer à principal dé-
 fect, 2 in guarding them from insults and avenging
faut défendre de toute insulte venger
 their quarrels, or that courage is a natural indication
querelle ou qu'enfin la marque
 of a strong and sprightly constitution | now a days
fort ardent tempérament aujourd'hui
 a young lord without a running footman and a
seigneur coureur
 huntsman, is a body without soul.
chasseur

R U L E II.

1. The conjunctions that are a compound of *que*, or followed by the preposition *de*, are seldom repeated in the same sentence. *Que* and *de* are only repeated; *que* is also used instead of repeating the conjunctions *comme*, *quand*, *peut-être*. Observe, that *que* governs the same mood as the conjunction instead of which it is used, except when it is put instead of *si*; for it then governs the subjunctive; as, *tho' he studies much, and takes astonishing pains, he makes very little im-*

provement, quoiqu'il étudie beaucoup & qu'il prenne des peines étonnantes, il fait très peu de progrès; *as I was going to see you, and intended to spend some time at your house, comme j'allois vous voir, & que je comptois passer quelque tems chez vous.*

Observe, That *que* cannot be repeated, instead of *si*; when *si* does not denote condition; in which case it is generally rendered by *whether*.

2. The conjunction *or* is often used in English to join substantives, adjectives, verbs and adverbs, or a part of a sentence to another, when the first is attended by a negative; but *ni, nor*, must then be used in French, and is generally repeated before every substantive; as, *not that I doubted the death of Don Alvar, or was restrained by the fear of seeing him, ce n'est pas que je doutasse de la mort de Don Alvar, ni que la crainte de le revoir m'arrêtât.*

EXERCISE.

She said, that she could not help agreeing with her brother, that there was some merit in the sincerity of her confession, and in her integrity to her lover, *1* that she had always thought her a very good girl, and *2* doubted not but she had been seduced by some rascal *b* who was infinitely more to blame than herself, and very probably had prevailed with her by a

s'empêcher de penser comme son frere
mérite de sa sincérité
avec la bonne foi dont elle usoit avec
regardé comme
que séduite
coquin beaucoup
probablement triomphé de sous la foi

a See p. 331. sect. 5.

b See p. 241. sect. 1.

promise

promise of marriage, or some treacherous proceeding
ou par quelque autre perfidie

| 1 when dinner was over, and the servants departed,

fini *se furent retirés*
 Mr. Allworthy began to harangue | 1 find you

se mettre à haranguer *s'appercevoir*

do not know me, which, indeed, is no wonder,

être étonnant

1 since you never saw me but once, and then you

puisque *une fois*

was very young | since I have trusted you with so

en dire tant

much, and 1 since I am afraid her name is become

craindra

too public already on this occasion, I will not conceal

à *sujet* *cacher*

it from you | 1 while Jones was admiring these things,

à

and Partridge sat trembling with the firm belief

trembler sur sa chaise dans *ferme croyance*

that he was in the house of a witch, the old woman

forciere *vieille*

said, I hope, gentlemen, you will make what haste

messieurs *vous vous dépêcherez*

you can | but 1 though I had no

autant que vous le pourrez

reason to doubt his knowledge of all which had passed

de *qu'il ne fût* *se passer*

and I was well assured of his great aversion to all acts

certain *décidé aversion pour toutes*

of dishonesty, yet I entertained some hopes of

les actions deshonnêtes *avoir* *espérance*

being received by him | but 1 if you are a friend of

qu'il me recevroit

^a See p. 314. sect. 8.

^b See p. 331. sect. 4.

his and have any thing to say concerning this
 young lady, I shall be glad to hear you | I wish,
 dame, *entendre je voudrais*
 brother, you would have confined your cares to
 bien *s'en tenir au soin*
 your own daughter, and never I have troubled
 yourself with my son, who hath, I believe, as little
 de *suivant moi a*
 profited by your precepts as by your example | I
 de *précepte exemple*
 answered him very gravely that I was indeed altered
sérieusement *changé*
 since I had seen him last, that I had found
depuis la dernière fois que je ne l'avois vu
 leisure to look into my follies and to repent of
le tems de réfléchir sur folies *se repentir*
 them: I then advised him to pursue the same steps,
alors conseiller de suivre mesure
 and at last concluded with an assurance that I myself
je finis par l'assurer
 would lend him an hundred pounds if it be
cent livres sterling si cela pouvoit être
 of any service to his affairs, and he would not put it
confier
 into the power of a die to deprive him of
un hasard d'un coup de dés le pouvoir priver
 it | a daughter must obey her father: she is not to
 consider the shape, or the air, or the age of a
considérer taille
 husband | neither reproaches or indulgence, kindness,
mari reproche, m. indulgence tendresse

^a See p. 219. f. 1.

^b See p. 246. f. 1.

or severity can wake her to the least reflexion | they
sevérité faire naître dans son esprit
 never loved ² or hated, commended ^{louer} or abused ^{insulter} the
 same person.

R U L E III.

1. When a sentence consists of several parts, and the conjunction *que*, that, is used in the first, it must be repeated before the others; as, *he said he knew your friend, and would speak to him*, *il dit qu'il connoissoit votre ami & qu'il lui parleroit.*

2. Prepositions and the comparative adverb *comme*, are always repeated before nouns which are separated by the conjunction *que*; as, *I have proposed it as much on your account as on my own*, *je l'ai proposé autant à cause de vous qu'à cause de moi.*

E X E R C I S E.

He said, he was glad to meet me among his
bien aise de trouver parmi
 relations, the de Coverley's, and i hoped I liked the
parent
 conversation of so much good company who were
se compagnie
 as silent as myself | he greatly exulted in the
taciturne se faire gloire
 happiness which he had procured to this poor family,
procurer
 nor could he forbear reflecting with horror on the
Et il ne pouvoit s'empêcher de songer horreur à
 dreadful consequences which must have attended them,
terrible conséquence qui s'en seroient suivies

a had

^a had he listened ^b rather ² to the voice of strict justice
obéir *exact justice*
 than that of mercy | such a man lives rather ² like a
pitie *cet homme* *vivre* *en*
 prince, than a master in his family; his orders are
ordre, m.
 received ² as favours, rather than duties.
grace *devoir.*

R U L E IV.

1. When the verb which is preceded by the conjunctions, *before*, *after*, has the same nominative as that which comes before the conjunction, it is generally put in the present of the infinitive, and the conjunction is followed by *de* instead of *que*; as, *I shall see him before I go in the country*, *je le verrai avant d'aller à la campagne.*

E X E R C I S E.

If I don't see those leaves before I ¹ die, I shall not
feuille *mourir* *avoir du*
 rest in my grave; I should be glad to know what
repos *tombeau* *de savoir*
 the Indians do with them | the Imperial generals found
Indien faire de *Empire général*
 the French so strongly entrenched, that
François *fortement* *retranché*
 notwithstanding the powerful motives which urged
malgré *puissant* *motif* *animer*
 them on, they hesitated long before they ¹ ventured
hésiter *s'exposer*

^a See p. 326. sect. 2.^b See p. 170. sect. 4.

to attack them; but at last the necessities of the
enfin *besoin*
 besieged and the murmurs of their own soldiers obliged
assiégé *murmure* *forcer*
 them to put every thing to hazard | she looked softly
à *tout hasarder* *le regarda un*
 at him for a moment before she spoke, and then
moment avec tendresse *ensuite*
 said; Mr. Jones, for heaven's sake, how came
pour l'amour de dieu
 you here? | I took it myself from his side after I
je le lui pris moi-même à son côté
 I had knocked him on the head.

assommer

R U L E V.

I. The gerund coming after the preposition *after* or *for* must be rendered by the perfect of the infinitive; as, *he set out after giving the necessary orders*, *il partit après avoir donné les ordres nécessaires*.

E X E R C I S E.

After I renewing his appeal to the general council,
renouveler *appel* *concile, m.*
 he published remarks upon the bull of excommunica-
publier remarque, f. *bulle* *excommunica-*
 tion, and being now persuaded that the pope had been
tion *persuadé*
 guilty both of impiety and injustice in his ^a proceedings
coupable *impiété* *injustice* *conduite*
 against him, he boldly declared the ^b pope to be that
exvers *hardiment déclarer*

^a This word must be singular. ^b See p. 340. rule 2.

antichrist whose appearance is foretold in the New
antechrist *venue* *annoncé* *Nouveau*
 Testament | they could not persuade themselves that
Testament *se persuader*
 Francis, after obtaining his liberty, would execute
obtenir *liberté* *exécuter*
 articles against which he had struggled so long, and to
article *contre* *se défendre*
 which, ^a even amidst the horrors of captivity, he had
même au milieu des horreurs *captivité*
 consented with such reluctance | he expressed much
consentir *tant de répugnance* *témoigner*
 surprise at his intention, and after urging many
surprise *de* *dessein* *opposer*
 excellent arguments against ^b it, he ^c at last insisted
puissant *raison* *à* *soutenir*
 strongly that it could be to no manner of purpose
fortement *cela ne pouvoit être d'aucune sorte*
 whatever.
d'utilité.

R U L E VI.

1. *When*, being preceded by a noun of time, is expressed by *que* or *où*; as, *do you remember the time when we lived together?* *vous souvenez vous du tems que nous demeurions ensemble?* *que* and *où* cannot be sometimes indifferently used, but this nicety practice alone can teach.

E X E R C I S E.

He often looked back with pleasure on that period
se rappeler *complaisance* *le* *tems*

^a *This part of the sentence must be the last.*

^b *See p. 247. sect. 3.*

^c *This adverb is not expressed.*
 of

of his life | when he was only dean of Louvain, a
doyen
 more humble but happier situation in which little was
humble *heureux*
 expected from him, and there was nothing to frustrate
attendre *rien ne pouvait tromper*
 his good intentions | one day | when Mr. Allworthy
 and his whole family dined at Mr. Western's, Mr.
chez
 Blifl being in the garden with little Sophia, and
qui étoit *jardin* *qui*
 observing the extreme fondness that she shewed for
voyoit *excessif attachement* *avoir*
 her little bird, desired her to trust it for a moment in
prier *de le lui confier pour un*
 his hands | it is no wonder that in an age | when this
moment *être surprenant* *siècle*
 kind of merit is so little in fashion, persons possessed of
espece *à la mode les personnes qui le*
 it, should very eagerly flock to a place where
possèdent
 they were sure of being received with great
sûr *beaucoup*
 complaisance | this is the very hour | when she
d'égards *même* *a*
 usually comes hither under ^b a pretence of a visit
coutume de venir ici *prétexte de rendre*
 to our house-keeper.
visite à *femme de charge.*

^a See p. 363. sect. 7. ^b This article is not expressed.

R U L E VII.

1. When the verb in the first part of a sentence is preceded by *whether*, it is generally necessary in French to put *c'est ce qui*, or, *c'est ce que*, before the other; as, *whether she had forgiven him or no, I will not venture to determine*, soit qu'elle lui eût pardonné ou non, c'est ce que je n'oserai décider.

E X E R C I S E.

Whether he was innocent or no, will perhaps
Soit que
 I appear hereafter | whether Partridge repented or
paraître dans la suite *se repentir*
 not, according to Mr. Allworthy's advice, I is not
d'après *avis*
 so apparent | whether fear or courage was the
clair *si* *crainte* *le*
 occasion of his firing, or whether he took aim
détermina à faire feu *si* *mettre en joue*
 at the object of his terror, I cannot say | he vowed
objet *frayeur* *jurer*
 he would immediately return home, and would
retourner chez lui
 never afterwards commit such a transgression;
plus à l'avenir commettre *faute, f.*
 whether he kept his word or no, will soon I appear
si *tenir* *parole* *bientôt se voir*
 | that she had a remarkable fondness for that young
singulier attachement

fellow, 1 is more certain; but whether the indulged
homme *si* *se*
 this to any very criminal lengths, 1 is not so
permettre quelques libertés criminelles *1021*
 extremely clear.
à fait si évident.

R U L E VIII.

1. *Though*, or *tho'* being followed by the auxiliaries
should or *would*, are rendered by *quand*, *quand même*,
quand bien même, and the next verb is put in the con-
 ditional; as, *tho' she should make my fortune, I could not*
resolve to marry her, *quand même elle me feroit ma*
fortune, je ne pourrois me résoudre à l'épouser.

2. A verb in the preterite and preceded by the above
 conjunction is also rendered by the conditional, when
 the verb in the other part of the sentence is likewise in
 the conditional; as, *tho' you were my best friend, I should*
deny you that favour, *quand même vous seriez mon*
meilleur ami, je vous refuserois cette grace.

E X E R C I S E.

And 1 though this treat should be very indifferent
régal *tout-à-fait*
 and utterly disagreeable to the taste of his company,
insipide & désagréable *gout* *convives*
 they must not find any fault; on the contrary good
ils ne doivent rien blâmer au contraire
 breeding forces them outwardly to approve and to
politesse obliger *en apparence de approuver*
 commend whatever is set before them | you told me
louer *servir à*
 you would not have confessed the truth, 2 *tho' master*
avouer *vérité.*

had cut you to pieces | no, 2 though I saw you
couper par morceaux
 expiring with famine in the street, I would not
prêt à mourir de faim
 relieve you with a morsel of bread | tho' the squire
offrir morceau ce gentilhomme
 2 had been as quick sighted as he was remarkable for
pénétrant remarquable par
 the contrary, ^a might at present have
le défaut contraire colere, f. alors
 blinded him.
aveugler.

R U L E IX.

1. *With* after the same is generally expressed by *que*;
 as, such a form of government is not capable of produ-
cing the same benefits to society with this, une pareille
forme de gouvernement ne sauroit procurer à la société
les mêmes avantages que celle-ci.

2. But *with* is left out in several instances like this,
he stood before him with his bat in his hand, il se tenoit
débout devant lui le chapeau à la main.

E X E R C I S E.

This species of men, from the great severity with
espece d'après excessif sévérité
 which they revenge the death of a hare or a partridge,
venger lievre perdrix
 might be thought to cultivate the same superstition
croire avoir superstition
 with the Banians in India, many of whom, we
Banien de Inde

^a See p. 364. sect. 10.

^b See p. 349. sect. 3.

are told, dedicate their whole lives to the preservation
consacrer entier conservation
 of certain animals | ^b she was now standing 2 with her
animal alors debout
 back to the fire, and 2 with a pinch of snuff in her
dos feu prise tabac
 hand, was dealing forth this daily allowance of
doigts administrer ce pain quotidien
 comfort to the squire, while he smoked his
au bon gentilhomme pendant que fumer
 afternoon pipe, when she received the above
après dîner pipe, f. la lettre mentionnée
 letter. | I ^c went down this morning when breakfast
ci-dessus descendre déjeuné
 was ready, 2 with a very uneasy heart from what
prêt navré
 Hannah had informed me | my father, although he
apprendre
 had the gout ^d upon him, was going to him 2 with
goute, f. s'avancer sur
 his sword in his hand.
épée à

R U L E X.

I. *Just*, with a verb in the preterite, forms an idiomatical expression, instead of which we use the verb *venir*, and the next verb is put in the infinitive with the preposition *de*; as, *I have just seen him*, *je viens de le voir*; *I had just seen him*, *je venois de le voir*.

^a See p. 349. sect. 3.

^b See p. 204. sect. 2.

^c p. 314. sect. 7.

^d Upon him is not expressed.

E X E R C I S E

E X E R C I S E.

As I was walking with him last night, he asked
se promener hier au soir
 me how I liked the good man whom I have just
trouver honnête
 mentioned [he had just read over those three
parler jeter un coup d'œil sur
 billets when Mr. Nightingale came into the room
billet lorsque entrer dans
 [my aunt has just now shewn me a letter from
tante montrer lettre, f.
 you to Lady Bellaston which contains a proposal
contenir proposition
 of marriage: I am convinced it is your own hand,
convaincu écriture
 and what more surprised me, is that it is dated at
le plus surprendre de
 the very time when you would have me imagine you
même tems me faire accroire
 was under such concerns on my account [Mr.
souffrir de si grandes peines à sujet
 Allworthy and Mrs. Miller were just sat down to
se mettre à
 breakfast, when Blifil who had gone out very
déjeuner sortir de très
 early that morning returned to make one of
bonne heure ce matin là revenir déjeuner
 the company.
avec eux.

S U P P L E M E N T

TO THE

S Y N T A X.

R U L E I.

WHEN two substantives depending upon the same substantive, and coming before it, are separated either by a verb or any conjunction; except *and, or, nor*, it is usual in French to join the substantive to the first adjective; as, *he was a less violent, tho' a much more artful man, c'étoit un homme moins violent, quoique beaucoup plus artificieux.*

E X E R C I S E.

I had certainly resolved on it, had not a more
se décider à
 shameful, though perhaps less-sinful thought expelled
honteux coupable pensée hanni
 it from my head | philosophy makes us the objects of
esprit rendre
 human admiration, christianity of divine love : that
religion l'une
 insures us a temporal, but this an eternal happiness |
affuier bonheur temporel & l'autre félicité
 the guide took up behind him, in the room of Sophia,
prendre à la place
 a much

a much heavier as well as much less lovely burthen |
~~pésant & en même tems~~ *fardeau*
 as there is no wholesomer, there are few stronger
salutaire
 sleeping potions than fatigue | what good to his
sporiſique potion *de quel avantage*
 country or himself might not a trader or a merchant
marchand négociant
 have done with such useful though ordinary qua-
être *ta-*
 lifications | she revives at his known voice, and
lent *revenir à la vie au son de cette voix connue*
 with the most familiar though modest gesture hangs
libre *geste s'appuyer*
 in safety over his shoulders.
avec confiance sur épaule.

R U L E II.

The comparative *than*, often comes in English before the relatives *whom*, *that*, *which*. This construction cannot be admitted in French. Both the conjunction and relative are sometimes suppressed in the French sentence, and sometimes another turn must be given to it ; as, *you who are famous for wit, and than whom no young lady ever had stronger pretensions to beauty*, vous qui êtes célèbre par votre esprit, & qui avez à la beauté des prétentions plus justes que n'en eut jamais aucune demoiselle.

E X E R C I S E.

In the full blaze of his majesty up rose the sun,
le soleil se montra dans tout l'éclat de sa majesté
 than which one object alone in the lower creation
terrestre
 could

could be more glorious | so, Sophia, than whom
brillant aussi
 none was more capable of tenderly feeling the general
compatir
 calamity of her country, found such immediate sa-
éprouver soudain
 tisfaction from the relief of those terrors she had
joie en se voyant délivrée de la frayeur
 of being overtaken by her father, that the arrival of
atteindre
 the French scarce made any impression on her | the
à peine
 thunder and lightning were not more alarming
éclairs effrayant
 than the sheets of rain, which fell so heavy as to
lame d'eau avec tant de vio-
 endanger the sinking of the ship, and at the same
lence que le vaisseau étoit en danger de périr
 time, though in the open day, involved us in a cloud
en plein jour couvrir nuit
 of darkness, than which nothing could be more horrible.
de ténébres égalier l'horreur.

R U L E III.

When one of the possessives conjunctive is followed
 by a relative, it is expressed by *celui, celle, ceux, &c.*
 as, *his affairs are wondrous safe who trusts a secret to a*
woman's keeping, les affaires de celui qui confie un secret
à la garde d'une femme sont admirablement bien en
tûreté.

E X E R C I S E.

I do not question but he informed the rest of his
 audience, who had more patience than I, of the birth
auditeurs

and

and parentage, as well as the collateral alliances of

parenté his family, who made the repartee, and of him who

repartie provoked him to it | he is beloved of all that behold

y donna lieu him ; they wish him in danger, that they may have

ils voudroient qu'il fût en danger occasions to save him at their own hazard | such is his

péril regiment, who knows mankind and feels their distresses

les hommes compatir misere so far as to prevent them | at the same time the

ordinary people gazed upon him at a distance, not

du commun regarder de loin a little admiring his courage that was not afraid

n'admiroient pas peu to speak to the judge.

R U L E IV.

It is very elegant both in French and English to place the case of the verb before the verb and its nominative ; but when the case governed is in the accusative, the relative *le, la, les*, must be put before the verb ; as, *that power which you complain of, he owes to your cowardice*, *ce pouvoir dont vous plaiguez, il le doit à votre lâcheté*. I must at the same time observe to the scholar, that this construction could not be used in speaking of low and trivial things, as is often the case in English ; as, *a dirty cloth you rubbed against my face*, *vous me passiez un torchon sale sur le visage* ; it would be ridiculous to say, *un torchon sale, vous me le passiez sur le visage*.

EXER

E X E R C I S E.

These terms to which an high-spirited prince would
condition fier & courag: ux
 scarcely have listened after the disasters of the most
prêter l'oreille désastre
 unfortunate war, Francis rejected with disdain | Ma-
 dam, answered Sophia trembling, what I have said,
toute tremblante
 you have extorted from me | this tragical fight
arracher à scène
 Mr. Western no sooner beheld than all his rage for-
voir fureur aban-
 sook him | many more things he said to me which I
donner
 have now forgotten, and indeed I attended very little
faire peu d'attention
 to them at that time; for inclination contradicted all he
démén:ir
 said | to my fondness he was cold and insensible:
tendresse indifférent
 my little comical ways, which you thought so
badin maniere trouver
 agreeable, he treated with contempt | this comparison
 he attributed wholly to the luxuriant imagination,
entièrement fécond
 to the astonishing eloquence of the orator who pos-
 sessed the wonderful and happy talent of representing
rare
 things and men just in what colours he pleased | but I
avec
 am afraid, even that very promise which you mention
parler de
 I have given | the treatment which you blame, he

merited from one whom he addressed with the air
de la part d'une personne qu'il approchoit
 of a person who presumed that he is about to confer a
quelqu'un *croit* *accorder* *une faveur*
 favour.

R U L E V.

When a verb that has for its nominative a noun preceded by the relative *whose*, governs a pronoun personal that relates to its nominative; as, *such was the fortune of the great captain whose important services and cautious conduct did not screen him from the suspicions of his jealous master.* The pronoun *which* is changed into *whom*, and the pronoun personal into a pronoun possessive, which is joined to the nominative of the verb; as, *such was the fortune of the great captain, whom his important services and cautious conduct did not screen from the suspicions of his jealous master,* tel fut le sort du grand capitaine que ses services importants, & sa conduite circospecte ne mettoient pas à couvert des soupçons de son maître jaloux.

E X E R C I S E.

Two hundred thousand men, and a fleet of four
 hundred sail appeared against a town defended by
voile, f. *devant*
 a garrison consisting of five thousand soldiers, and six
compose
 hundred knights, under the command of Villiers de
ordres
 l'Isle Adam, the grand master, whose wisdom and va-
 lour rendered him worthy of that station at such dan-
poste dans
 gerous

gerous juncture | his sentiments being warmly sup-
circumstance *fortement*
 ported by the archbishop of Granada were approved of
Grenade eurent aussi l'appro-
 by Adrian, whose zeal to support his master's
bation de *soutenir*
 authority hurried him into measures to which, from
entraîner dans mesure pour sa
 his natural caution and timidity, he would other-
circonspection & sa timidité naturelle lui auroient donné de
 wise have been averse | they united in a league
l'aversion dans tout autre tems former ligue
 against Solymàn, whose conquest of Rhodes rendered
Soliman la conquête de l'île de Rhodes
 him more formidable than ever to Europe | high
à toute l'Europe
 expectations were conceived of a Pope, whose great
espérance *concevoir*
 talents and long experience in business seemed to qua-
 lify him no less for defending the spiritual interest
 of the church, exposed to imminent dangers, by the
pressant
 progress of Luther's opinions, than for conducting
diriger
 its political operations with the prudence requisite at
nécessaire dans
 such a difficult juncture | and yet upon an occasion so
tems *dans une affaire si*
 generally known, it is impossible but that whatever
publique
 relates to a young lady whose distinguished merits
concerner
 have made her the public care, should not engage
l'objet des soins du public occuper
 every body's attention | but it is indeed surprising,
mais en vérité n'est il pas bien
 M m 2 that

that at so early a period of life, his discriminating
étonnant que dans un âge aussi peu avancé *pénétration*
 faculties should not be greater than those of his illustrious father, whose long experience of mankind, *monde*
 did not prevent him from being the dupe of men,
empêcher
 who were not to be compared to some of those
qui ne pourraient entrer en comparaison avec
 who now delude his son.
aujourd'hui tromper.

R U L E VI.

A preposition, with the noun which it governs, must always, as much as possible, come near the verb on which it depends; as, *he complained of the use that was made for the purpose of influencing the members, of the name of his majesty,* *il se plaignit de l'usage qu'on fesoit du nom de sa majesté à dessein de gagner les membres.*

E X E R C I S E.

Mr. Erskine was happy that he was able to
se trouver heureux
 listen to matters that ran counter to his wishes, in
écouter *débat* *prendre un tour contraire à*
 a cool and dispassionate manner | there is a sort of
de sang froid *sorte, f.*
 delight which is alternately mixed with terror and
plaisir *alternativement mêlé de*
 sorrow, in the contemplation of death | as Charles,
 besides augmenting the pensions which he had already
entre l'augmentation des

settled

settled on him, renewed his promise of favouring
assigner à la promesse qu'il lui avoit faite appuyer
 his pretensions to the papacy, with all his interest,
papauté de crédit
 he endeavoured to merit the former, and to secure
s'efforcer les uns s'assurer
 the accomplishment of the latter, by fresh services |
Pautre nouveau
 misfortunes of this kind, whatever inconveniencies
inconvenient
 they may be attended with, are incapable of subduing
suivi de ne sauroient dompter
 a mind in which there is any strength, without
caractere auquel il reste encore quelque énergie
 the assistance of avarice.
secours.

R U L E VII.

The relatives *qui, que,* must be separated as little as
 possible from their antecedent; as, at last we arrived at
a little wild hut, where an old woman took all the care of us
she could, enfin nous arrivâmes à une petite cabane dé-
 ferte où une vieille femme prit de nous tout le soin
 qu'il lui fut possible.

E X E R C I S E.

The good man was satisfied that his nephew,
cet homme respectable persuadé
 far from having any objections to Sophia, had that
aucune répugnance pour
 esteem for her which in sober and virtuous minds,
bonne cœur
 is the surest foundation of friendship and love [Mrs.
base

Western having obtained that promise from her niece
après avoir obtenu la
 which we have mentioned in the last chapter, with-
rapporter
 drew, and presently after arrived Mrs. Honour |
immédiatement
 I am determined to leave my father's house this very
décidé à quitter *dès ce*
 night, and if you have the friendship for me which you
soir
 have often professed, you will keep me company | at
jurerez de tenir *à*
 this instant Partridge espied a glimmering light
l'instant même *appercevoir* *foible* *lumière*
 through some trees, which seemed very near to them |
à travers
 the discourse turned on love, and Mr. Nightingale
conversation tomber
 expressed many of those warm, generous and dis-
débiter *vif* *généreux* *déf-*
 interested sentiments upon this subject, which some
intéressé
 wise and sober men call romantick, but which others
certaines sages
 regard in a better light,
envisager sous un point de vue plus favorable.

R U L E V I I I .

When the antecedent is too far from its relative, the sentence is rendered more perspicuous and elegant by repeating it; as, *they had accepted their stations when a strong administration was formed, an administration which was supported by greater majorities than had been seen for many years in that house,* ils avoient accepté leurs emplois dans un tems où une administration puissante étoit déjà formée, administration qui étoit plus forte qu'aucune

cune qu'on eût vue depuis plusieurs années dans la chambre.

E X E R C I S E,

He demanded the restitution of the dutchy of Burgundy, a province, the possession of which would have given him access into the heart of the kingdom, and required a discharge of the homage due to the crown of France for the counties of Flanders and Artois, which none of his ancestors had ever refused, and which he had bound himself by the treaty of Noyon to renew | having procured the restoration of Sforza to his paternal dominions, which had been their chief motive for entering into confederacy with Charles, they plainly discovered their intention to contribute no longer towards increasing the Emperor's superiority over his rival, which was already the object of their jealousy | such occurrences often happened, as recalled his attention towards that equal balance of power which it was necessary

to keep between the two contending potentates, the
maintenir *rival* *puissance*
 preservation of which, he always boasted to be his
conservation *se vanter*
 principal office.
premier devoir.

R U L E IX.

There are several instances in English when a verb is used without a nominative; it must always have one in French; as, *the loss has been more considerable than was said at first*, *la perte a été plus considérable qu'on ne le disoit d'abord.*

E X E R C I S E.

Her father, as has been said, was fonder of her
avoir plus de tendresse
 than of any other human creature | and why he did so,
pour *on user ainsi*
 must be left to the judgment of the sagacious reader |
éclairé
 it is impossible to conceive a happier set of
de se représenter *troupe*
 people than appeared here to be met together | there
s'être rassemblé *eh bien*
 is my daughter, now, whom I have brought up as
voilà ma fille *élevée*
 my friend, never does any thing without my advice,
 nor ever refuses to take it when I give it her | and to
recevoir
 say the truth, you should have just so much disgust
dégoût
 for your husband, as may be sufficient to make you
 relish

relish your lover | Sophia, likewise, shewed more
goûter

concern and sorrow in her countenance than appeared
sensibilité douleur maintien appercevoir
in the other lady | he thought the house could not
chambre

adopt a more impolitic measure than was then
imprudente

attempted | it was in my early manhood with
tenter cela m'arriva dans ma première jeunesse

that quality-jilt whose infidelity I have vowed to
qualité coquette juré

revenge upon as many of the sex as shall come
toutes celles de son sexe

into my power.
en

R U L E X.

The verb must be repeated, first, when one part of the sentence is affirmative, and the other negative; as, we must expect every thing from God, and nothing from ourselves, il faut attendre tout de Dieu, & ne rien attendre de soi même.

2. When the verb is active in one part of the sentence, and passive or reflected in the other; as, it is our duty to know both men and ourselves, c'est notre devoir de connoître les hommes & de nous connoître nous-mêmes.

3. The verb must be repeated after si, if; as, however little you give, if indeed no more than your good wishes, you acquire a great degree of merit in so doing, quelque peu que vous donniez, quand même vous ne donneriez que des souhaits, vous méritez beaucoup par cette action.

4. It is also repeated after plus and autant, when they don't come immediately before que; as, I find as much pleasure in reading a good book, as others in conversing with men of parts, je trouve autant de plaisir à lire

lire un bon livre que d'autres en trouvent à converser
avec des gens d'esprit.

E X E R C I S E.

When Sophia was well satisfied of the violent
entièrement convaincu
passion which tormented Jones, and no less certain
assuré
that she was its object, she had not the least difficulty
of discovering the true cause, of his present beha-
à véritable actuel
viour | the parson who was not only strictly chaste in
être soi même
his own person, but a great enemy to the
d'une chasteté rigide | l'ennemi déclaré de
opposite vice in others, fired at this information | when
contraire *prendre feu nouvelle*
did you hear from him? not since he went | Don
avoir de ses nouvelles *partir*
Antonio's sister, Elvira, wanted beauty only, but
Elvire
Gusman wants every thing | oh, madam, cries the
other, I have several good reasons, but none that is
good enough for you | he said, that there might be
beaucoup de
many ministers of greater abilities, but none of
ministres pouvoient avoir talent
greater integrity | I fancy, my friend, you are not
probite s'imaginer
so well acquainted with the character of the lady, as
connoître
with her person | he began to look on all the favours
he

he had received, rather as wages than benefits,

appointement

which not only depreciated her, but himself too in

avilir

la dame

à

his own conceit, and put him quite out of humour

ses propres yeux *lui donnoient de l'humeur contre elle*

with both | dinner being ended, and the company

Et contre lui lorsque le dîner fut fini

retired into the garden, Mr. Western, who was

thoroughly convinced of the certainty of what his

tout-à-fait

vérité

sister had told him, took Mr. Allworthy aside, and

à l'écart

very bluntly proposed a match between Sophia

brusquement

mariage

and young Mr. Blifil | very good health, a very warm

excellent

ardent

constitution, and a great deal of religion made

tempérament

fonds

lui

it absolutely necessary for her to marry again; and

rendoient un second mariage absolument nécessaire

she resolved to please herself in her second husband,

dans le choix

as she had done her friends in the first | but what has

happened to night shews, that even here I cannot

ce soir

be safe from the villainy of men; for without your

être à couvert *méchanceté*

assistance I had not only been robbed, but very

secours

probably murdered | the fatal stroke which separates

assassiné

coup

soul and body, is not more terrible to the thoughts of

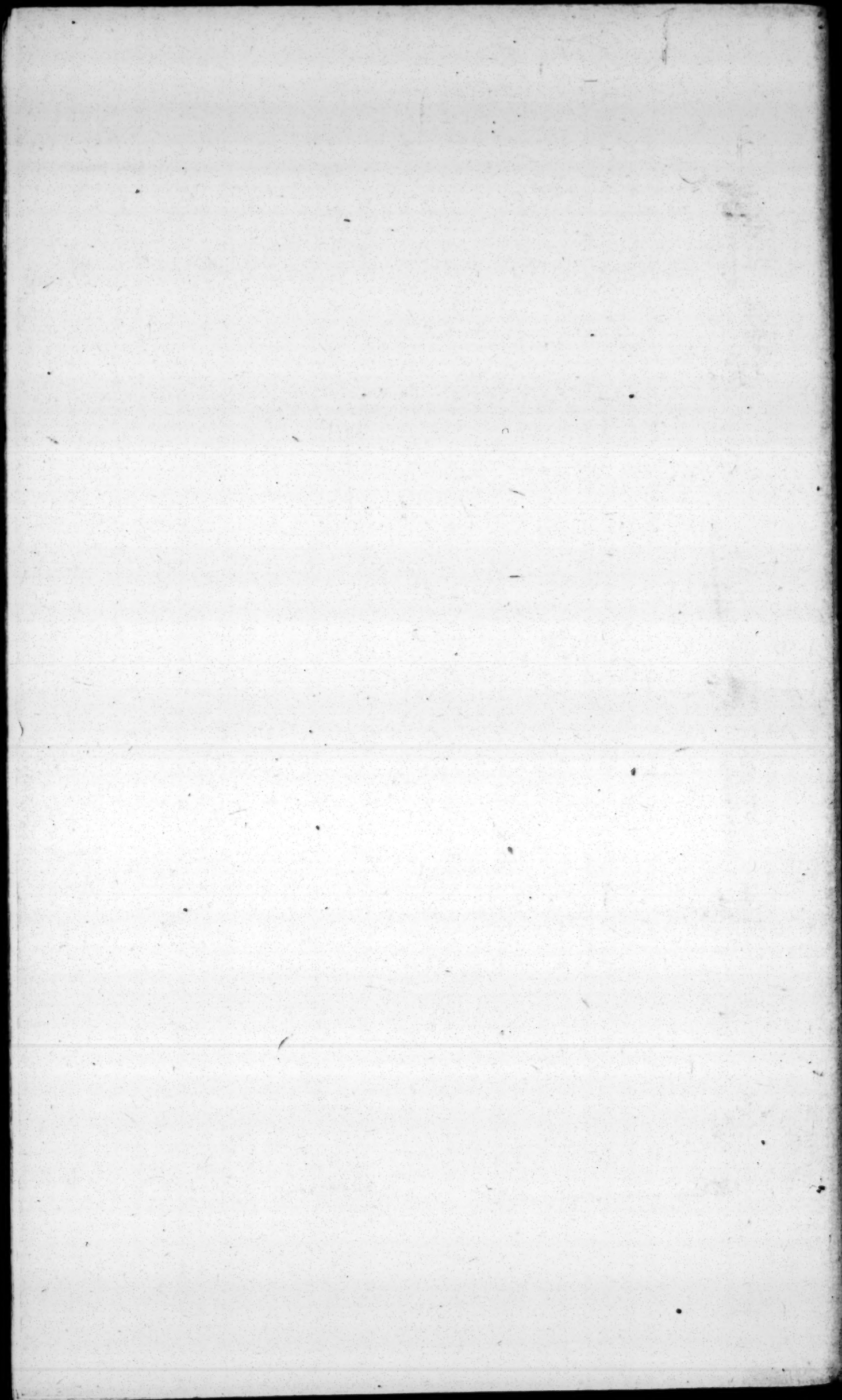
sinners, than the name of Gusman to my ear | I could

hardly

hardly have enjoyed a more absolute solitude in the
 deserts of the Thebais, than here in the midst of
 this populous kingdom | women are more generally
 capable of that disinterested love which seeks only the
 good of its object, than men | when you promised to
 marry her, she became your wife; and she has
 sinned more against prudence than against virtue | I
 am jealous of her understanding, if not of her person |
 a man advanced in years that thinks fit to look back
 upon his former life, and calls that only life
 which was passed with satisfaction, will find himself
 very young, if not in his infancy.

F I N I S.





RECOVERED
1945